

- Portion 322 is situated approximately 6km to the north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and is situated approximately 200m to the north-east of the R511 road.
- Portions 33 and 168 situated approximately 4.8km to the north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and approximately 1.2km south-west of the R511 road.

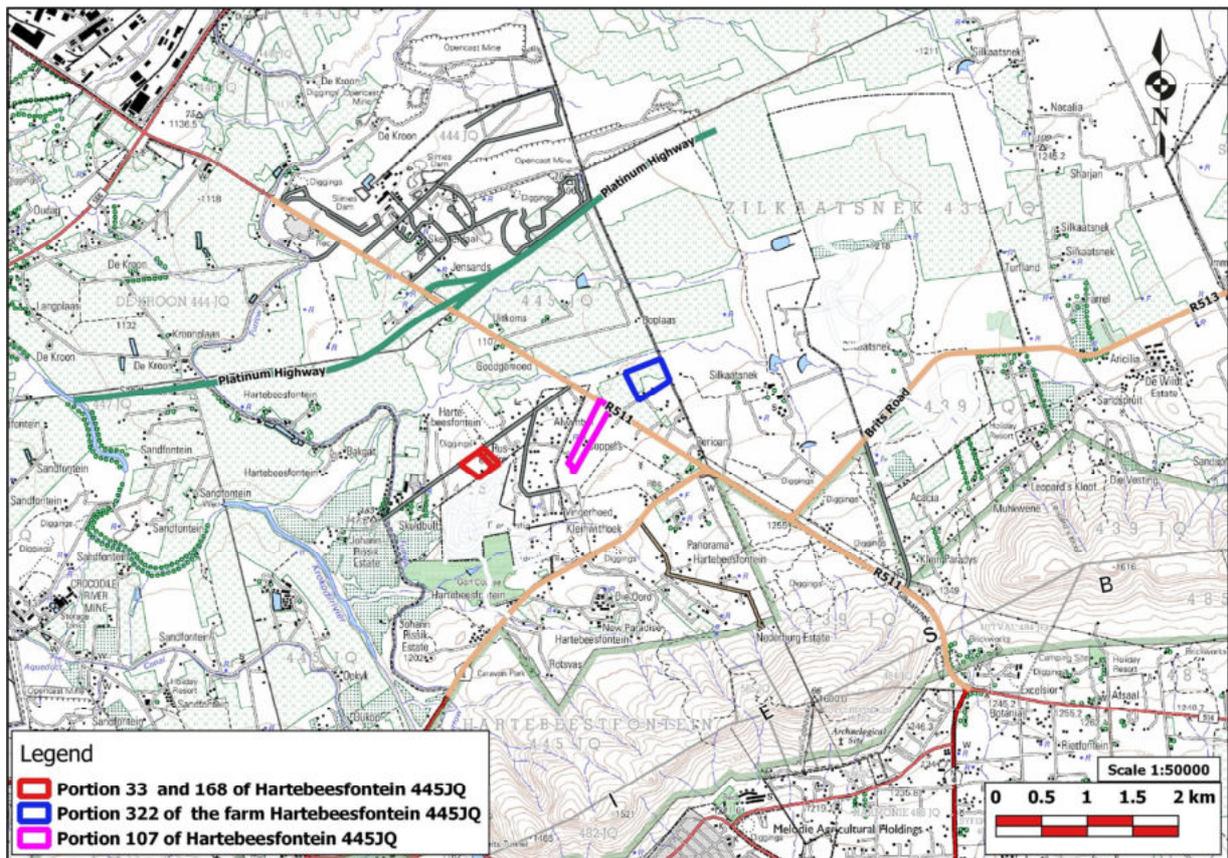


Figure 2: Locality map

2.2 Land Use

The surroundings area mainly comprises of agricultural holdings and farm portions and irrigated cultivated lands and other agricultural activities currently take place on some of the properties. Bushveld View Estate lies to the immediate south of Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ. There are also some industrial uses on some of the surrounding properties, i.e. the brick factory to the south-west of Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

The proposed hatchery is regarded as an agricultural use and the local authority will require that the property to be developed, be rezoned to "Noxious Industry". As mentioned the primary land-uses around the selected sites are agricultural and therefore the proposed hatchery is regarded as in line with the surrounding developments. Only a quarter of the surrounding area is covered with formal residential development.

The access to Portions 33 and 168 is regarded as more problematic than the accesses to the other two sites, because Portions 322 and 107 are situated close to Road R 511 and Portions 33 and 168 further away. Obviously the access is not the only factor to consider when choosing the locality of a hatchery. It was however confirmed during preliminary discussions that the noise of Road R 511 is not regarded as a major constraint. The availability of water, the availability of municipal services (if possible) and the accessibility of the site are regarded as the most important aspects to consider when selecting a site.

When considering possible negative impacts of a hatchery the distance away from residential areas and the wind direction in the area become important. As mentioned the surrounding area incorporates some residential uses and it is expected that a number of the affected parties will regard dust, unpleasant odours, impacts of trucks on road conditions, impacts on the ground water quality and levels, impacts on property values etc. as issues to consider and investigate. From a social point of view, Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ is regarded as the least suitable for the proposed hatchery, because it is situated immediately adjacent to a residential estate, which incorporates a golf course.

2.3 Topography

The slope of the larger area is regarded as fairly flat, but suitable for the natural draining of services. The topography of the three sites is summarised below:

- **Portion 107:** From north to south the site has an average slope of 1.8% - 1.5%, however from east to west the site has an average slope of 1.6% - 0.3%. The site has a predominant downhill slope towards the north.
- **Portion 322:** From north to south the site has an average slope of 1.9% - 1.0%, however from east to west the site has an average slope of 0.0% -2.0%. The site has a predominant downhill slope towards the west.
- **Portions 33 and 168:** From north to south the site has an average slope of 1.7% - 0.9%, however from east to west the site has an average slope of 2.5% - 0.0%. The site predominantly slopes towards the west.

2.4 Fauna and Flora

Refer to Figures 3 and 4

Portion 107 falls within the Moot Plains Bushveld and Portion 332 falls within the Marikana Thornveld as well as the Moot Plains Bushveld. Portions 33 and 168 falls within the Moot Plains Bushveld.

The study site consists mainly of an herbaceous layer dominated by grasses and a discontinuous layer of trees. The study sites are moderately transformed and disturbance such as alien species and dumping of waste do occur. Additionally, there was evidence of overgrazing at Portion 322 as the portion was dominated by short grasses and visible soil between stands of plant species. Portion 322 was deemed to be of low sensitivity. One protected tree species (*Sclerocarya birrea* subsp. *caffra*) was recorded on Portion 107 hence, that section has high sensitivity. A number of graves were found on Portions 33 and 168. However, this portion is transformed and is used as a dumping area and it was deemed to be of low sensitivity. In terms of avifauna, the study site falls within the Important Bird Area (IBA). IBAs form a network of sites, at a biogeographic scale, which are critical for the long-term viability of naturally occurring bird populations. However, many avifaunal species are adaptable as they are habitat generalists and can therefore accommodate a certain degree of habitat degradation and transformation (Harrison *et al.*, 1997). Additionally, no Red List avifauna species was observed on the sites. The preferred site in terms of flora and fauna sensitivity would be

Portion 322 as it is considered as having lower sensitivity than the alternative portions in terms of biodiversity. Refer to Figure 3 for sensitivity map.

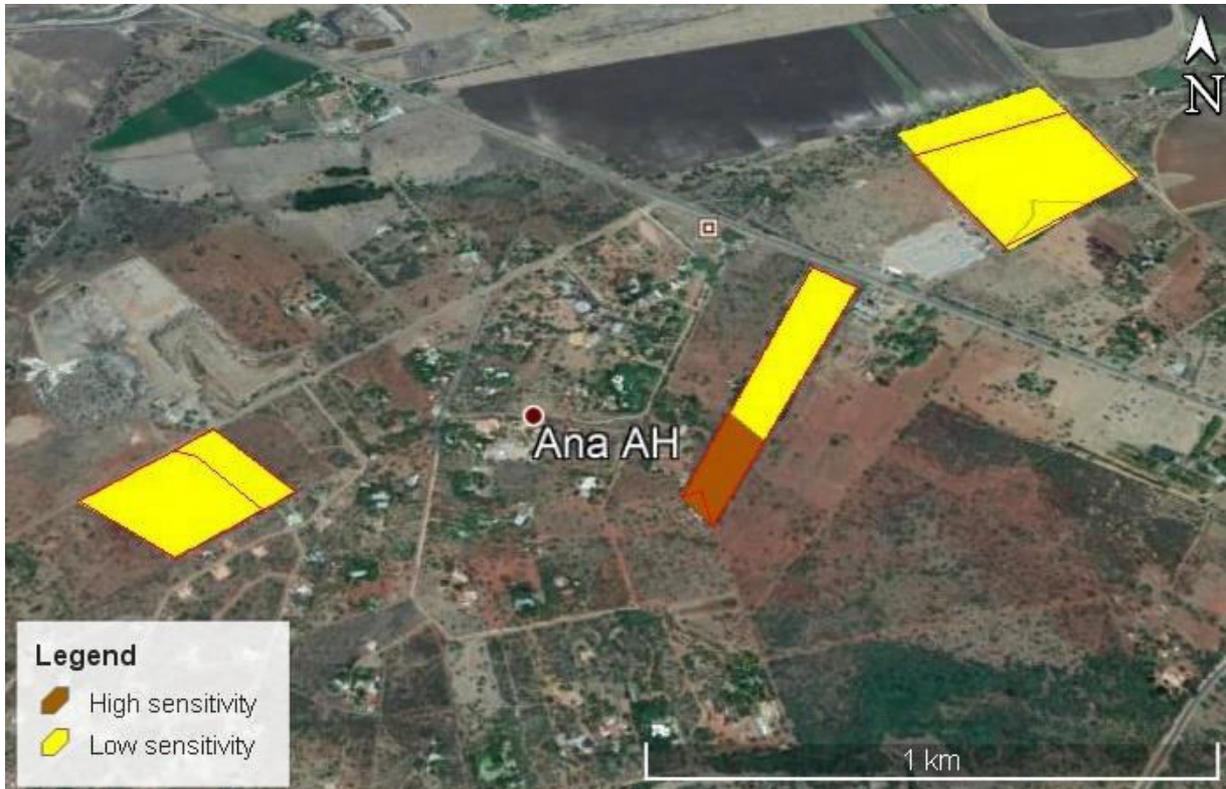


Figure 3: Fauna and Flora Sensitivity

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004) published a national list of threatened or protected ecosystems, in terms of four categories: Critically endangered (CR), Endangered (EN), Vulnerable (VU) or protected. Activities within these threatened ecosystems Portion 322 is located within the Marikana Thornveld ecosystem that is regarded as Vulnerable according to the list that was published on 9 December 2011 in Government Notice 1002.

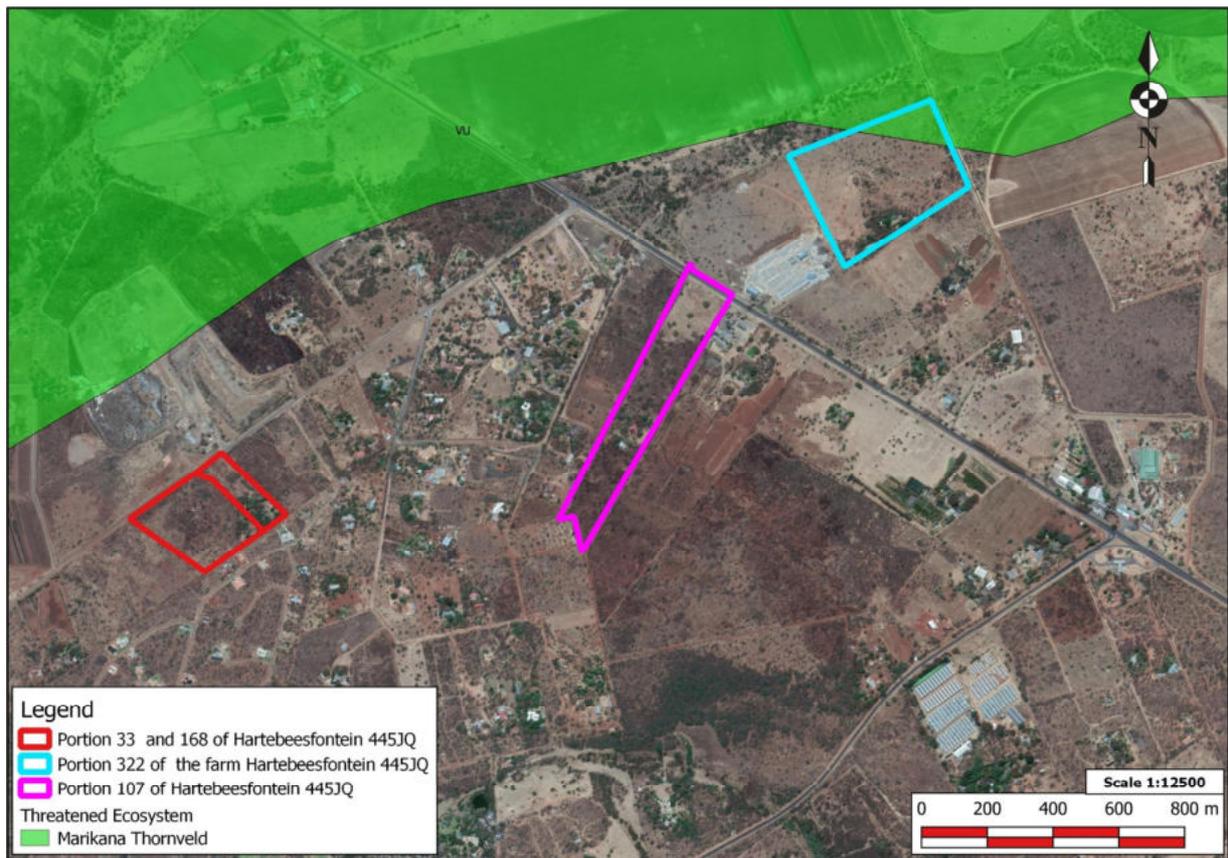


Figure 4: Threatened Ecosystems map

2.5 Hydrology

Surface Hydrology

The Kroon Chickens properties are located within the quaternary catchment A21J of the Limpopo Water Management Area. Non-perennial drainage lines/ rivers are located to the north and south of the site. Such drainage lines/ watercourses are tributaries of the Crocodile River, which is situated approximately 2 to 4km to the west of the sites.

Refer to Figures 5 and 6.

Portion 332 lies to the immediate south-east of a non-perennial watercourse/river, Portion 107 lies approximately 300m to the south of the non-perennial river and drainage feature, which incorporates a flood line runs through the site from the south-east to the north-west and this feature drains into the watercourse/non-perennial river

to the north. Portion 168 and Portions 33 are located approximately 600m to the south of the same non-perennial river.

The wetland specialist confirmed the impact of the non-perennial river and possible wetlands on Portion 332. Portion 322 is partly within the 32 m buffer and definitely within the 100m buffer – refer to Figure 6. As mentioned Portion 107 accommodates a drainage line/ feature which could be associated with a 1:100 year flood line and wet conditions. Such conditions will be investigated in more detail during the site inspections.

The Crocodile River is highly utilised for irrigation, which has significantly diminished the available water reserves for further use. According to available GIS and NFEPA data, no NFEPA wetlands occur within or surrounding the Kroon Chickens sites. The Hartbeespoort Dam is 5km to the south.

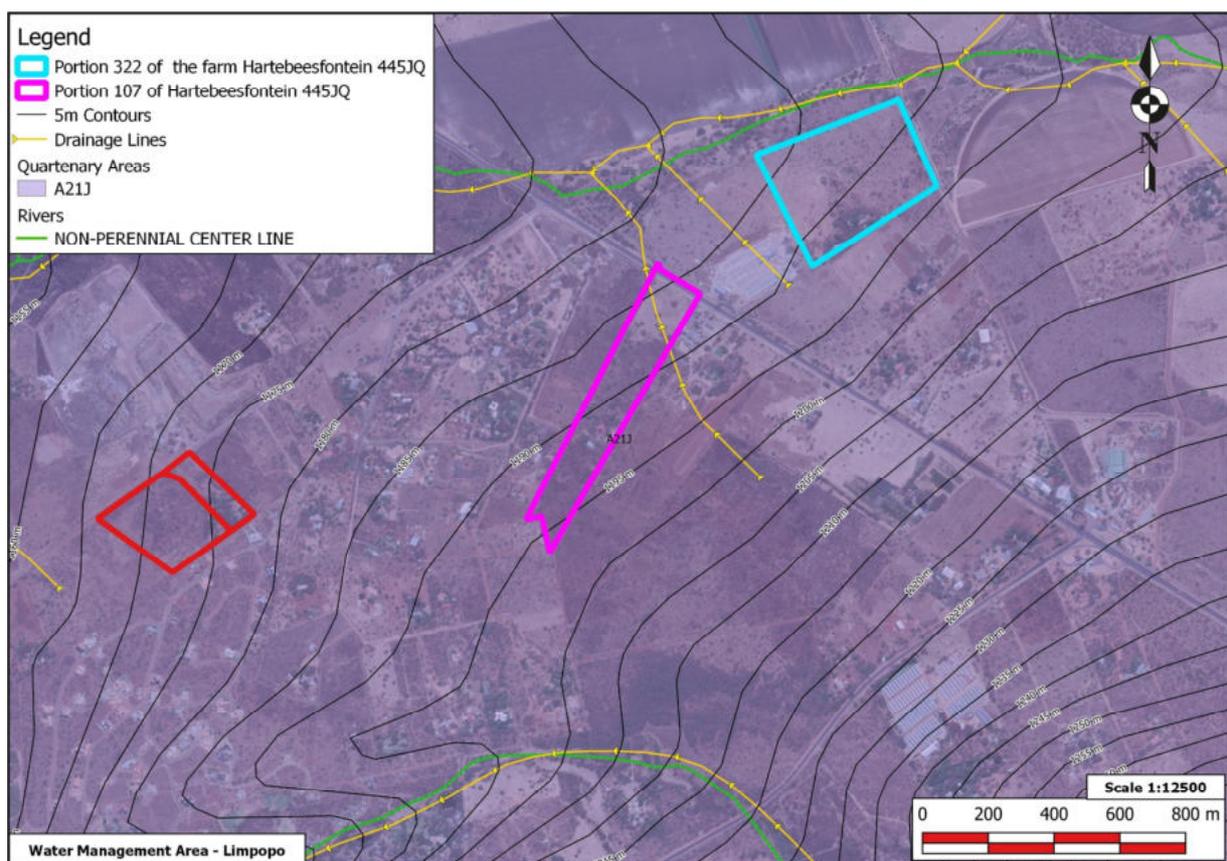


Figure 5: Hydrology map

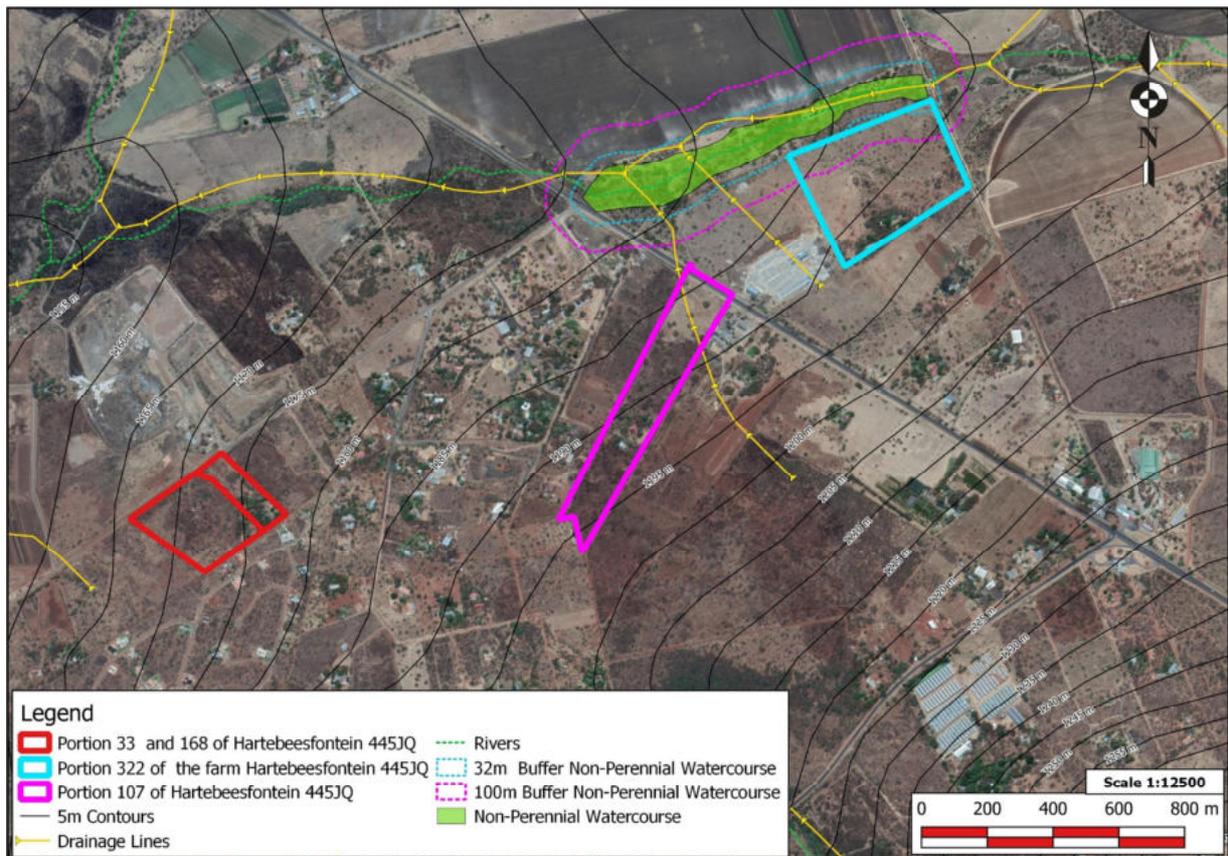


Figure 6: Rivers & wetland maps

Geo-hydrology

According to the published 1:500,000 General Hydrogeological Map (2526 Johannesburg) as well as South African Aquifer System Management Classification (Parsons, 1995), the aquifer system underlying the three (3) farm portions is classified as a minor / low yield potential intergranular and fractured aquifer; with yields of between 0.5 and 2.0 litres per second (L/s) and variable water quality. Although two (2) of the three (3) farm portions properties (Portion 107 and Portion 33 and 168) weren't accessible at the time of the investigation, the existence of borehole/s is most likely due to groundwater being the sole source of water supply in the area. However, information regarding the borehole sustainable yield etc. is unfortunately not available. There is one borehole on Portion 322. A total of 22 privately owned boreholes were identified, within a 2 km radius of the three (3) farm portions. Five (5) of the 22 boreholes were accessible for groundwater level measurements, with the remaining 17 boreholes either blocked / vandalized / collapsed / not accessible. Groundwater is mainly used for domestic and

small-scale irrigation purposes (i.e. gardening), but is also utilized for large-scale irrigation purposes.

Information obtained during the hydrocensus from various groundwater users, indicated that groundwater yields are relatively low. However, large-scale sustainable abstraction (in excess of 250 m³/d) occurs in the vicinity of Portion 33 and 168 of Hartebeesfontein 445JQ. Based on this, Portion 33 and 168 of Hartebeesfontein 445JQ located in close proximity of large-scale abstraction boreholes may increase possibility of increase groundwater occurrence.

2.6 Geology and Soils

The geology of the site is characterised as rocky. All three sites consist of pyroxenite, harzburgite and norite which are all ultramafic plutonic igneous rocks. More than 90% of the rock is composed of magnesium- and iron-rich minerals like pyroxenes, amphiboles, and olivine. In pyroxenite the dominant mafic mineral is a pyroxene. Pyroxenite may contain up to 40% olivine. **Refer to Figure 7**

Some clayish conditions can be expected in some of the areas.



Figure 7: Soils Map

2.7 Agricultural Potential

Both Portion 107 and Portion 322 especially are situated in close proximity to commercially classified areas. **Refer to Figure 8.** There is no proof of recent crop farming present on Portions 33 and 168. The sites are however suitable for agricultural activities, such as a hatchery, due to it being on small holdings. Portions 33 and 168's proximity to the residential estate might make it less desirable for such agricultural activities.

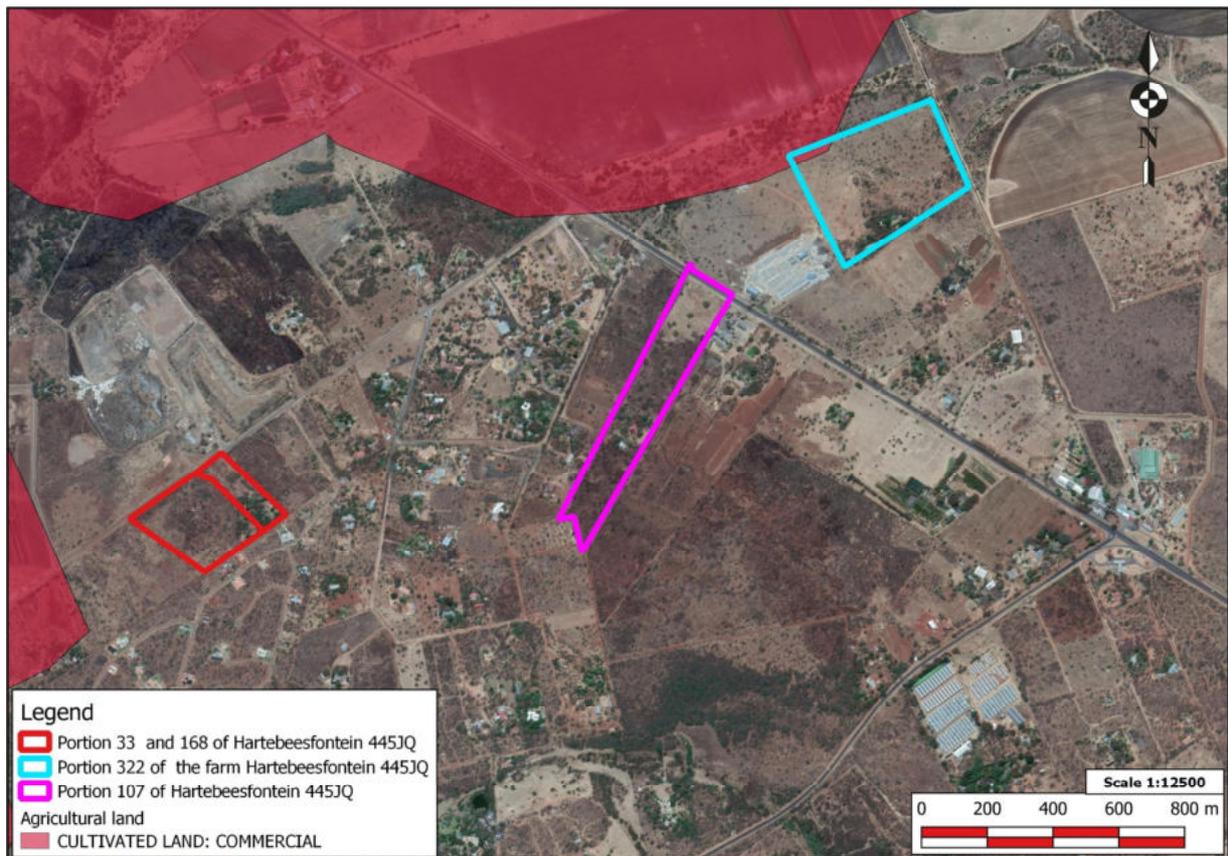


Figure 8: Agricultural potential

2.8 Heritage

In Section 38 of the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) the following categories are listed as triggers for a Heritage Impact Assessment:

38. (1) Subject to the provisions of subsections (7), (8) and (9), any person who intends to undertake a development categorised as-

- a) the construction of a road, wall, powerline, pipeline, canal or other similar form of linear development or barrier exceeding 300 m in length;
- b) the construction of a bridge or similar structure exceeding 50 m in length;
- c) any developments or other activity which will change the character of the site-
- d) exceeding 5000 m² in extent; or
- e) involving three or more existing erven or subdivisions thereof: or
- f) involving three or more erven or divisions thereof which have been consolidated within the past five years; or

- g) the costs of which will exceed a sum set in terms of regulations by SAHRA or a provisional heritage resources authority;
- h) the re-zoning of a site exceeding 10 000 m² in extent; or
- i) any other category of development provided for in regulations by SAHRA or a provincial heritage resources authority.

All the sites exceed 5 000m² and thus a Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment will be required. The presence of graves, artefacts will need to be confirmed through a specialist site investigation. During a site visit to Portions 33 and 168, graves were identified on the site.

A Heritage Specialist have been appointed to conduct a Heritage Impact Assessment for the proposed three sites. From a Cultural Heritage point of view, Portion 107 and Portion 322 would be the most preferred for the proposed development, as there would be no impacts on any archaeological and/or historical sites, features or material. Site 3, with the grave site in close proximity, would be the least preferred. However, if the development is to take place on Portion 33 and 168 then the graves can be exhumed and relocated after all due processes have been followed and the relevant permits have been obtained.

2.9 North West Biodiversity Management Act, 2016 (Act No. 4 of 2016)

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act No. 57 of 2003 as amended), the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No.10 of 2004), the national environmental management principles set out in section 2 of the National Environmental Management Act and the North West Biodiversity Management Act, 2016 (Act No. 4 of 2016), are applicable to and enforceable in the North West Province, the reality is that, in order to regulate matters specific to the North West which are not adequately regulated in the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act No. 57 of 2003 as amended), the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No.10 of 2004) and the National Environmental Management Act, there needs to be legislated on matters specific to the North West Province, hence the promulgation of

the North West Biodiversity Management Act, 2016 (Act No. 4 of 2016), and this Act.

Refer to Figures 9 and 10

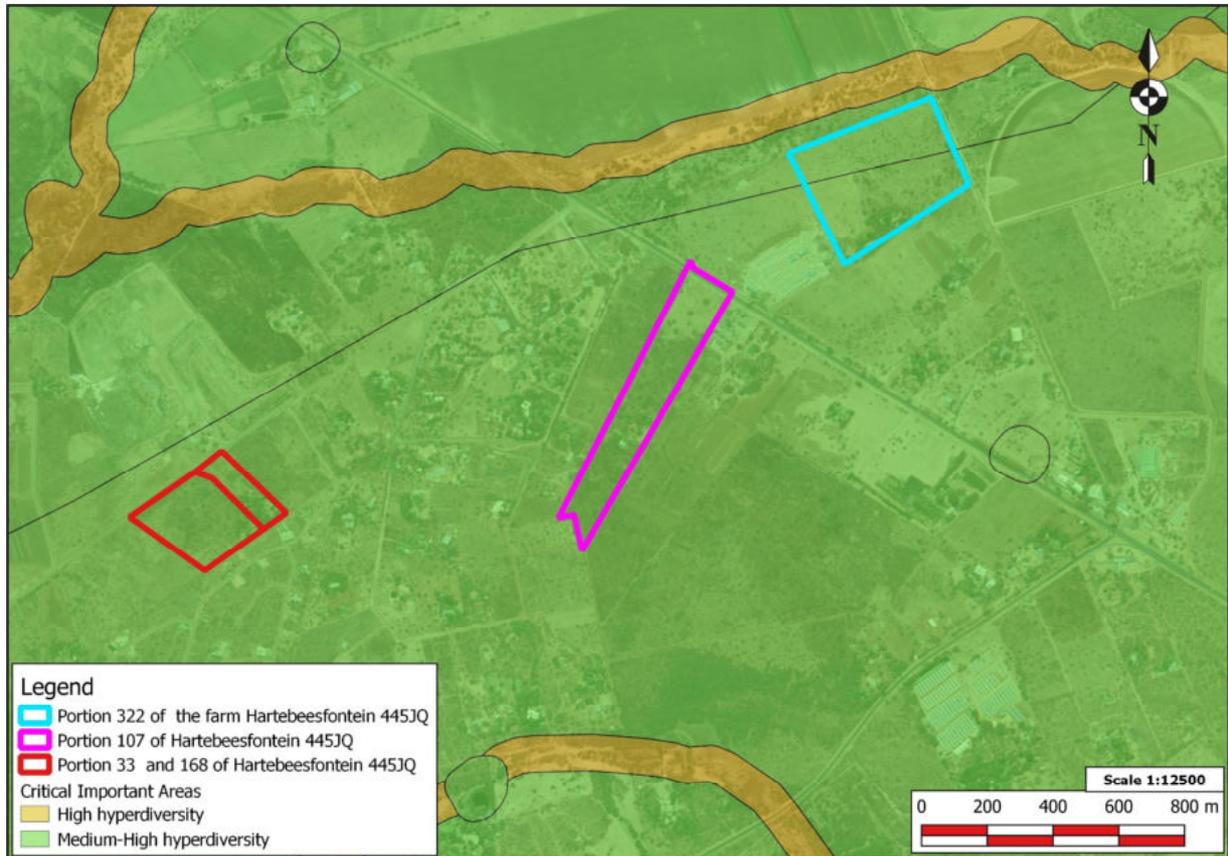


Figure 9: Critical Important Areas

As per the biodiversity act the site is situated within a threatened ecosystem, however the ecosystem is classified as vulnerable. All sites are classified as having medium - high hyperdiversity and Portion 322 is just south of an area that is classified as having high hyperdiversity. All three the sites are also situated within an Important Bird Area (IBA).

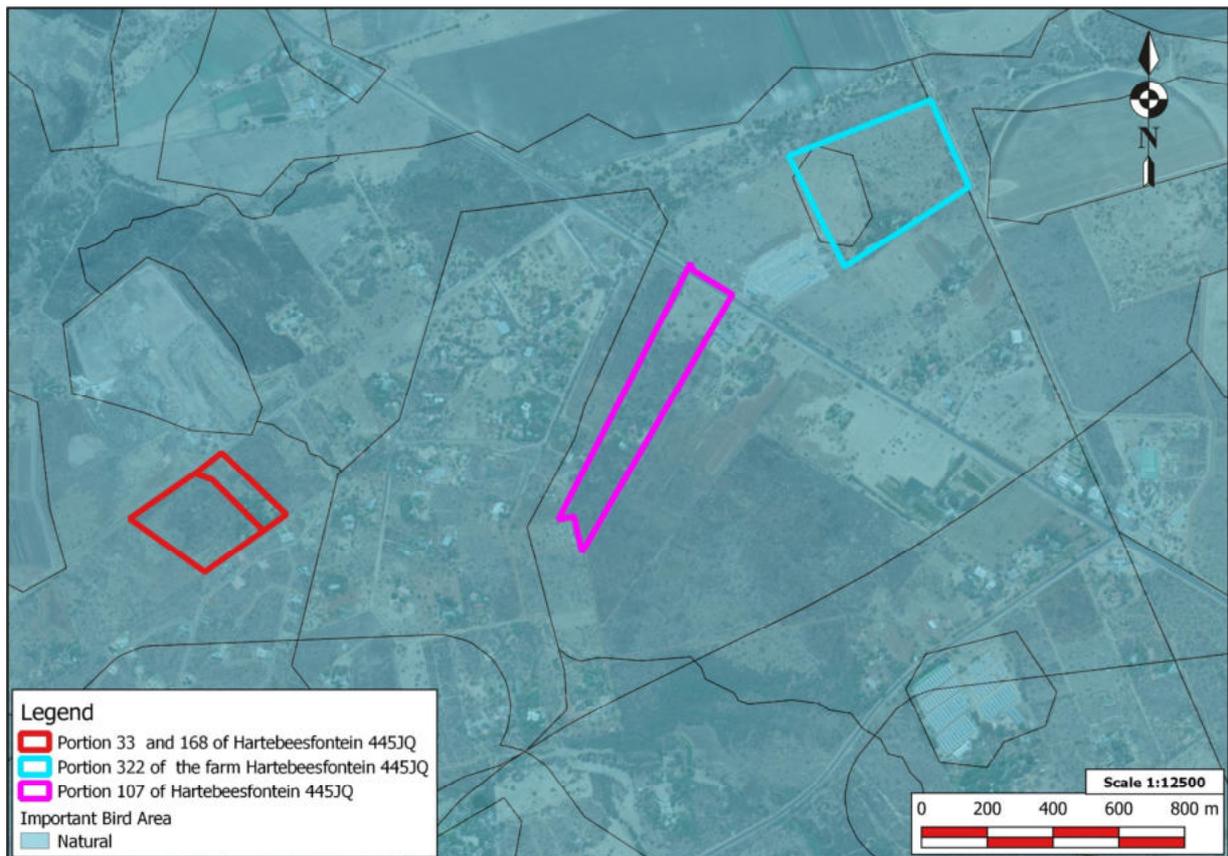


Figure 10: Important Bird Area

2.10 Civil Services

The entire civil engineering infrastructure required for the proposed development will be installed to the required standards of the Madibeng Local Municipality.

Bulk Water Supply

The Madibeng Local Municipality and Rand water confirmed that there is currently no bulk water supply in this area although the Zilkaatsnek Reservoir (constructed in 2008) is approximately 4km south-east of the portions. The water supply to these sites will have to be by means of boreholes only as there are no municipal water supply sources available in the area. Depending on the yield of the boreholes, elevated storage tanks may also be required. As all of the portions have an existing dwelling unit, it is assumed that there are already boreholes on all of the portions.

Bulk Sanitation

The Madibeng Local Municipality confirmed there is no bulk sewer infrastructure including Waste Water Treatment Works in the area. It is proposed that for all of the portions one of the following solutions would suffice. Depending on the discharge one of the following is proposed:

- A purification plant that consist of a package plant. The plant will be constructed on the lowest portion of each portion. Water from the purification plant can be used as irrigation water for the gardens, which will be pumped to the dedicated areas.
- A conservancy tank that will be emptied on a weekly basis. The tank will be constructed on the lowest portion of each portion.
- A septic tank with fin drains that can be emptied if required. This option may only be viable if the Effluent generated is equivalent to a dwelling unit. The tank will be constructed on the lowest portion of each portion.

Stormwater

None of the sites have formal stormwater infrastructure or a natural watercourse on the site that might create erosion issues. There is however a natural watercourse that borders the northern boundary of Portion 322 and a Floodline determination might be required.

Electricity

As all of the portions have an existing dwelling unit, the electricity connection point is at the access road. Eskom confirmed for Portion 322 that they can upgrade the line.

2.11 Town Planning

The town planners conducted a due diligence investigation regarding the suitability of the subject properties for hatchery purposes. There appears to be no major impediments that prohibit the intended use of a hatchery on any of the subject properties. Given the zoning, an application for the amendment of the zoning provisions in respect of the subject properties will not be required. In terms of Act No. 21 of 40 an application for consent by the Madibeng Local Authority will have to be obtained for the setting aside of the building restriction area in respect of the Remaining Extent of Portion 33 and Portion 107 depending the requirements of the client.

3. COMPARATIVE ASSESSMENT

To follow is a table comparing the three sites in terms of various attributes.

Attribute	Portion 107	Portion 322	Portions 33 and 168
Access	Directly from R511	Short access from R511	Longer distance from R511
Servitudes	Usufruct servitude in favour of Carolina Magaretha Olivier - status thereof to be confirmed by a conveyancer	A right of way servitude of 9.45 meters wide registered over the Remaining Extent of Portion 103 Hartebeestfontein 455 JQ in favour of Portion 322	Borehole servitude – relevance to be confirmed by conveyancer
Zoning	“Undetermined”	“Undetermined”	“Undetermined”
Wetlands	No wetland	Affected by wetland buffer	No wetland
Fauna and Flora	Low to medium sensitivity	Low sensitivity	Disturbed
Graves	Not observed	Not observed	Present
Bulk Water	None available	None available	None available
Ground water	Borehole expected due to presence of a dwelling – yield unknown	Borehole present – yield unknown	Borehole expected due to presence of a dwelling – yield unknown
Bulk Sewer	None available, package plant or alternative system to be installed on site	None available, package plant or alternative system to be installed on site	None available, package plant or alternative system to be installed on site
Electricity	Available	Available – Eskom confirmed that upgrading is possible	Available

Attribute	Portion 107	Portion 322	Portions 33 and 168
Social		Cement factory adjacent to the site – dust can be a nuisance	Graves Adjacent to residential estate with a golf course

4. INFORMATION AND STUDIES THAT WILL BE REQUIRED

It is foreseen that the following information/inputs will be required during the BA Process:

- Heritage Impact Assessment;
- Wetland Assessment;
- Ecological Assessment;
- Geotechnical Report;
- Geo-hydrological Report;
- Town Planning Memorandum (which will include current and proposed zoning as well as applicable SDF's, other frameworks etc.);
- Traffic Impact Assessment (must amongst others address the following: access of the site, proposed road upgrades etc.);
- Civil Services Report including storm water management plan;
- Confirmation letter for electricity, sewer, waste removal and water;
- Electrical Services Report; and
- Detailed layout indicating access.

5. OTHER SITES

In order to ensure thoroughness and good site selection, apart from the three subject properties the following properties were also considered:

- Portion 144 of the farm Hartebeesfontein 445 JQ
- Portion 26 of the farm Wildebeesthoek 310 JR
- Portion 20 of the farm Schietfontein 310 JR
- Portion 14 of the farm Wildebeesthoek de Wildt 309 JQ

- Portion 1 of the farm Zilkaatsnek 439 JQ

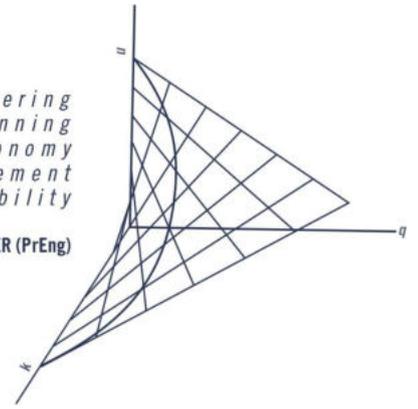
Due to some of the properties already been sold and others being too far away from their current operations – these are not considered viable to the client.

6. CONCLUSION

Bokamoso is of the opinion that all impacts to the three sites are very similar in terms of the locality as they are close to one another, however each site has some attributes or factors that will have impacts on the proposed development. Portion 322 is subject to possible wetlands or a buffer due to a non-perennial river that is situated on the north-western boundary and a cement factory is present next to the site which may result in cement dust. Portions 33 and 168 has some graves present on the site and it is extremely close to a residential estate and golf course. The shape of Portion 107 might contribute to more expensive services and it might also lead to difficulty with positioning the layout.

Appendix G8:

Traffic Impact Statement



24 October 2019

Madibeng Local Municipality

Acting Municipal Manager

P O Box 106, Brits, 0250

Attention: Mr. Moruti Tsotetsi

Dear Sir

TRAFFIC IMPACT STATEMENT: REZONING OF FARM PORTION 322 HARTEBEESTFONTEIN 445-IQ, MADIBENG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY

BACKGROUND

The rezoning of farm portion 322 of Hartebeestfontein 445 IQ (Diagram A attached) is planned for the purposes of "Cultivation Sheds" for a chicken hatchery respectively.

This Traffic Impact Statement briefly describes the expected traffic impact and the access arrangements for the rezoning application.

EXPECTED TRAFFIC IMPACT

The expected traffic impact of the rezoning application is very low:

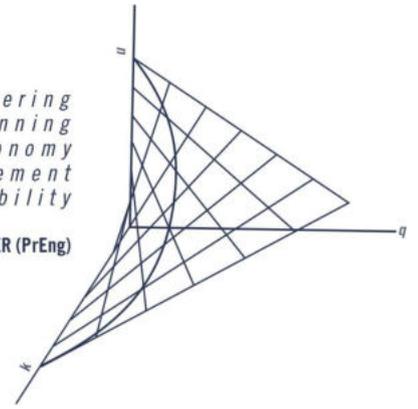
- Two trucks twice daily;
- One utility vehicle per day;
- Less than 20 staff members of which only some have private vehicles;

The low trip generation, far less than 50 peak hour trips (which is the minimum requirement for a Traffic Impact Assessment), will not require any mitigation or road improvements.

ACCESS TO FARM PORTIONS

Access to the farm portion occurs as follows (refer to Diagram A attached):

- The application site is separated by two land portions from Route R511 (Road P35 - 1) which is also planned Route K16;
- Route R511 is a national road that falls under the jurisdiction of SANRAL (declared a national road in 2012);
- An existing right-of-way servitude, 9.44m wide (SG A6534/1953), current serves the application site as well as neighbouring properties;



- This right-of-servitude is spaced at about $\pm 600\text{m}$ from the nearest access road to the north and about $\pm 1,100\text{m}$ from the nearest access road to the south;

The farm portion have acceptable access arrangements which also correlates with future road planning and will not require any mitigation measures given the low peak hour trip generation.

Please do not hesitate to contact us for more information.

Kind Regards



P Kruger for Techworld

ATTACHMENTS

Diagram A: Portion 322, Hartebeestfontein 445 IQ



Appendix G9:

Storm Water and Waste Water
Concept Management Plan

36 Lebombo Street, Ashlea Gardens
PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
012 346 3810
086 570 5659
reception@bokamoso.net
www.bokamoso.net

BOKAMOS
Landscape Architects & Environmental Consultants CC



A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the Proposed Kroon's Hatchery

To be situated on Portion 322 of the Farm
Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ

November 2019

Prepared by:
Bokamoso Landscape Architects and
Environmental Consultants CC

Tel: (012) 346 3810
Fax: 086 570 5659
E-mail: reception@bokamoso.net
Website: www.bokamoso.net
PO BOX 11375
Maroelana
0161

Prepared for:
Kroon Familie Trust

Tel: 012 504 2128
PO Box 48657
Hercules
0030

BOKAMOS
Landscape Architects & Environmental Consultants CC

Report details

	Rev 1
Report Title	A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery
Project Consultant	Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC
Prepared by	Lizelle Gregory (BALArch) and Louis van Wyk (BsclArch)
Final review by	Lizelle Gregory, (BLArch) Lizelle has 25 years' experience in the field of environmental management and is a member of the South African Council of the Landscape Architects Profession (SACLAP), the International Association of Impact Assessments (IAIA) and the Institute of Environmental Management and Assessment (IEMA). Professional Practice Number: 97078
Declaration	I, Lizelle Gregory, as authorised representative of Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC hereby confirm my independence in terms of Section 13.(1)(a) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) 2014 EIA Regulations as amended.
Copyright Warning	Unless otherwise noted, the copyright in all text and other content (including the manner of presentation) is the exclusive property of Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC.

Table of Contents

1	Terminology.....	5
2	Introduction	5
3	Study Site	6
3.1	Project Description.....	6
3.1.1	Location	6
3.2	Biological Environment	7
3.2.1	Geology and Soils	7
3.2.2	Agricultural Potential	7
3.2.3	Hydrology.....	7
3.2.4	Biodiversity	7
4	Storm Water Management Methodology	7
4.1	Objectives	8
5	Storm Water Management Plan	9
5.1	Description.....	9
5.2	General Concepts to be Considered	10
6	Erosion Prevention	10
7	Stormwater and Wastewater Related Infrastructure	10
7.1	General	10
7.2	Infrastructure Requirements.....	11
8	Impacts Related to Wastewater and Washwater.....	11
8.1	Wastewater: Sewerage and Greywater.....	11
8.2	Washwater	12
8.2.1	Cleaning of Hatchery.....	12
8.2.2	Truck Washing Bays.....	13
9	Impacts Related to Industrial/Contaminated Stormwater Runoff.....	13
9.1	Parking Bays	13
9.2	Rainwater Harvesting	14
10	Management of Clean Stormwater Runoff from the Study Site.....	14
10.1	Clean Stormwater.....	14
10.1.1	Stormwater Discharge Points	15
10.2	Gravel Road.....	15
11	Roles and Responsibilities	16

A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the proposed
Kroon's Hatchery

11.1	Developer/Applicant/Owner of the Facility	16
11.2	Project Manager	16
11.3	Contractor	16
11.4	Engineer	16
11.5	Environmental Compliance Officer (ECO)	17

List of Figures

Figure 1: Stormwater and Effluent Handling Plan	8
---	---

1 Terminology

Stormwater: Water resulting from natural precipitation or accumulation and includes rainwater, surface water, sub-soil; water or spring water.

Wastewater: Wastewater is used water from any combination of domestic, industrial, commercial or agricultural activities, surface runoff or stormwater, and any sewer inflow or sewer infiltration.

Polluted Runoff: Stormwater runoff that flows over industrial surfaces and becomes polluted/contaminated in the process.

Washwater: Water used for washing, especially in industrial processes.

Blackwater: Denotes wastewater from toilets, which likely contains pathogens. Blackwater can contain faeces, urine, water and toilet paper from flush toilets.

Greywater: All wastewater generated in households or office buildings from streams without faecal contamination, i.e. all streams except for the wastewater from toilets. Sources of greywater include, sinks, showers, baths, clothes washing machines or dish washers.

2 Introduction

This **Stormwater and Wastewater Management Plan** should be implemented to mitigate the effects that the facility may have on the natural drainage and water quality of the surrounding environment. In a development of this nature it is necessary to control and manage the stormwater runoff effectively and ensure that washwater, wastewater (greywater), sewerage and polluted runoff do not mix with natural stormwater.

The storm and waste water management plan should address the following:

- The management of clean storm water runoff from the study site;

A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

- The containment and management of the washwater runoff (Water used for washing, especially in industrial processes);
- The separation of washwater areas from clean stormwater runoff areas;
- The management and safe disposal of wastewater from the ablution facilities (grey water) and
- The management and safe disposal of sewerage from the toilet facilities on site.

3 Study Site

3.1 Project Description

A "Hatchery" is a facility where poultry eggs are hatched under artificial conditions. The eggs usually hatch within 21 days and an egg incubator is required to assist with the controlling of temperature, humidity and egg turning. Chicks are dispatched from the hatchery site as soon as possible after hatching to ensure that they receive food and water within 48 hours.

The proposed Kroon's Hatchery facility will be constructed in five phases and will eventually cover a surface area of 4 100m². The facility will be capable of hatching approximately 600 000 chicks per week. The hatchery should be fenced within a biosecurity area which may also contain security offices and ablution facilities for the workers. Road access will be important since feed will be imported into the bio secure area. Overnight truck parking, parking for vehicles and washing bays will also have to be constructed.

3.1.1 Location

The hatchery will be situated on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ which falls within Ward 33 of the Madibeng Local Municipality, North West Province, South Africa.

3.2 Biological Environment

3.2.1 Geology and Soils

The geology of the site is composed of Rustenburg, lebowa and rashoop rock type. The study area and its surroundings is mainly underlain by pyroxinite, harzburgite and norite rocks. The soils of the study site are composed of undifferentiated vertic and melanic soils. The southern section of the study site is composed of plinthic catena, eutrophic red soils.

3.2.2 Agricultural Potential

The subject site occurs within an area denoted as arable.

3.2.3 Hydrology

The subject site occurs within the quaternary catchment A21J, Upper Crocodile Sub-catchment in the Limpopo Water Management Area. A non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west outside of the site along the northern boundary.

3.2.4 Biodiversity

Based on the Fauna and Flora Comparative Assessment conducted, Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ is deemed to be the most suitable site from an ecological perspective as it is categorised to be a low sensitivity site, with no protective species observed on site.

4 Storm Water Management Methodology

This plan focuses on effectively controlling storm water run-off so that waste storage areas do not contaminate clean storm water, and to route all storm water falling within the study area away from the facility without causing erosion or surface water pollution (Refer to **Figure 1**)

A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

4.1 Objectives

The objective of this Storm Water Management Plan is to:

- Separate the Effluent Management System from the Stormwater Management System;
- Promote multi-functional use of stormwater management systems by developing a sustainable stormwater system that considers cost, maintenance and functionality;
- Channel natural stormwater around the site;
- Prevent soil erosion;
- Prevent contamination of surface water; and
- Minimise threat of flooding of vulnerable areas and road infrastructure.

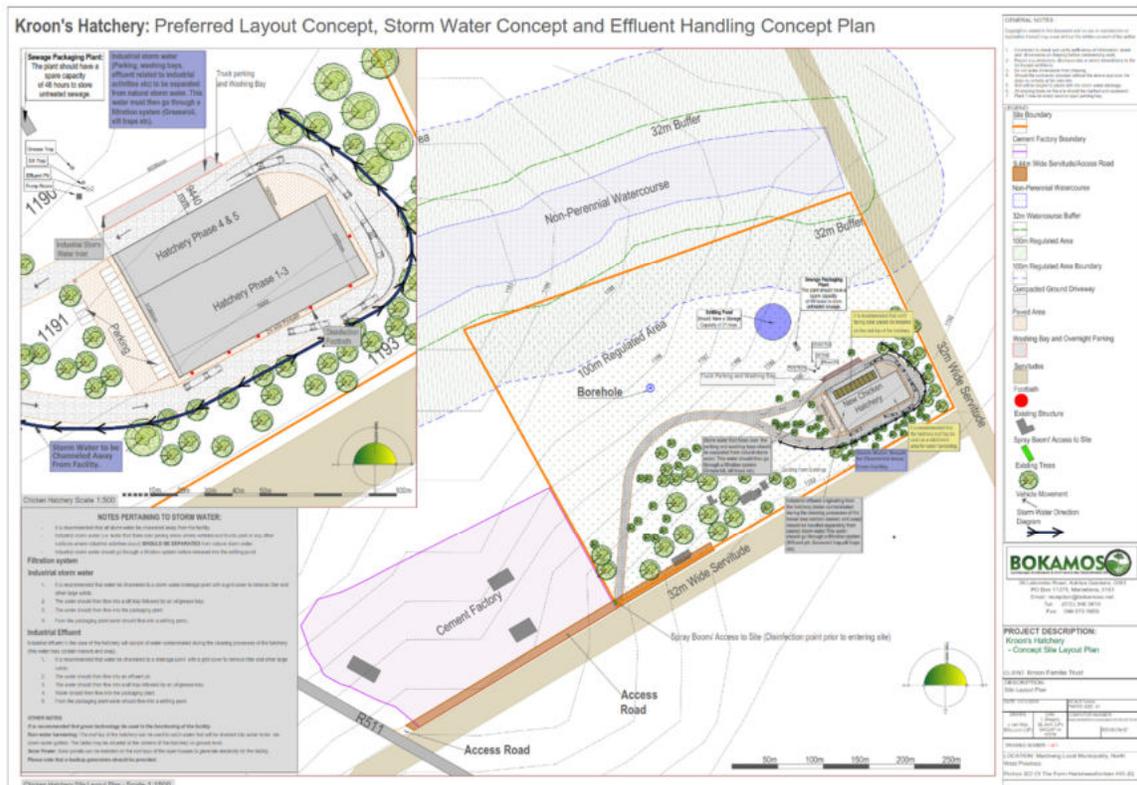


Figure 1: Stormwater and Effluent Handling Plan

5 Storm Water Management Plan

5.1 Description

A site specific Storm Water Management Plan should be implemented and the following should be emphasized:

- Stormwater contamination by means wastewater and washwater on site should be prevented,
- Stormwater should be clearly directed away from any contamination possibilities.
- The system must be constructed in a way to ensure that dirty storm water is separated from clean stormwater.

In addition, it must be emphasized that the surface water runoff should be spread as wide as possible and not directed on specific areas as this could lead to the increase of soil erosion potential. Groundwater seepage and erosion control measures should be implemented to prevent water stagnation, siltation and loss of existing and remaining topsoil on site.

The main approach should be to break the speed of the water, to prevent the pollution of stormwater, and to reduce the amount of storm water by implementing the following recommendations:

- rain water harvesting; (refer to **section 8.2**) and
- through the implementation of permeable paving or surfaces in areas that are not in direct contact with industrial processes.

The principle of keeping the post-construction flow similar to the pre-construction flow across a lower lying site is widely applied and the principle should be to attenuate/ store/ distribute water on a property in such a way that this principle is applied. This will assist with water purification and it will also assist with flood management.

5.2 General Concepts to be Considered

- Minimise (where possible) the amount of stormwater to move across hard and impermeable industrial surfaces;
- Investigate the installation of rain water tanks and identify positions for such tanks next to gutters/ down pipes;
- Separate the industrial water (effluent water, washwater and any other dirty water generated on the study area) and stormwater through the usage of bunded areas, separation walls/ structures, open channels, closed channels, pipes, down-pipes, the sloping of surface areas, gutters etc.;
- Encourage recycling/ re-use of the treated water in the industrial processes on site; and
- Commence with the training of staff (on all levels) to prevent staff from mixing clean water with "dirty water", to reduce water consumption, to maintain oil traps, grease traps, cleaning eyes, manholes, remove solids from screens etc.

6 Erosion Prevention

- Return of topsoil and seed with endemic vegetation must commence immediately once construction is completed;
- Embankments are to be compacted and covered with grass;
- Suitable stormwater structures and techniques must be implemented to prevent erosion; and
- Attenuate stormwater on the site, where required as necessary and break the speed and quantity of the stormwater to be discharged into the natural environment.

7 Stormwater and Wastewater Related Infrastructure

7.1 General

The following infrastructure may be associated with the stormwater and waste water management system

- Effluent pit

A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

- Silt trap
- Grease/oil trap
- Sewerage Packaging plant
- Settling pond

Additional mesh, grids, manholes cleaning eyes and inspection eyes may have to be installed in order to prevent blockages of pipes and pump failures.

7.2 Infrastructure Requirements

- All of the above mentioned structures should be waterproofed to avoid natural ground water contamination (e.g. the pond must be appropriately lined).
- The structures must be placed above the 1:50 year and 1:100 year flood line.
- The structures must be placed outside of the watercourse buffers as delineated by the wetland specialist.
- A general maintenance plan for the stormwater management infrastructure may be required.
- Conduct suitable leak detection tests at all stormwater and wastewater infrastructure.
- Investigate the possibility of installing water meters and effluent meters at strategic points across the site in order to detect leakages at an early stage.

8 Impacts Related to Wastewater and Washwater

8.1 Wastewater: Sewerage and Greywater

All waste water from the new hatchery will be separated at source and managed separately from the washwater, contaminated stormwater runoff and clean storm water runoff.

The Hatchery will have ablution facilities that will consist of:

- Showers (Grey water)
- Hand wash basins (Grey water)

- Toilets (sewage)
- Urinals (Sewage)

The above mentioned wastewater should go through the following process:

Waste water will flow from the ablution facilities (combination of grey water and sewerage) to a sewage packaging plant where the water will be treated to an acceptable standard. The treated water will then be released into a settling pond on the site.

8.2 Washwater

All washwater from the new hatchery will be separated at source and managed separately from the waste water and natural storm water runoff.

8.2.1 Cleaning of Hatchery

The hatchery house will be cleared out every 36 weeks and washed thoroughly. The wash water will be separated at source (inlets within the hatchery) and piped via a separate waste water system. This water may not be released into the natural storm water system.

The above mentioned wash water should go through the following processes:

1. The washwater should be able to drain out of the hatchery via waste water inlets covered with grids.
2. The water should then be piped into an effluent pit.
3. Water should then flow through a silt trap.
4. Water should then flow through a grease trap.
5. The water should then be released into the packaging plant where it will be treated.
6. Finally, after the water has been treated in the packaging plant it should be released into a settling pond.

8.2.2 Truck Washing Bays

As part of the day to day running of the hatchery facility trucks will be washed on site. This should occur on a bunded washing bay where the wash water will be separated at source (inlets within the bunded bay) and piped via a separate waste water system. This water may not be released into the natural storm water system.

The above mentioned washwater should go through the following processes:

1. The washwater should be able to drain out of the bunded washing bay via waste water inlets covered with grids.
2. The water should then be piped into an effluent pit.
3. Water should then flow through a silt trap.
4. Water should then flow through a grease trap.
5. The water should then be released into the packaging plant where it will be treated.
6. After the water has been treated in the packaging plant it should be released into a settling pond.

9 Impacts Related to Industrial/Contaminated Stormwater Runoff

All industrial/contaminated stormwater from the new hatchery will be separated at source and managed separately from the storm water runoff.

9.1 Parking Bays

Parking bays for trucks that park overnight may contain oil spillage. Stormwater that flows over these areas should be separated from the natural stormwater.

The above mentioned industrial stormwater should go through the following processes:

1. The industrial stormwater should be able to drain out of the parking bay via storm water inlets covered with grids.

2. The water should then be piped into an effluent pit.
3. Water should then flow through a silt trap.
4. Water should then flow through a grease trap.
5. The water should then be released into the packaging plant where it will be treated.
6. After the water has been treated in the packaging plant it should be released into a settling pond.

9.2 Rainwater Harvesting

To minimise the amount of stormwater that flows over the facility and become contaminated, the roof top of the hatchery will be used to harvest rain water.

The roof should have gutters and down pipes leading to the tanks. All tank openings at the top are to be fitted with gauze screens to prevent the breeding of mosquitos. Just before entry into the tanks pipes should be fitted with P-traps to prevent entry via the down pipes. All down pipes are to be fitted with a "first flush" system to prevent roof debris from entering the tanks. The tanks could be inter-connected with a piped system to convey water to suitable locations.

10 Management of Clean Stormwater Runoff from the Study Site

10.1 Clean Stormwater

Storm water infrastructure design should be based on the existing course of runoff into the natural environment since that is more sustainable and easier to maintain in the long term. The natural storm water from the areas surrounding the hatchery facility should however be **diverted away from the hatchery** so as not to become contaminated. This water should be attenuated by drains and should then flow into the existing natural drainage channel.

Techniques to channel this water away may include the following:

- Construction of bund walls around facility.
- Bioswales to channel water away.

- Stormwater channels with energy dissipaters.

The main objective when handling the natural storm water runoff is to protect the receiving environment by:

- Minimising changes in volume of run-off;
- Minimising negative impacts on water quality;
- Minimising velocity of storm water run-off;
- Minimising sedimentation of natural ecosystems by preventing erosion and trapping sediment;
- Minimising peak flows during storm events;
- Minimising downstream effects.

10.1.1 Stormwater Discharge Points

To prevent erosion caused by stormwater discharge points the following provisions should be made:

- Rock filled mattresses at the discharge points.
- Dissipators at the discharge points.
- Gabion basket/s at the discharge points.

10.2 Gravel Road

A new gravel road for access to the hatchery will have to be constructed.

The following storm water management techniques may be applied to the road:

- Ensure that the new gravel road on site has side drains at maximum 25 meter intervals.
- The access road eventually becomes a ring road and the fall on the ring road should be to the outside of the ring i.e. away from the hatchery.
- The side drains should then discharge the run off into existing vegetated land where the run off infiltrate into the existing soils. These areas should be

contoured so as to protect the areas from erosion during significant rain fall events.

11 Roles and Responsibilities

11.1 Developer/Applicant/Owner of the Facility

The developer is accountable for ensuring compliance with the stormwater and waste management plan during all the development phases of the project.

11.2 Project Manager

The project manager is responsible to ensure compliance with this Plan through delegation of the work to the contractors, and monitoring of performance as per the ECO's reports.

11.3 Contractor

The contractors shall be responsible for ensuring that all activities on site are undertaken in accordance with the measures stipulated in this document and that sub-contractor(s) and labourers are duly informed of their roles and responsibilities in this regard.

11.4 Engineer

A suitably qualified storm water engineer should be furnished with the plans of the hatchery. The storm water engineer will assist with the storm water system design from an engineering point of view in order to ensure that the system complies with the relevant engineering standards as enforced by the Madibeng Local Municipality and all other government departments that might have an interest in the matter. The engineer will also calculate the required attenuation of water on site after flood events (i.e. 1:5 year, 1:20 year/ 1:25 year). The engineer will also assist with the

A Conceptual Storm and Waste Water Management and Monitoring Plan for the proposed
Kroon's Hatchery

identification of emergency attenuation solutions in order to prevent the unnecessary release of large quantities of water from the site during flood events and to prevent the flooding of the site.

11.5 Environmental Compliance Officer (ECO)

An independent environmental compliance officer shall be appointed for the duration of the project.

Appendix H:

Impact Assessment

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
PLANNING AND DESIGN PHASE									
Bio-Physical									
Geotechnical and Soils	Direct and Indirect	-Excavation of soils for foundations -Vegetation clearing for site camp/s, parking areas and stockpile areas	-No	-Negative	-Low	-High	-Site 2 is not located near any geological structural defects. --It is critical that all civil design and construction must be in accordance with prevalent soil conditions. -Designs of storage tanks for water must be appropriate to site layout. -Determine the ground water levels on the site before designing of the structures and the tank installation. -Designs of on-site sewage package plant to cater for leak detection system and underground containment tank in the case of a power failure. -Waste water pond where the waste water (wash water, detergent and fluff) effluent from the hatchery and on-site package plant will be discharged into must be appropriately lined (SANS approved) to counteract leakage. -Include dust pollution control measures. - The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels. The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of	-High for all anticipated impacts	-Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p> <p>The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (NEM: AQA), 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004 as amended) must be taken into consideration when developing the facility, when the facility is in operation and when the facility is decommissioned.</p> <p>From a site selection point of view Portion 322 is situated the furthest away from residential areas i.e. Bushveld View Estate</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>and Ana Agricultural Holdings. From this perspective Portion 322 is the least likely to pose any potential nuisance impact on residential estates situated to the west or south-west, which could result in continuous complaints by residents.</p> <p>-Paved areas to be impermeable surfaces and such surface must also be lined in order to prevent leachate/ soil pollution and ground water pollution.</p> <p>-Make provision for ground water quality in monitoring boreholes to assist with the monitoring of ground water levels and quality.</p> <p>- Soils associated with such rocks usually have heave characteristics and therefore foundation designs and all other structures and features to be erected on the study area must be designed to accommodate some swelling and shrinking. Corrosiveness can also be an issue and therefore services designs, especially pipes and connections to be used must be able to tolerate heave and corrosive conditions.</p>			
Topography	-Direct	- Siting and layout of the site. Levelling of the site and building it up.	-No	-Negative	-Medium	-High	<p>-Take environmental features (water bodies, environmentally sensitive areas, heavy traffic) into consideration during site foundation.</p> <p>-Avoid drainage lines,</p> <p>-Avoid large indigenous trees or include them in the landscaping.</p> <p>-Ensure sloped rehabilitated areas do not erode by using appropriate erosion control such as berms and stakes.</p> <p>-Rehabilitate slope areas to 1.3 and cover with topsoil, revegetate and water regularly.</p>	-High for all anticipated impacts	-Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>-Ensure that Storm water is properly managed and diverted around the site to avoid erosion.</p> <p>-Rehabilitation with stockpiled topsoil to occur as soon as possible.</p> <p>--It is recommended for storm water to be channeled away from the facility.</p> <p>-Industrial stormwater should be separated from natural storm water.</p> <p>-Industrial storm water (parking, washing bays, effluent related to industrial activities etc) to be separated from natural storm water. This water must go through a filtration system (grease/oil, silt traps etc).</p> <p>-Industrial storm water to go through a drainage point with a grid cover to remove litter and other large solids.</p> <p>-It is recommended that green technology such as rain water harvesting be used to capture storm water on the hatchery roof tops.</p> <p>- Surface water runoff should be spread as wide as possible and not directed on specific areas as this could lead to the increase of soil erosion potential. Groundwater seepage and erosion control measures should be implemented to prevent water stagnation, siltation and loss of existing and remaining topsoil on site.</p> <p>- Return of topsoil and seed with endemic vegetation must commence immediately once construction is completed; Embankments are to be compacted and covered with grass; Suitable stormwater structures and techniques must be implemented to prevent erosion; and Attenuate stormwater on the site, where required as necessary and break the speed</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						and quantity of the stormwater to be discharged into the natural environment.			
Hydrology	Direct and Indirect	-Leakage of on-site package plant and waste pond (that will receive effluent from the hatchery and package plant) can cause ground water pollution. -Spillages on the surface can cause surface water pollution potentially pollute the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River that flows from east to west along the northern boundary of the Site Alternative 2 (Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ)	-Yes	-Negative	-High	-High	-Although no wetlands were identified on site during the Wetland Assessment conducted, the wetland specialist recommended that a 100m buffer must be applied around the non-perennial watercourse due to the site occurring outside the urban edge (due to connectivity that still exists upstream and downstream of the watercourse). -Design the on-site package plant should be situated at the lowest point of the site to prevent surface water and ground water contamination. -Design the waste pond to include an appropriate lining (SABS approved) to prevent any leakage. -Compile an emergency and response plan for pollution and other incidents. -Take the necessary SANS standards for poultry facilities, into consideration. -Take the contaminated land provisions as set out in the National Environmental Management: Waste Act into consideration. -Paved areas to be impermeable. -Confirm water discharge standards with the local authority. -Prevent the mixing of cleaning/process water with storm water and roof water. -A proper storm water management system should be designed or in place for implementation during construction to manage all surface water flows in a sustainable manner. Provision should in addition be made for an oil-water separator to remove all hydrocarbons,	-High for all the anticipated impacts	-Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>greases etc. as a result of waste items that may be contaminated, prior to be discharged into the municipal storm water system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - This separator must be compliant with SANS. - Proper provision should be made for a designated area on site for the duration of the operational phase for the storage of hazardous and/ or flammable items, including oils, greases, fuel etc. The said area should be lined with secondary containment and bunded to contain at least 110% of the spilled substance. <p>-- <u>Storage of liquid waste in settling ponds:</u> Where possible, solids and larger suspended matter should be removed from the effluent stream by the use of coarse screening equipment prior to entering a settling pond. The capacity of any settling pond should provide adequate retention time for entrained solids to settle out (one and a half to two hours are normally satisfactory). Adequate free board should be provided to prevent storm water overflowing from the pond. The outflow from the settling pond should be conveyed either to a holding pond before irrigation over land or to wastewater stabilisation ponds. Captured solids should be applied to land in a sustainable manner using crop nutrient needs and status of soil. The nutrient loading to land is a cumulative loading from all sources, i.e. solid manures, liquids and any artificial fertiliser added.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The hazardous waste to be treated/processed during the 1st phase of the hatchery development will be less than 		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						550kg per day and therefore it will not be necessary to apply for a waste license for the 1 st phase of the hatchery development. The applicant will apply for a waste license at the National Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) by means of a Full EIA and will only commence with the 2 nd phase of the development once the required waste license has been issued by DEA. According to Annexure 1(a) of the National Waste Information Regulations, 2012, the owner has to register the generation of hazardous waste on the South African Waste Information System (SAWIS). This Regulation is regarded as applicable, because the facility generates more than 20kg of hazardous waste per day. The facility will also treat/process hazardous waste and according to the Regulations, the treatment of general waste using any form of treatment at a facility that has the capacity to process 10 tons of general waste or 500kg of hazardous waste per day excluding the treatment of effluent, wastewater or sewerage, must register on SAWIS.		
Geohydrology	Direct and Indirect	-Leakage of on-site package plant and waste pond (that will receive effluent from the hatchery and package plant) can cause ground water pollution. -Spillages on the surface can cause surface water pollution potentially pollute the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River that flows from east to west along the northern boundary of the Site Alternative 2 (Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ)	-Yes	-Negative	-High	-High	-A Section 21 (a) Water Use Licence Application will need to be applied for the abstraction of water from existing borehole on the site. -The water needs of the hatchery at 322 400m ³ , exceeds the abstraction allowed in terms of the GA and that a non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west past the site outside the northern boundary of the site, a full Water Use Licence Application is triggered. No development is allowed within the 100m buffer associated with	

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>the non-perennial stream flowing past the site outside its northern boundary.</p> <p>-A 24-hour yield test is required to confirm availability of water for all five phases of the hatchery development.</p> <p>-Borehole water quality tests must also be carried out to ascertain whether the borehole water quality meets the hatchery standards or whether water treatment will be required.</p> <p>- In terms of compliance with the hatchery water quality, pH, the sum of chloride and sulphate and iron are within the guideline limits. In contrast, the total hardness (560 mg CaCO₃/ℓ) exceeds the recommended maximum concentration of 35 to 107mg mg CaCO₃/ℓ for typical hatchery water quality. It is therefore recommended that water softeners will be required to reduce the water hardness. The magnesium concentration (96.8mg/ℓ) exceeds the recommended maximum concentration of 50 mg/ℓ and requires specific treatment.</p> <p>-The quality of groundwater supply must be monitored frequently for parameters as stipulated in the EMPr.</p> <p>--Monitoring boreholes downstream of the hatchery to detect any groundwater contamination which emanate from this activity.</p> <p>--Regular water quality tests of the watercourse should be performed at regular intervals during the operational phase to ensure no pollution of surface water has occurred.</p> <p>-Adherence to borehole pumping rates and ensure the correct pump is installed to enable pumping of the recommended volumes.</p> <p>-Monitoring of water levels in the abstraction borehole.</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>- Designs of on-site sewage package plant to cater for leak detection system and underground containment tank in the case of a power failure.</p> <p>-On site sewage package plant should have spare capacity of 48 hours to store untreated sewage.</p> <p>-Waste water pond where the waste water (wash water, detergent and fluff) effluent from the hatchery and on-site package plant will be discharged into must be appropriately lined (SANS approved) to counteract leakage.</p> <p>-Paved areas to be impermeable surfaces and such surface must also be lined in order to prevent leachate/ soil pollution and ground water pollution.</p> <p>-Make provision for ground water quality in monitoring boreholes to assist with the monitoring of ground water levels and quality.</p> <p>-Water quality in the hatchery must consider the following water quality parameters: Acidity/alkalinity (pH): A pH of 7 is neutral. Below 7, the water becomes acid (can cause corrosion) while above 7 means the water is alkaline (can indicate hard water due to high levels of calcium). Generally, a pH of 6-8 is acceptable - and pH can be corrected by adding chemicals. Total hardness is an indication of hard water, which can cause limescale build-up, resulting in inefficiencies or the breakdown of equipment. The most common unit used is °dH (German degree) or mg CaCO3/l. Generally, 2-6°dH (35-107 mg CaCO3/l) is advised, with a maximum of 2°dH recommended for nozzle/spray</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>humidification. Water softeners are used to reduce water hardness.</p> <p>Suspended particles should be absent, as these will block pipes, nozzles etc. Suspended solids are removed by filters. Microbial contamination should be absent. If water is contaminated, another source should be used. Disinfection can reduce contamination, but for example, using water contaminated with Pseudomonas, Acentobacter, Proteus, yeasts or molds - even after disinfection - for humidification is not advised.</p> <p>Some elements in water are known for aggressive reactions which cause the discolouration of equipment. Commonly, the following thresholds are used: the total sum of chloride and sulphate (Cl & SO4) max 200mg/l, Magnesium (Mg) max 50mg/l, Iron (Fe) max 0.02mg/l. These elements require specific treatments. Extremely pure water (for example distilled or Reverse Osmosis water) is also known to be aggressive. It is therefore advisable to build a small bypass into the system.</p> <p>Surface water runoff drains and maintenance of structure and equipment that surrounds the waste water pond is maintained and kept in a good working condition.</p>			
Social and Economical									
Financial	-Direct	No financial provision for the decommissioning phase and for rehabilitation. Must be included as part of the EMP. -Peruse all the mitigation measures as supplied by all the specialists and ensure that there	-Yes	Negative	High	Medium	Make provision for the decommissioning phase and for rehabilitation and emergency incidents prior to the construction of the proposed hatchery. If required obtain the necessary insurance to cover pollution incidents,	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE					
		are sufficient funds available for rehabilitation purposes and decommissioning.				contaminated land queries and reports as well as any other health, safety or environmental incidents that could arise during the construction, operation and decommissioning phases of the hatchery.		
Cultural/historical	Direct	Heritage discovery potential	No	Negative	Low	<p>Site Alternative 2 is the preferred site due to no impacts that will be posted on archaeological or historical sites, features or material.</p> <p>During the construction phase, should the construction workers identify any cultural heritage features, all construction work must cease and this must be reported to the appointed Environmental Control Officer (ECO) or site officer in charge, and the relevant Heritage Authority and in this context the North West Provincial Heritage Authority.</p> <p>The following have been recommended as per comments received from the SAHRA in accordance with Section 38(4) of the NHRA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Section 38(4)a-The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites (APM) Unit no objections to the proposed development; -Section 38(4)b –The recommendations of the specialists are supported and must be adhered to. No additional specific conditions are provided for the development; -Section 38(4)c(i)- If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed 	Low	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE						NATURE
						<p>development, SAHRA APM unit (Natasha Higgitt/Phillip Hine 021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</p> <p>-Section 38(4)c(ii)-If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (Thingahangwi Tshivhase/Mimi Seetelo 012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</p> <p>-Section 38(4)d-See section 51(1) of the NHRA;</p> <p>-Section 38(4)e- The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists:</p> <p>i) if heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue operation maybe required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;</p> <p>-The Final BAR and EMPr must be submitted to SAHRA for record purposes; and</p> <p>-The decision regarding the EA Application must be communicated to SAHRA and uploaded to the SAHRIS Case application.</p>			
Roads Upgrades	Direct and Indirect	Impacts on provincial and local roads and on adjacent properties	Yes	Negative	Medium	Medium	-The existing gravel road that falls within an existing servitude, leading off the R511 may need to be widened or upgraded to	High	

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>cater for deliveries and collections to and from the hatchery.</p> <p>-During the construction and operational phases of the gravel road, dust suppression measures will have to be implemented.</p> <p>-- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels.</p> <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p> <p>--Identify surrounding properties that could potentially be affected by road widening (i.e. accesses temporarily affected) and prepare notices to distribute to such affected parties.</p> <p>-Due to the low trip generation where there are less than fifty (50) peak hour trips, the site will not require any mitigation or road improvements as the subject property is adequate to permit safe traffic movements by utilizing the one point of access to and from the R511</p>			
Qualitative Environment	Direct and Indirect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Dust pollution -Noise Pollution -Soil pollution -Construction after hours and during weekends and public holidays -Visual Pollution -Waste Management -Lighting Pollution -Signage authorisations 	Yes, some impacts	Negative	Low, Medium and High	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Address dust pollution and specify damping down of exposed surfaces during the dry and windy seasons. -- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels. <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p> <p>-Supply working hours and rules regarding persons allowed to reside on site and noise during the construction phase.</p> <p>- Some construction phase noise associated with builder's machinery and processes are expected for the construction phase.</p> <p>The proposed hatchery will not generate large amounts of traffic and the hatchery</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>activities will mainly take place indoors. It is therefore not anticipated that the noise levels associated with the proposed facility will exceed 45dBA (an acceptable noise level for a rural residential area)¹ at any of the property boundaries. Also take note that the study area is bordered by a brick factory to the immediate west and other business properties as well as a busy road also occur to the north-west, west and south-west of the study area. The land-use to the north-east, east and south-east is mainly agricultural and the dwellings of the farms to the north-east, east and south-east is not located in close proximity of the hatchery facility.</p> <p><i>It will be necessary to manage and monitor the noise levels throughout the construction and operational phases and complaints lodged regarding noise by surrounding land-owners, tenants etc. must be captured in the site incidents book and must be addressed.</i></p> <p>-All contractors and sub-contractors must comply with Part F: Site Operations of the National Building Regulations- attached hereto as Appendix B of the EMPr (EMPr attached as Appendix J of the BAR).</p> <p>-Require that construction equipment be furnished with noise muffing devices.</p> <p>-Make provision for drip trays in the tender documentation.</p> <p>-Plan signage to be visible during the day and night in such a way that it complies with the standards of the local authority, and the relevant roads authorities.</p> <p>-Signage must be designed to cause minimum distraction of vehicles passing by and it should not reflect into the</p>		

¹ In terms of the Gauteng Noise Regulations

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>windows of the surrounding properties (nearest property is Horizon Bricks-no residential or commercial properties are in close proximity to Portion 322).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Confirm signage application requirements with the relevant local authority, district municipality and provincial road authority -Confirm with the local authority that builder's waste can be dumped at the local registered landfill site. -Confirm the local authority's capacity to collect operational phase waste and that waste will be removed by the local authority. -Confirm locality of waste collection areas during the construction and operational phase. -Allow enough space in layout for local authority trucks and other large vehicles to move safely though the site. -Biological waste such as infertile eggs, mortalities and egg shells will be processed or reduced in size before being carried through into steel drums situated outside of the facility via a screw conveyor. Biological waste will then be transported to the Kroon's Chickens Abattoir's rendering plant situated in close proximity to the site. - Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day. - A facility conducting an activity per source category and above the threshold stipulated in Annexure 1 is regarded as a 		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>Category A data provider and must register within 30 days of the Regulations coming into effect, on the National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS).</p> <p>Therefore, it will be necessary for the applicant to register on the data base as referred to above as soon as the hatchery becomes operational. The information as captured on the data base will eventually be used for purpose of the determination of Tax payable when Phase 2 of the Carbon Tax Act comes into effect.</p>			
Health and Safety	Direct and Indirect	<p>-Impacts on the health and safety of the surrounding environment during the construction and operational phase</p> <p>- Impacts on the health and safety of the employees at the chicken hatchery and any clientele at the hatchery during construction and operational phases</p>	Yes, in some cases	Negative	High	High	<p>-Make provision for the appointment of a suitably qualified health and safety officer to assist with compliance with the relevant health and safety legislation during all the development phases of the hatchery.</p> <p>-The minimum standards relating to the health and safety for chick hatcheries as stipulated in the South African Poultry Association Abridged Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery, must be adhered to.</p> <p>-Plan and discuss fire prevention measures and allow for the installation of the required fire equipment and health and safety signage for the operational phase.</p> <p>- In light of the nature of the proposed development and control measures that are required to be implemented to counteract the transmission of diseases, it is recommended that the developer may have to register in terms of the Fertilizers, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies, and Stock Remedies Act.</p>	High	Low
<u>Institutional</u>									

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE					
Compliance with the relevant local authority by-laws and policies	Direct	-Local authorities have specific requirements for storm water management, discharge of treated effluent into the municipal system, emergency procedures, construction works that affect roads and accesses to roads, road safety conditions, temporary disruption of services, air emissions, waste management, outdoor advertising, water services, health and safety, security etc.	Yes	Negative	Medium to High	<p>-It is recommended that the proposed hatchery be authorised due to being in line with local plans and strategies with the provision that the hatchery development complies with the recommendations as contained in the EMPr.</p> <p>– Obtain copies of such by-laws/policies from the local and district municipality in order to ensure compliance.</p> <p>-Confirm that the proposed hatchery will comply with the relevant local authority and district municipality by-laws and policies:</p> <p>North West Biodiversity Sector Plan, 2015; Madibeng Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP); Madibeng Local Municipality Draft Spatial and Land Use Management By-Law 2016 and; Madibeng Local Municipality Draft Waste Management By-Law, 2017.</p> <p>- Site Alternative 2 is in line with national, provincial and local development policies and frameworks.</p> <p>-The proposed hatchery is in line with the IDP, the SDF plans and SPLUMA as the development will be contributing towards food production and employment creation.</p> <p>-Application made in terms of Section 56 of the Madibeng Spatial Planning and Land Use Management By-Law, 2016 for the amendment of the Peri-Urban Town Planning Scheme, 1975 for the rezoning of the property to include a “cultivation shed” for purposes of the hatchery.</p> <p>-Proposed hatchery viewed as a societal priority due to contribution to food production egg production is not conducted on a large scale within the Madibeng Local Municipality and therefore the hatchery will indirectly</p>	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>contribute to expanding the commercial farming sector, specifically egg production.</p> <p>-Minimum standards pertaining to Health and Safety, for Chick Hatcheries as set out in South African Poultry Association Abridged Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery must be conformed to.</p> <p>-In terms of the Madibeng Local Municipality Draft Waste Management By-Law 2019, the Municipal waste management officer must be informed of the intention to generate general waste, 60 days prior to commencement of generating waste.</p> <p>-The hatchery will need to comply with the Norms and Standards for Storage of Waste, 2013 published in terms of the NEM: WA due to triggering Category C (2) of the List of Waste Management Activities that have, or are likely to have a detrimental effect on the environment, due to storing more than 80m³ of hazardous waste.</p> <p>-The hatchery must register in terms of the Fertilizers, farm feeds, Agricultural Remedies, Stock Remedies Act, if required.</p> <p>-A separate Environmental Impact Assessment process will be conducted for the Waste Management Licence and Air Quality Licence triggered by the processing of waste by means of the macerator.</p>		

CONSTRUCTION PHASE

Bio-Physical

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE						NATURE
Geology and Soils	Direct	Loss of topsoil for vegetation clearing, clearing for parking areas and stockpile areas	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Impact on the environment is expected to be of minimal importance as Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ has a low ecological sensitivity. -Earth moving and vehicle access must not occur within the watercourse. -Spillages must be contained. -Vehicles are to be parked and serviced in a bermed or banded area away from the buffer. -Demarcated and secure storage facilities must be used for the storage and handling of lubricants, oils, paint and cement. -Hay bales and/or sandbags must be used for areas close to the watercourse. -Top soil must be stockpiled separately. -Once the construction phase is complete, the stockpiled topsoil must be added to the areas to be rehabilitated. 	Medium	Low
	Direct	Loss of land capability	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Although Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ occurs in an area that is signified as arable, the site is classified as having a low ecological sensitivity. -The proposed site is also earmarked for future residential purposes (although not foreseen that the land will be under pressure for residential development in the long term). 	High	Low
	Direct	Soil collapse	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Pyroxinite, harzburgite and norite soils are the soils of the study site. Such soils do not present any collapse potential. -Mark all excavations clearly and make workers aware of possible soils collapse in and around excavations. -Trucks and equipment should be kept away from the unstable areas in order to avoid collapse. 	Medium	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS					SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
	Direct	Soil pollution	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Temporary measures (i.e. drip trays/ temporary bunded areas) will be implemented to ensure that no hydrocarbons and/or other pollutant liquids are spilt, and if so, they are contained and a clean-up protocol to be followed. -A Waste Management Plan must be developed specifically for the hatchery. -All unusable waste must be stored in an appropriately sealed container and store in a bunded area. -Waste bins must be sealed appropriately to prevent leakage of waste and which must be emptied out regularly. -Waste should be recycled as far as possible and separated into different containers (paper, plastic, glass etc.). -Waste water is recommended to be re-used where possible. -Waste water disposal methods must ensure no pollution of the environment (soil and water) occurs. 	High	Low
	Direct	-Perched water conditions (mainly during the rainy periods) could make excavations and the installations of the underground containment tank for sewage	No	Negative	Low	Low	<p>Ground water elevation recorded during the geohydrological investigation reveals 1, 139 and 1, 200m above mean sea level.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - It is important to take note of possible perched water conditions during the construction phase. -Sewage containment tanks must preferably be installed on a section of the site where the ground water table is the lowest. 	High	Low
	Direct	<p>Clayish conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Possible cracks in structures -Possible damage to tanks to be installed (swelling and shrinking of soils) – can cause ground water pollution 	No	Negative	Low	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Geotechnical engineer to conduct more detailed geotechnical investigation of site in order to determine perched water conditions and expansiveness of soils that could pose an impact on the infrastructure and cause potential ground water pollution. 	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
Topography	Indirect	-Alteration of topography- cut and fill exercises- low gradient -Loose soils cause siltation	No	Negative	Low	Medium	-The impact on the environment is expected to be Low. Topography is generally flat. -Temporary construction phase storm water management measures to be implemented (i.e. sand bags and hay bales) in order to prevent siltation.	High	Low
Hydrology	Direct	-No sanitation facilities for workers -Perched water tables/ higher water tables during the rainy season -Ground water and surface water pollution	No	Negative	Low	Low	-A 100m buffer zone must be applied around the non-perennial watercourse due to the subject site being located outside of the urban edge. - No development is permitted within the buffer zone. -It is integral that waste management measures be implemented to ensure that no pollution of the environment occurs.	Medium	Low
	Direct	Siltation and Erosion	Yes	Negative	Low	Medium	-Temporary storm water management solutions such as silt traps, hay bales and sand bags (especially close by to the watercourse) must be properly implemented to minimise silt discharge into surrounding systems during rainstorm events. -It is also recommended that precautionary measures be taken in order to prevent the extensive loss of soil during rainstorms. Large exposed areas should adequately be protected against erosion. -Measures should be implemented during the rainy season to channel storm water	Medium	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						away from open excavations and foundations.			
Effects on fauna and flora/ bio-diversity	Direct/ indirect	Removal of indigenous vegetation	No	Neutral The study area has a low ecological sensitivity	Low	Low	<p>-Approximately 60% (eastern part) of Portion 322 is classified as a Critical Biodiversity Area 2 (CBA 2) and the remaining 40% (western part) is classified as Ecological Support Area (ESA2) due to occurrence within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area in the form of the Hartebeestpoort Nature Reserve and the Magaliesberg Protected Natural Environment, and due to occurring within an Important Bird Area and within a Freshwater Ecosystem Protected Area (FEPA) Catchment.</p> <p>-Due to the proposed development site occurring within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area, specific NEMA listed activities apply to the proposed hatchery.</p> <p>-The study site of Portion 322 has been classified as having a low ecological sensitivity.</p> <p>-Prior to construction commencing with any construction works, the development area should be fenced off from the areas that are to be retained as an open space system. The construction related impacts must be contained within the fenced-off development area.</p> <p>-An Ecological Management Plan (EMP) must be developed for the construction and the operational phase of the hatchery.</p> <p>- The indigenous plants that naturally grow on the study site (that would otherwise be destroyed) should be incorporated into the landscaped area.</p> <p>-The area must be properly managed throughout the construction phase in terms of fire, eradication of exotics etc. to</p>	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						ensure continuous biodiversity. It is proposed that as little of the vegetation cover to be cleared to prevent erosion on the application site. Only sections that are intended for the development must be cleared from vegetation. Each section must be rehabilitated as soon as construction is done.			
<u>Social and Economical</u>									
Cultural/historical	Direct	Heritage discovery potential – regarded as low	No	Negative	Low	Low	Site Alternative 2 is the preferred site due to no impacts that will be posted on archaeological or historical sites, features or material. During the construction phase, should the construction workers identify any cultural heritage features, all construction work must cease and this must be reported to the appointed Environmental Control Officer (ECO) or site officer in charge, and the relevant Heritage Authority, and in this context the North West Provincial Heritage Authority.	Medium	Low
Installation of services and upgrading of roads	Direct and Indirect	Impacts on provincial and local roads and on adjacent properties	Yes	Negative	Medium	Medium	-The existing gravel road that falls within an existing servitude, leading off the R511 will need to be widened to cater for deliveries and collections to and from the hatchery. --Identify surrounding properties that could potentially be affected by road widening (i.e. accesses temporarily affected) and prepare notices to distribute to such affected parties.	Medium - High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
Atmospheric Emissions/Air quality pollution	Direct	Dust emissions	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<p>-Dust suppression measures must be implemented during the construction phase to minimise dust generated by construction activities.</p> <p>-Regular and effective damping down of working areas (especially during the dry and windy periods) must be carried out to prevent dust pollution that will have a negative impact on the surrounding developments.</p> <p>-When necessary, these working areas should be damped down at least twice a day depending on the volume of dust.</p> <p>-- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels.</p> <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will</p>	High	

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p>		
	Direct	Emissions from vehicles and equipment (CO ₂ , NO _x , SO _x , VOC's etc.)	No	Negative	Low-Medium	<p>Medium</p> <p>-All construction vehicles must be maintained such as to operate efficiently. Idling times of machinery to be minimised.</p> <p>- A facility conducting an activity per source category and above the threshold stipulated in Annexure 1 is regarded as a Category A data provider and must register within 30 days of the Regulations coming into effect, on the National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS).</p> <p>Therefore, it will be necessary for the applicant to register on the data base as referred to above as soon as the hatchery</p>	Low	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS					SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
							becomes operational. The information as captured on the data base will eventually be used for purpose of the determination of Tax payable when Phase 2 of the Carbon Tax Act comes into effect.		
	Direct	Air pollution (odours)	No	Negative	Low	Low	-The study site of Portion 322 is located the furthest from the residential areas (specifically Bushveld View Estate and Ana Agricultural Holdings), and is therefore very unlikely to pose an air pollution issue in terms of odour which would cause continuous complaints by the residents. -The wind direction is easterly during winter and westerly during summer. Any probable odour emanating from the hatchery would affect the Horizon Brick factory. - Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day.	Low	Low
Noise	Direct	Noise	No	Negative	Low	Medium	-Noise could become a factor to the Hartebeestpoort Nature Reserve and the Magaliesberg Protected Natural Environment situated south-west within 3kms and south-south east within 2kms of the proposed hatchery site. - Some construction phase noise associated with builder's machinery and processes are expected for the construction phase. The proposed hatchery will not generate large amounts of traffic and the hatchery activities will mainly take place indoors. It is therefore not anticipated that the noise levels associated with the proposed	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>facility will exceed 45dBA (an acceptable noise level for a rural residential area)² at any of the property boundaries. Also take note that the study area is bordered by a brick factory to the immediate west and other business properties as well as a busy road also occur to the north-west, west and south-west of the study area. The land-use to the north-east, east and south-east is mainly agricultural and the dwellings of the farms to the north-east, east and south-east is not located in close proximity of the hatchery facility.</p> <p><i>It will be necessary to manage and monitor the noise levels throughout the construction and operational phases and complaints lodged regarding noise by surrounding land-owners, tenants etc. must be captured in the site incidents book and must be addressed.</i></p> <p>-Construction operations shall not occur before or after normal working hours. Noise monitoring should be undertaken as spot checks.</p> <p>-When required noise mufflers should be utilized to reduce noise. It is important to keep an open channel of communication between all stakeholders and keep record of any concerns raised i.e. Complaints Register to be kept on site.</p> <p>-All construction activities must be restricted to normal working hours as depicted in the NBR document for site operations.</p> <p>-No construction may take place on Sundays and public holidays.</p> <p>-If any construction activities are required to take place on the aforementioned days, the surrounding neighbours must be informed of such planned works at least</p>		

² In terms of the Gauteng Noise Regulations

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						48 hours prior to the relevant Sunday or public holiday.			
	Direct	Visual impact	No	Negative	Low-Medium	Medium	<p>-The visual impact of construction activities will be low-medium term. Bollards and protective barriers as well as safety tape may be utilised around the site.</p> <p>-A specific location must be designated for the stockpiling of builders' rubble and associated construction material.</p> <p>-Prior to construction commencing on the site, an area on site must be demarcated for a site camp.</p> <p>-The selected site should not impair views (line of sight) of drivers utilising roads, nor should it be a distraction.</p>	Low	
Waste Generation	Direct	Domestic waste	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<p>-A Waste Management Plan must be developed specifically for the hatchery.</p> <p>-All unusable waste must be stored in an appropriately sealed container and store in a bunded area.</p> <p>-Waste bins must be sealed appropriately to prevent leakage of waste and which must be emptied out regularly.</p> <p>-Waste should be recycled as far as possible and separated into different containers (paper, plastic, glass etc.).</p> <p>-Waste water is recommended to be re-used where possible.</p> <p>-Waste water disposal methods must ensure no pollution of the environment (soil and water) occurs.</p> <p>-All employees will be subjected to induction to understand the environmental management requirements on site.</p> <p>-Domestic waste will be removed from the site by a certified waste contractor.</p> <p>-Waste disposal certificates must be kept on record.</p>	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
	Direct	Construction waste	No	Negative	Medium	Medium	-All construction waste must be placed in a demarcated area and disposed of accordingly. --This area will be bermed or appropriately banded so as to prevent the dispersal of said waste by wind and rain. -Waste disposal certificates will be kept on record.	Medium	Low-Medium
	Direct	Hazardous waste	No	Negative	Medium	Medium	-The proposed hatchery must comply with the Norms and Standards for Storage of Waste, 2013 published in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, as the hatchery will store more than 80m ³ of hazardous (biological waste: infertile eggs, mortalities and egg shells) waste. -During the operational phase, all biological waste will be reduced through the use of a macerator situated inside of the facility before being transferred into steel drums outside the facility via a screw conveyor. The waste will then be	Medium	Low-Medium

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE					
						transported to the Kroon's Chickens Abattoir's rendering plant. -- Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day.		
Resource Consumption	Indirect	Electricity consumption	No	Negative	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Fair usage and minimisation of over usage. -A generator to be put in place during incidental power outages. Solar panels are also recommended for use as a backup source for power. -Energy saving light bulbs are also recommended to be used inside of the facility. -Eskom has confirmed ability to upgrade the transformer to a 500kVA transformer immediately subsequent to the property transferring to Kroon's Chickens. 	High	Low
	Direct	Water consumption	No	Negative	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Fair usage and care not to over use the water resources. Promote the re-use and recycling of process waste water if possible. 	High	Low
	Indirect	Fuel consumption	No	Negative	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -All construction vehicles will be maintained such as to operate efficiently. Idling times of machinery to be minimised. 	Medium	Low
	Indirect	Raw materials consumption	No	Negative	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raw materials will be used efficiently. Recycling will be implemented on applicable waste streams and in accordance with the Waste Management Plan. 	Medium	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE		DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE						NATURE
Incidents, Accidents and Potential Emergency Situations	Direct	Pollution incidents	No	Negative	Low-Medium	Medium	-Spillages to be cleaned up immediately. Notification to the Department of Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation (DHSWS) should groundwater be affected. -An emergency response plan should be devised in the event of a spillage or leak.	Medium	Low
	Direct	Health and safety	No	Negative	Low-Medium	Medium	-Make provision for the appointment of a suitably qualified health and safety officer to assist with compliance with the relevant health and safety legislation during all the development phases of the hatchery. -The minimum standards relating to the health and safety for chick hatcheries as stipulated in the South African Poultry Association Abridged Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery, must be adhered to. -Plan and discuss fire prevention measures and allow for the installation of the required fire equipment and health and safety signage for the operational phase. - In light of the nature of the proposed development and control measures that are required to be implemented to counteract the transmission of diseases, it is recommended that the developer may have to register in terms of the Fertilizers, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies, and Stock Remedies Act.	Medium	Low
	Direct	Storage of hydrocarbons	No	Negative	Low-Medium	Medium	-All hazardous materials will be stored in a bunded and lockable area. Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) sheets will be available for all hazardous products. -Concrete mixing and tar preparation have to be carried out away from sensitive areas and on an impermeable substratum, all unused concrete and tar need to be removed.	Low	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>-Areas such as oil storage facilities must still be fitted with the necessary oil interceptors or whatever appliances / interceptors are required to prevent pollution.</p> <p>-Any damage or spills onto the existing roads will be cleaned or fixed immediately after noticing, at the contractor's/developer's cost.</p> <p>-All spillages of oil or fuel onto concrete surfaces shall be controlled by the use of an approved absorbent material.</p> <p>-All soil contaminated by oil, fuel, etc. shall be collected immediately and disposed of at an acceptable disposal site to be approved by the ECO.</p> <p>-Water pollution through fuels, oils or other substances must be avoided.</p> <p>-All clean storm water will be diverted away from potential sources of hydrocarbon contamination, dirty water will be captured and disposed of in a proper manner.</p> <p>-Regular maintenance will be done according to a preventative maintenance program and the SABS standards.</p> <p>-Records will be kept of all spills, substantial spills will immediately be reported to the authorities.</p>			
	Indirect	Fire	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<p>-Fire and emergency plans will be implemented during construction especially due to the two nature reserves and surrounding agricultural holdings located in close proximity.</p> <p>-Adequate firefighting equipment will be instituted as recommended.</p> <p>-Fire breaks will have to be maintained during the operational phase of the hatchery by the owner.</p>	Medium	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>-The containment of fuel stored on site: a groundwater monitoring programme must be implemented.</p> <p>-An accurate oil records (register) must be kept in terms of the purchase, disposal, and recycling of oil).</p> <p>-Ensure that clean-up protocols are in place and are adhered to.</p>			
	Indirect	Safety and security	No	Negative	Low	Medium	<p>-Health and safety officer to be appointed prior to commencement with construction and the safety plan as well as the required safety gear for workers to be available on the study area.</p> <p>-Allow for 24-hour security on the study area.</p> <p>-Fence the construction site at strategic points. This will keep the public out of the potentially dangerous construction area.</p> <p>-Site security will ensure that the site is secured and only authorised access allowed.</p> <p>-If required for some of the workers to sleep on the site, such workers must be accommodated in an allocated area on the construction site.</p> <p>-Plan for the implementation of a security system that will reflect a database of all workers and personnel on site during the construction phase.</p> <p>-Also indicate the names of the workers that will reside on the study area during the construction phase.</p> <p>-Remove the names of workers no longer involved in construction works on the study area immediately after such workers stopped with their duties/ we removed from their duties.</p> <p>-The 24-hour security must be notified of new construction workers/ workers to be accommodated on the study area and must also be informed of workers no</p>	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>longer involved in construction activities on the study area.</p> <p>-Workers that sleep on the study area must sign out when they leave the premises after hours and must sign back in when they return to the accommodation supplied on site. On site accommodation could prevent illegal occupation of open spaces in close proximity of the study area by workers that cannot afford daily travelling costs.</p> <p>-Where possible local laborers must be used in order to avoid an influx of people into the area.</p> <p>-Details of all persons to work on the site that must be supplied to the security and project manager must include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name and Surname, ID Number or Passport Number, Driver's License, copy of relevant ID document/ passport/ driver's license/ service delivered by worker/ employee of the worker/Contact Details of the worker and contact details of a family member or employee. <p>-Fence the area earmarked for the temporary accommodation of construction workers.</p> <p>- If possible, fence the construction site and allow for one/ two allocated and monitored contractor's entrance/s.</p>		
Qualitative Environment	Direct	Visual impact	No	Negative	Low-Medium	Medium	Low	Low
						<p>-The visual impact of construction activities will be low-medium term. Bollards and protective barriers as well as safety tape may be utilised around the site.</p> <p>-A specific location must be designated for the stockpiling of builders' rubble and associated construction material.</p>		

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						-Prior to construction commencing on the site, an area on site must be demarcated for a site camp. -The selected site should not impair views (line of sight) of drivers utilising upgraded roads, nor should it be a distraction.			
	Indirect	Damage to roads	No	Negative	Medium	Medium	-Construction vehicles must avoid using sub-standard roads (i.e. roads in agricultural holdings/ rural areas that are not constructed to provincial/ local authority standards). -Record the condition of the surrounding roads (with photographs) prior to construction and require that contractors repair all damages caused during the construction phase. -Construction vehicles should only be permitted to use a designated construction entrance. -Construction vehicles and activities as well as other heavy vehicles to avoid peak hour traffic times.		
	Indirect	Traffic disruptions	No	Negative	Medium	Medium	-Traffic warning and calming measures will be put in place when construction activities may impact on traffic flow.	Medium	Low-Medium
	Direct	Temporary employment opportunities for construction workers	Yes	Positive	Medium	High	Not required	N/A	N/A

OPERATIONAL PHASE

Bio-Physical

Geology and Soils	Direct and Indirect	-Soil pollution due to spillages -Washing of paved surfaces and equipment with chemicals, soaps etc. and releasing polluted water	Yes	Negative	Medium	Medium – HIGH	-Always ensure that storm water and dirty water are separated. -Install oil traps and grease traps where required.	High	Low
-------------------	---------------------	--	-----	----------	--------	---------------	---	------	-----

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
		onto the surface and allowing it to mix with storm water -On –site package plant and containment tank leakage				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Maintain impermeable paved surfaces and repair areas where leakages into the ground can occur on a regular basis. -Wash paved surfaces on a regular basis. -An Emergency Plan must be implemented. -Monitoring boreholes downstream of the hatchery to detect any groundwater contamination which emanate from this activity. -Compile and implement a waste management plan which includes management of all types of waste created throughout the facility processes and include mitigation measures to prevent pollution in the case of equipment failure or spillages. -Regular water quality tests of the watercourse should be performed at regular intervals during the operational phase to ensure no pollution of surface water has occurred. - A spill Contingency or Emergency Response Plan must be drawn up and should include the actions that need to be taken in account in the event of spillages of chemicals, fuels etc, during the construction and operational phase of the proposed activity. 			
Hydrology	Direct and Indirect	Contamination of ground water and surface water	Yes	Negative	Medium	Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Monitoring boreholes downstream of the hatchery to detect any groundwater contamination which emanate from this activity. --Regular water quality tests of the watercourse should be performed at regular intervals during the operational phase to ensure no pollution of surface water has occurred. -Implement the emergency preparedness and response plan for the operational phase and put emergency contact number 	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE					
						<p>on walls at strategic points for purpose of dealing with emergencies (i.e. fires, explosions, oil spills, fuel spills etc.).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Surface water runoff drains and maintenance of structure and equipment that surrounds the waste water pond is maintained and kept in a good working condition. -Ensure the adequate lining and drainage systems are installed. -Ensure that surface water runoff is contained and treated before disposal. 		

Social and Economical

Waste Generation	Direct	Domestic waste	No	Negative	Medium	High	<p>The Waste Management Plan developed specifically for the hatchery must be implemented.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -All unusable waste must be stored in an appropriately sealed container and store in a bunded area. -Waste bins must be sealed appropriately to prevent leakage of waste and which must be emptied out regularly. -Waste should be recycled as far as possible and separated into different containers (paper, plastic, glass etc.). -Waste water is recommended to be re-used where possible. -Waste water disposal methods must ensure no pollution of the environment (soil and water) occurs. -Domestic waste will be removed from the site by a certified waste contractor. -Waste disposal certificates must be kept on record. - <u>Storage of liquid waste in settling ponds:</u> Where possible, solids and larger suspended matter should be removed from the effluent stream by the use of coarse screening equipment prior to entering a settling pond. 	High	Low-Medium
-------------------------	--------	----------------	----	----------	--------	------	--	------	------------

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						<p>The capacity of any settling pond should provide adequate retention time for entrained solids to settle out (one and a half to two hours are normally satisfactory).</p> <p>Adequate free board should be provided to prevent storm water overflowing from the pond. The outflow from the settling pond should be conveyed either to a holding pond before irrigation over land or to wastewater stabilisation ponds. Captured solids should be applied to land in a sustainable manner using crop nutrient needs and status of soil. The nutrient loading to land is a cumulative loading from all sources, i.e. solid manures, liquids and any artificial fertiliser added.</p>			
	Direct	Hazardous waste	No	Negative	Medium	Medium	<p>The proposed hatchery must comply with the Norms and Standards for Storage of Waste, 2013 published in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, as the hatchery will store more than 80m³ of hazardous (biological waste: infertile eggs, mortalities and egg shells) waste.</p> <p>-During the operational phase, all biological waste will be reduced through the use of a macerator situated inside of the facility before being transferred into steel drums outside the facility via a screw conveyor. The waste will then be transported to the Kroon's Chickens Abattoir's rendering plant.</p> <p>A separate Environmental Impact Assessment process will be conducted for the Waste Management Licence and Air Quality Licence triggered by the processing of waste by means of the macerator.</p>	High	Low

POTENTIAL ADVERSE IMPACTS				SIGNIFICANCE (Prior to mitigation)	PROBABILITY	MANAGEMENT & MITIGATION MEASURES	MITIGATION EFFICIENCY	SIGNIFICANCE (with mitigation)	
TYPE	DESCRIPTION	CUMULATIVE	NATURE						
						-- Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day.			
	Indirect	Lighting	No	Negative	Low- Medium	Medium	<p>-Security lighting during the construction and operation phase must be carefully planned. These lights must not spill into the eyes of oncoming traffic and must not shine into adjacent properties.</p> <p>-Prevent the implementation of exterior advertising signs and name boards that will flicker into the eyes of surrounding neighbours and into the eyes of oncoming traffic.</p> <p>-Exterior lighting, especially the lighting in the vicinity of the open space areas must be designed to shine downwards and the bulbs to be used should preferably be dim.</p>	High	Low

Appendix I:

Public Participation

Appendix I1:

Proof of the placement of the
relevant advertisements

Wat is my regte wanneer ek in 'n motorongeluk beseer is?



Min dinge in die lewe is so traumaties soos om te beseer te word tydens 'n ongeluk. Het jy geweet ... Indien jy of 'n geliefde beseer is in 'n motorongeluk (behalwe wanneer die bestuurder die oorsaak van die ongeluk was), of indien jy 'n afhanklike is van 'n oorlede padongelukslaggoffer, kan jy moontlik 'n eis teen die Padongelukkefonds indien. Die Padongelukkefonds is 'n openbare entiteit wat befonds word deur 'n brandstofheffing wat by die prys van petrol en diesel ingesluit is. Die doel van die Padongelukkefonds is om te vergoed vir verlies of skade as gevolg van ligamlike beserings weens die nalatige bestuur van 'n voertuig op Suid-Afrikaanse paale.

Ná hoe lank moet ek 'n eis indien?

Indien die identiteit van die oortrede bestuurder of eienaar van die voertuig bekend is, moet die eis binne drie jaar vanaf die datum van die ongeluk ingedien word. Dit is nie van toepassing by die eis van 'n minderjarige nie. Indien die identiteit van die persoon onbekend is, moet die eis binne twee jaar ingedien word.

Waarvoor kan ek eis?

- 'n Eis kan uit die volgende bestaan:
- Gelede en toekomstige hospital- en mediese uitgawes
- Gelede en toekomstige verlies van inkomste
- Algemene skadevergoeding vir pyn, lyding en verlies van lewensgenieting.
- Gelede en toekomstige verlies van onderhoud in die geval van die afhanklike van 'n oorlede slaggoffer
- Begrafnisuitgawes

Indien jy meer inligting verlang oor jou regte as 'n padongelukslaggoffer, skakel Yvonne Kruger Ing. by 011-468 5088 of besoek ons webwerf: www.yki.co.za of epos: ykruger@yki.co.za

HEDIE ARTIKEL IS AAN JOU GEBRING DEUR YVONNE KRUGER ING. PROKUREURS WAT SPESIALISEER IN PERSOONLIKE-BESERING-LITIGASIE.



011 - 468 - 5088



Work with leaders in your field every day

Accountant (Cost)

Finance Admin
Boshok, Rustenburg, North West
Ref. No. 24980

Requirements: - Grade 12 - BCom Accounting degree or equivalent - Computer literate for the role including SAP and MS Office - Good administration, communication and interpersonal skills - Supervisory skills - 5 years' experience in accounting/costing in a mining industry - Payroll experience will be advantageous.

Duties: - Be responsible for cost and management accounting - Assist with budgeting and forecasting process - Reconcile general ledger accounts - Supervise payroll and accounts payable of the administration department.

Closing date: 7 March 2019

Apply now at www.glencore.com/careers

Glencore is one of the world's largest globally diversified natural resource companies and a major producer and marketer of more than 90 commodities. Our operations comprise around 150 mining and metallurgical sites, oil production assets and agricultural facilities - supported by a network of more than 90 offices located in over 50 countries.

We provide people with the opportunity to develop and grow their expertise and the confidence to grow their careers

GLENCORE Diversified. Dedicated. Driven.

Linhleko Projects, leaders in their industry



From left: deputy minister of trade and industry Bulelani Magwanishe, CEO of Linhleko Projects Buang Moloto and deputy minister of mineral resources Godfrey Oliphant.



President of FLSmidth Manfred Schaffer who flew in from Denmark to attend the event.

Rustenburg – Linhleko Projects hosted a successful business launch on Monday 18 February. During the launch Linhleko celebrated their corporation agreement with FLSmidth. This partnership consists of a 50/50 profit-sharing agreement in which Linhleko will have guaranteed access to FLSmidth's reflux classifier (RC) technology to enhance chrome recovery at Sibanye-Stillwater's Waterval operation. Linhleko signed an agreement with Sibanye whereby they will build, own and operate a RC modular plant that will produce chromite concentrate by processing material from Sibanye-Stillwater's Waterval's waste dumps. The launch of Linhleko's steel fabrication workshop was another highlight at the event. In an interview with *Platinum Weekly* chief executive officer (CEO) of Linhleko Projects Buang Moloto said: "Regarding the waste chrome recovery agreement, we have a great sense of pride, that as a local Rustenburg-based company, we have partnered with reputable multinational companies to deliver value that will ensure significant market penetration for our technology partner, FLSmidth, for its novel RC Technology. We will also have a positive contribution to our client's cash flow, net present value (NPV) and asset base."

NOTICE OF A BASIC ASSESSMENT, HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT AND WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION PROCESSES

BASIC ASSESSMENT
 Notice is hereby given that an application for an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Process, more specifically a Basic Assessment (BA) process in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended) and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, as amended on 7 April 2017 (Regulations in terms of Chapter 5 of the NEMA) will be lodged with the North West Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development (NWREAD).

HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT
 Notice is hereby given that an application for a Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) in terms of Section 38 of the National Heritage Resources Act (NHRA), 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) will be lodged with the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PRHA-G).

WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION
 A Water Use Licence Application (WULA) in terms of the National Water Act (NWA), 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998, as amended) will be submitted to the Department of Water and Sanitation.

Project Name: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery
Proponent: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd
Project & Property Description: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.
Location: The three sites are situated within the area of Jurisdiction of the Madibeng Local Municipality, North West Province. The proposed sites are surrounded by agricultural land and urban developments. Portion 107 is situated approximately 5km north of the Hartebeestfontein Dam and the R511 runs along the northern boundary of the site. Portion 322 is situated approximately 6km to the north of the Hartebeestfontein Dam and is situated approximately 200m to the north-east of the R511 road. Portions 33 and 168 situated approximately 4.8km to the north of the Hartebeestfontein Dam and approximately 1.2km south west of the R511 road.

Listed Activities applied for in terms of the NEMA 2014 EIA Regulations, as amended:
 Listing Notice 1 – Activity 4.5, 8.9, 10, 12, 19, 27 and 28.
 Listing Notice 3 – Activity 12, h, iv., 14h, iv., 15 e, (ii).
NHRA Activities Triggered: Due to Portion 33, 168, 107 and Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ exceeding 5 000m² a Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment will be required.

The proposed development triggers the following water uses in terms of the NWA:
 Section 21 (a): Taking water from a water resource;
 Section 21 (b): Storing of water;
 Section 21 (c): Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse;
 Section 21 (e): Engaging in a controlled activity;
 Section 21 (g): Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource; and
 Section 21 (j): Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse.

Date of Notice: 26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019.

The activities associated with the aforementioned infrastructure trigger activities listed in Listing Notice 1 and 3 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended in 2017, and are therefore subject to a BA process, and trigger activities in terms of Section 38 of the NHRA, and is therefore subject to a HIA and also a WULA due to activities triggered. Representations with respect to this application may be made by phone, fax or e-mail within **30 days** of the date of this notice. Please note that in order to continue to receive information regarding this project, you must register as an I&AP with the contact person listed below. All registered I&APs will be allowed **60 days** to comment on the WULA and **30 days** to comment on the BA Report upon release of the documentation.

Queries regarding this matter should be referred to:
Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC
 Public Participation registration and Enquiries: **Juanita De Beer**; Fax: (086) 570 5659
 Project Enquiries: **Dashenitha Moodley**; E-mail: reception@bokamoso.net
 Tel: (012) 346 3810; P.O. Box 11375
www.bokamoso.net; Maroelana 0161

Call us for Specials and Payment Plans

Skillfull

Occupational Health & Safety Training

Advance your career in occupational health and safety. All our courses are Nationally/Internationally accredited. (Full Time/Distance Learning options)

CERTIFICATES & DIPLOMAS: (MINING & INDUSTRIAL)

New! Occupational Certificate QCTO: Safety, Health and Quality Practitioner (Occupational Health and Safety Practitioner) Level 5 - 256 Credits. Other Courses: Safety Officers/COMSOC08 Level 1, 2 & 3, First Aid, ICAM, Risk Management, Safety for Supervisors, Legal Responsibility (MHS/A OHS), Chamber of Mines Basic, Elementary and Advanced Mine Valuation, COMSOC08 is a Registered Trade Mark No: 2013/134478 of Skillful.

UPCOMING EVENTS

- Safety Officers/COMSOC08 Full Time Course: 25th February – 8th March 2019
- Safety Officers/COMSOC081 Full Time Course: 18th March – 29th March 2019
- Safety Officers/COMSOC082 Full Time Course: 8th April – 18th April 2019

Contact our client services department for enquiries / Course Schedule. Tel: 018 786 4300 / 018 786 2812 (8:00 – 16:00) | Cell: 081 852 8310 / 060 712 4553 www.skillfull29.co.za / www.minesafetytraining.co.za

DALEEN NIEUWOUTD

PROKUREURS • ATTORNEYS

Problems with Debt?

We provide assistance with:

- Debt Counselling – Payments in arrears? Creditor Harassment? Sheriff calling? Don't lose assets?
- Administrations – New Applications and transfers from another administrator, removal of garnishee orders;
- Management of Body Corporates;
- Divorces;
- Blacklisted? Rescission of Judgments, ITC clearances;
- Deceased Estates;
- Conveyancing – Property Transfers;
- All Queries and advice relating to the National Credit Act;
- All General legal litigation

Contact us at our NEW OFFICES:
 Tel: (014) 592-0624 / Fax: 014 592-1280
Address:
224 President Thabo Mbeki Drive, Rustenburg
Postal Address:
 P.O Box 344, Waterfall Mall, Rustenburg 0323
 Contact Person: Daleen Nieuwoudt
 Email: daleen.dnprok@gmail.com

"In Association with North-West Debt Counselling"

NOTICE OF A BASIC ASSESSMENT, HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT AND WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION PROCESSES

BASIC ASSESSMENT

Notice is hereby given that an application for an **Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA)** Process, more specifically a Basic Assessment (BA) process in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended) and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, as amended on 7 April 2017 (Regulations in terms of Chapter 5 of the NEMA) will be lodged with the North West Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development (NWREAD).

HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT

Notice is hereby given that an application for a **Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA)** in terms of Section 38 of the National Heritage Resources Act (NHRA), 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) will be lodged with the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PRHA-G).

WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION

A **Water Use Licence Application (WULA)** in terms of the National Water Act (NWA), 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998, as amended) will be submitted to the Department of Water and Sanitation.

Project Name: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Proponent: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Project & Property Description: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed:

Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ;
Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and
Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Location: The three sites are situated within the area of Jurisdiction of the Madibeng Local Municipality, North West Province. The proposed sites are surrounded by agricultural land and urban developments. Portion 107 is situated approximately 5km north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and the R511 runs along the northern boundary of the site. Portion 322 is situated approximately 6km to the north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and is situated approximately 200m to the north-east of the R511 road. Portions 33 and 168 situated approximately 4.8km to the north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and approximately 1.2km south west of the R511 road.

Listed Activities applied for in terms of the NEMA 2014 EIA Regulations, as amended:

Listing Notice 1 – Activity 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 12, 19, 27 and 28.
Listing Notice 3 – Activity 12. h. iv., 14 h. iv., 15 e. (ii).

NHRA Activities Triggered: Due to Portion 33, 168, 107 and Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ exceeding 5 000m² a Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment will be required.

The proposed development triggers the following water uses in terms of the NWA:

Section 21 (a): Taking water from a water resource;
Section 21 (b): Storing of water;
Section 21 (c): Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse;
Section 21 (e): Engaging in a controlled activity;
Section 21 (g): Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource; and
Section 21 (i): Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse.

Date of Notice: 26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019.

The activities associated with the aforementioned infrastructure trigger activities listed in Listing Notice 1 and 3 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended in 2017, and are therefore subject to a **BA process**, and trigger activities in terms of Section 38 of the NHRA, and is therefore subject to a **HIA** and also a **WULA** due to activities triggered. Representations with respect to this application may be made by phone, fax or e-mail within **30 days** of the date of this notice. Please note that in order to continue to receive information regarding this project, you must register as an I&AP with the contact person listed below. All registered I&APs will be allowed **60 days** to comment on the WULA and **30 days** to comment on the BA Report upon release of the documentation.

Queries regarding this matter should be referred to:

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC

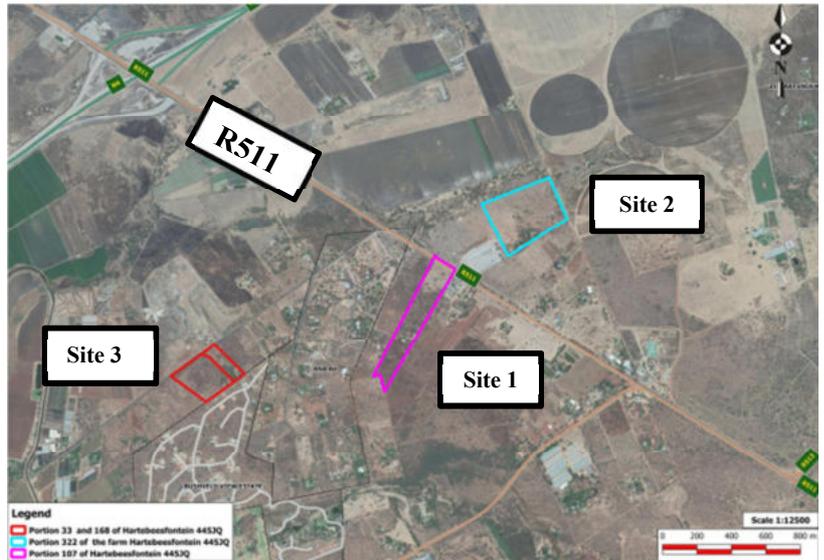
Public Participation registration and Enquiries: **Juanita De Beer**

Project Enquiries: **Dashantha Moodley**

Tel: (012) 346 3810

P.O. Box 11375

Maroelana 0161

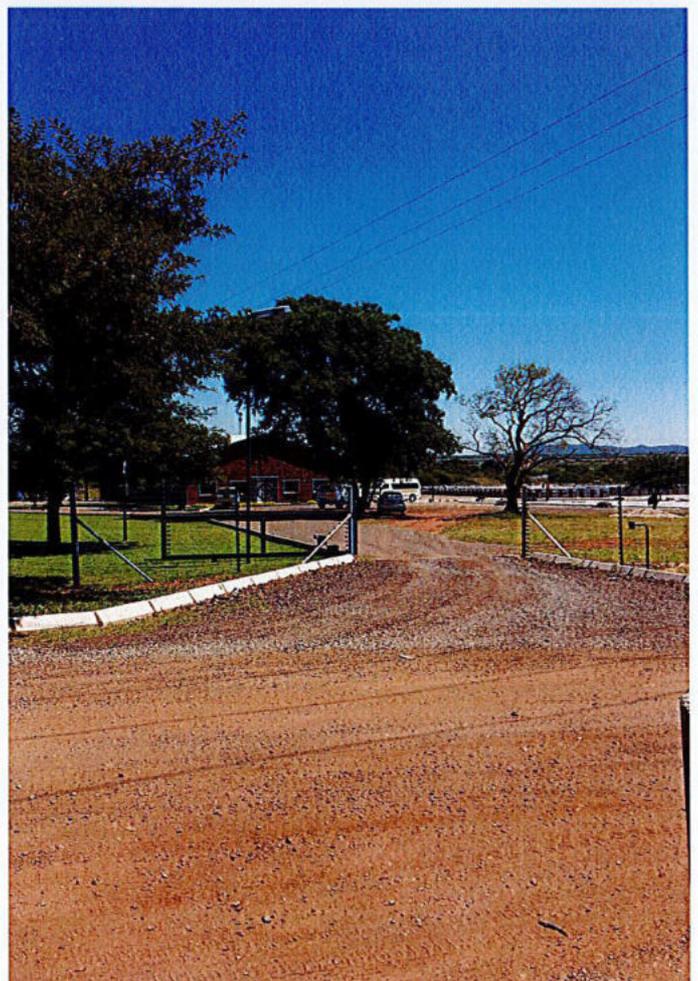
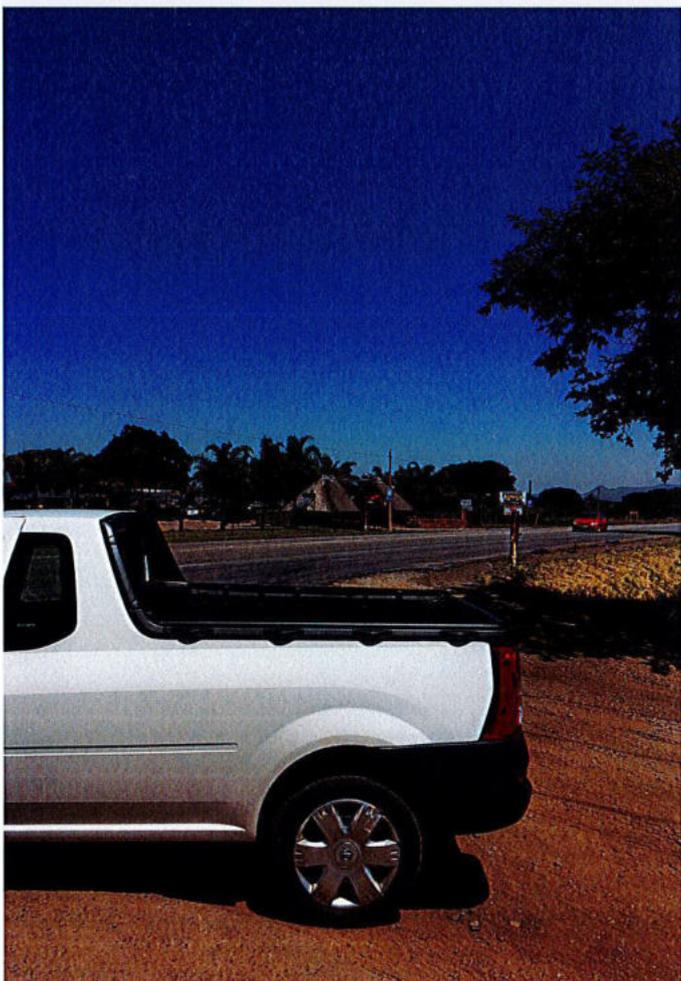
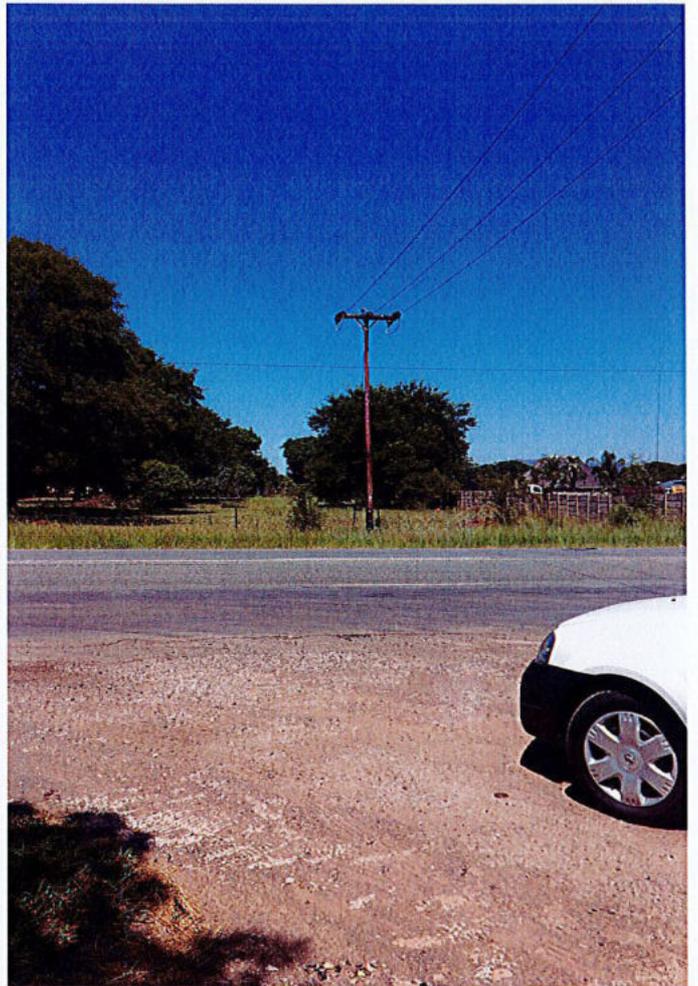
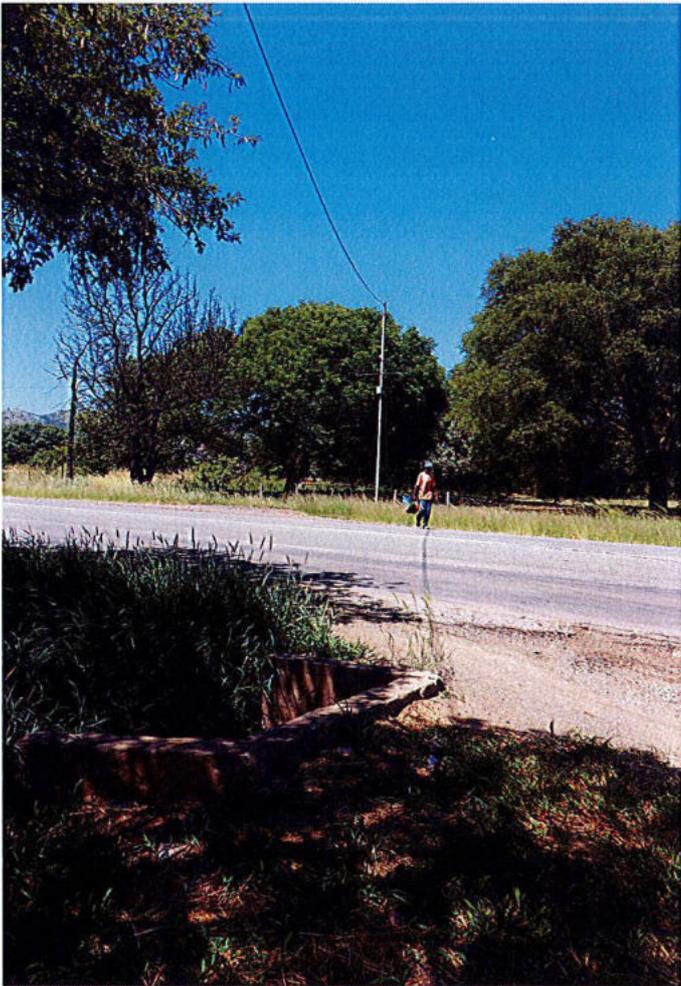


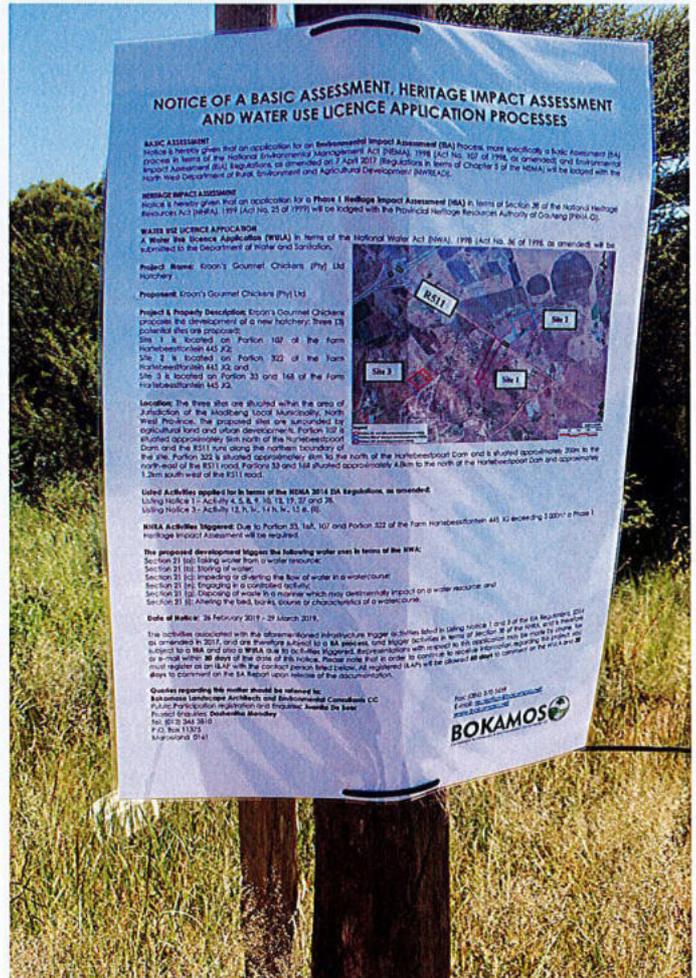
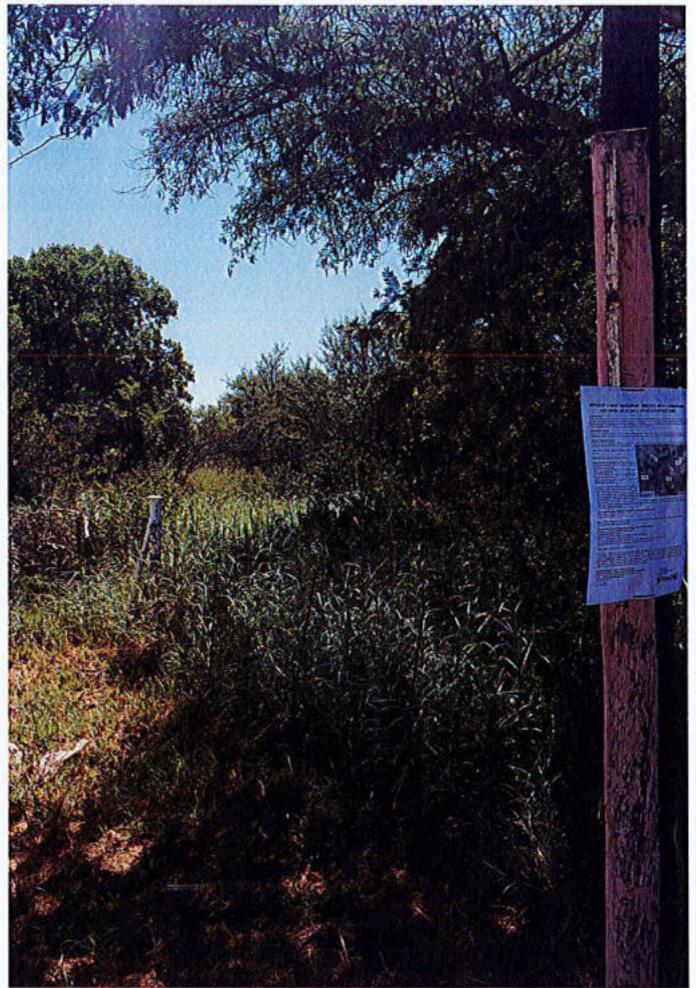
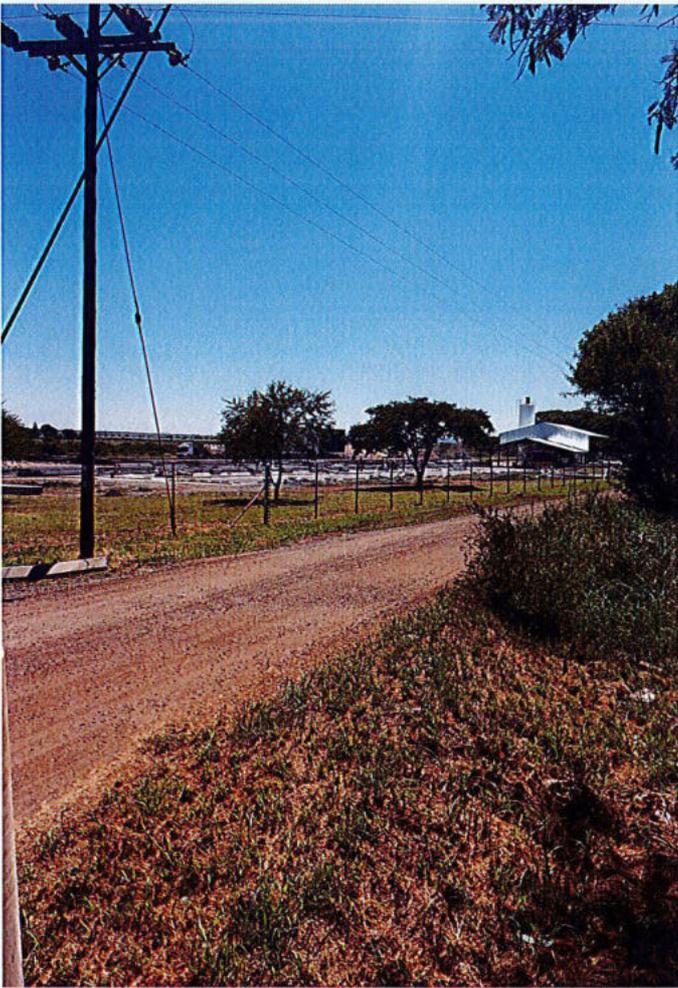
Fax: (086) 570 5659

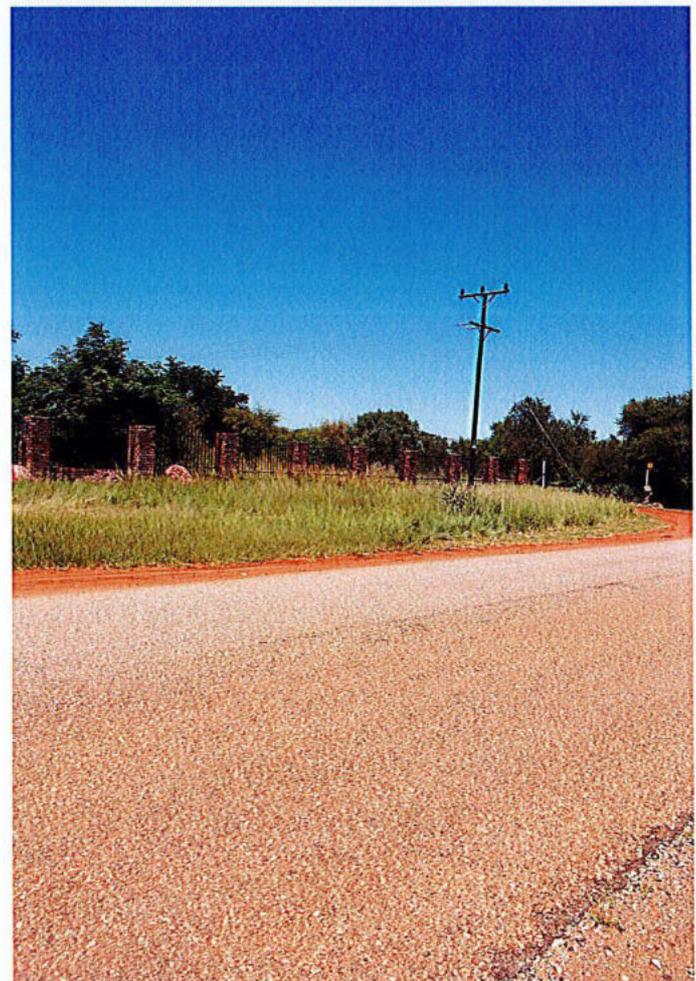
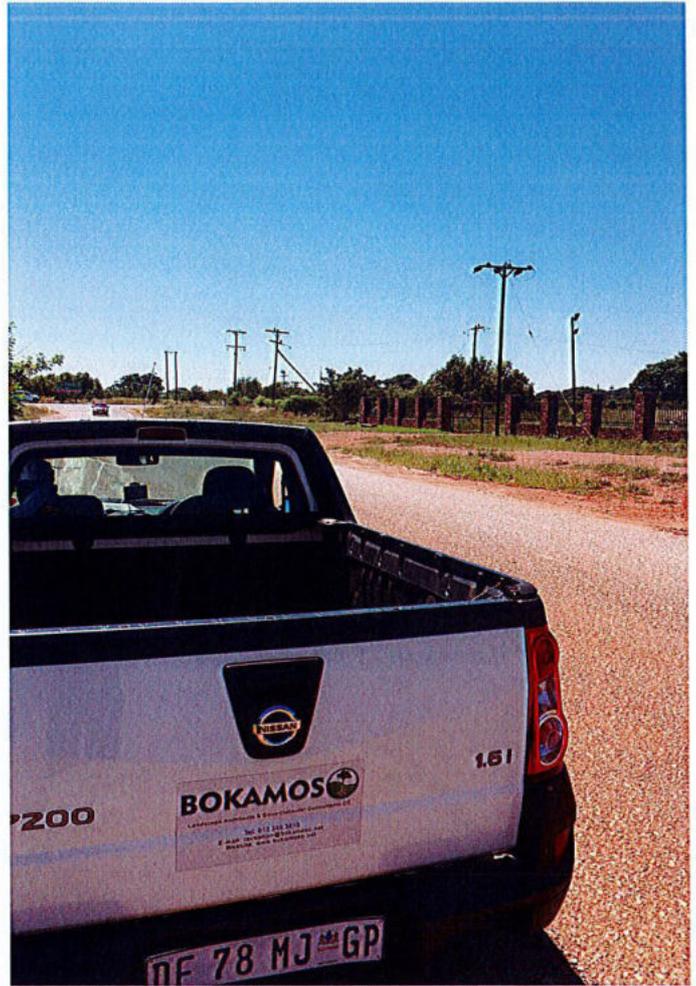
E-mail: reception@bokamoso.net

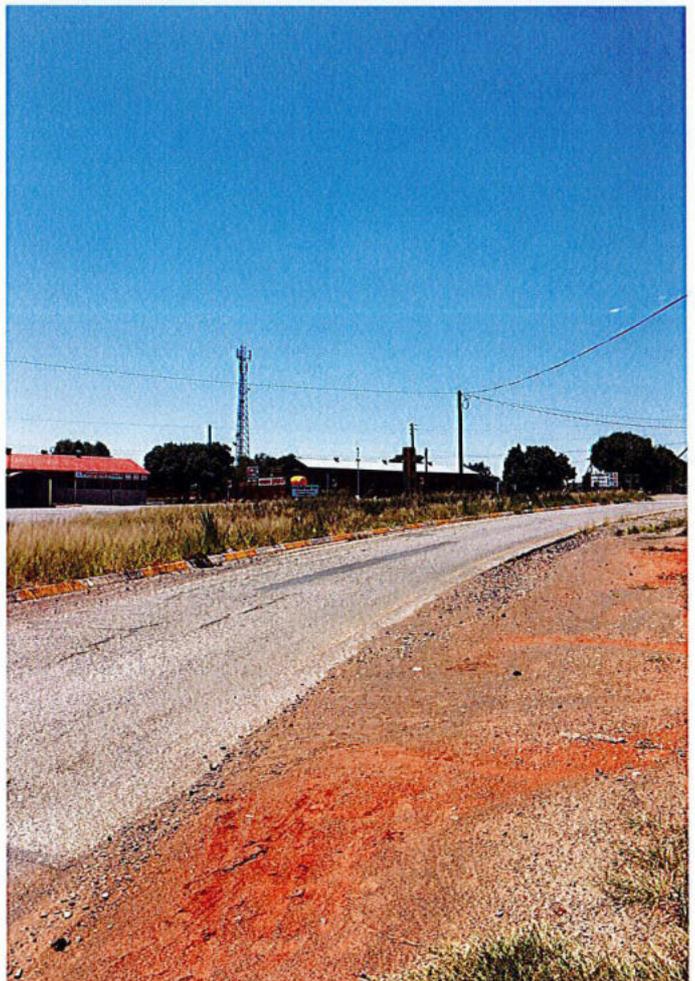
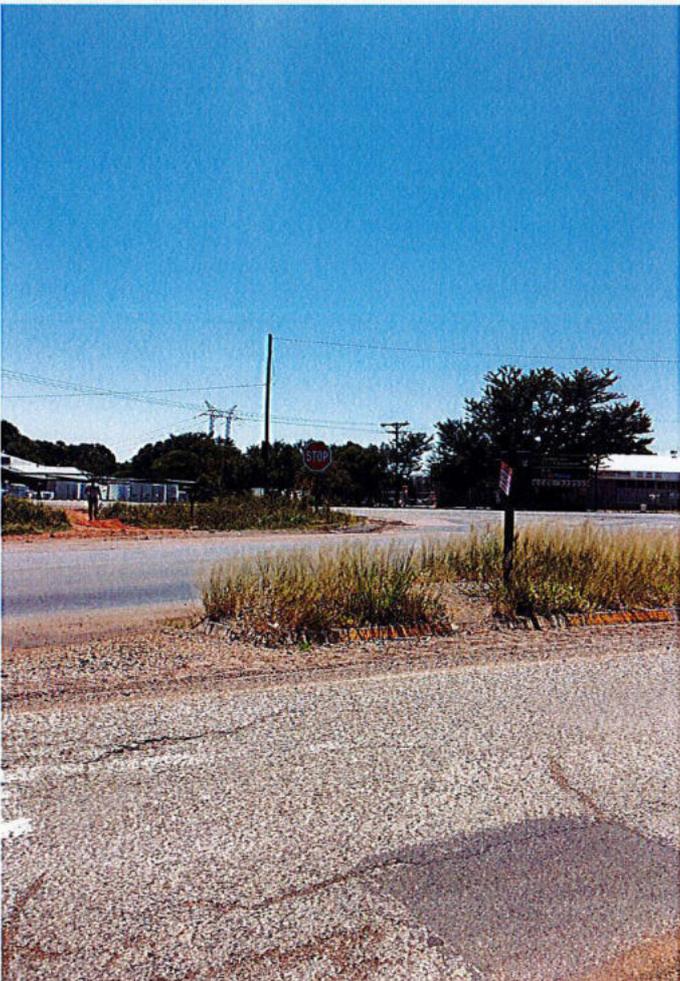
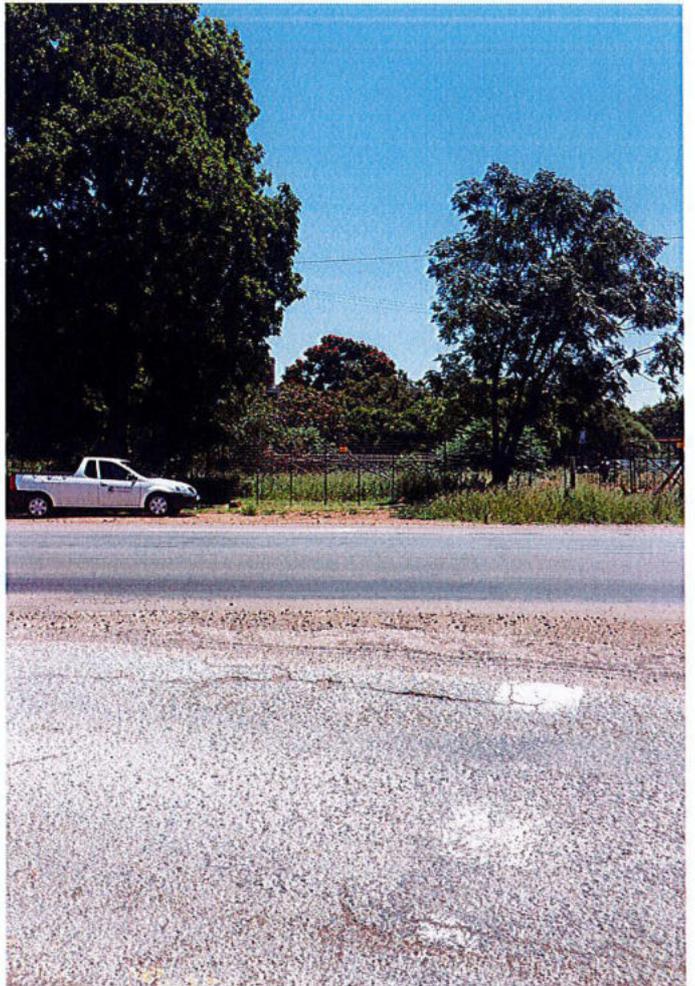
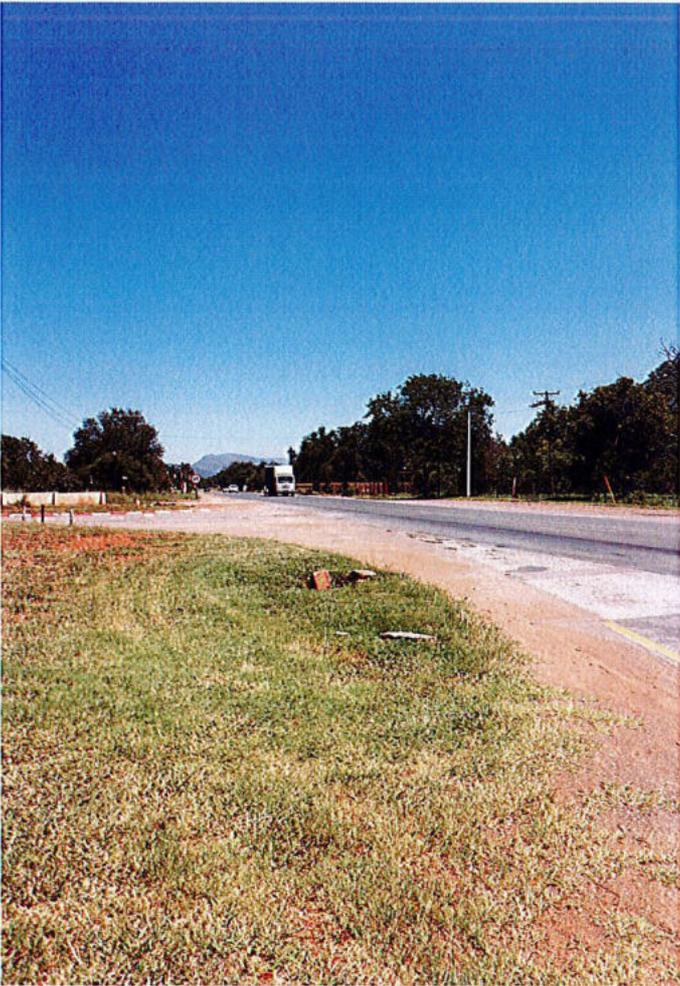
www.bokamoso.net











Appendix I2:

Proof that the key stakeholder
received written notification

REVIEW NOTICE

Basic Assessment Report for review and comment for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery

A period of 30 days will be allowed for review and comment on the Basic Assessment Report for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery from **11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019**.

Your comments should be sent directly to our office at Bokamoso. Attention: Dashentha Moodley or Juanita De Beer (reception@bokamoso.net or fax: 086 570 5659).

A copy of the report will be available at:

Venue: Horizon Brick and Concrete

Address: Portion 321, Hartebeesfontein, R511.

Attention: Reception

Tel: 012 943 3701

Date: 11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019

Also available on our Website:

www.bokamoso.net

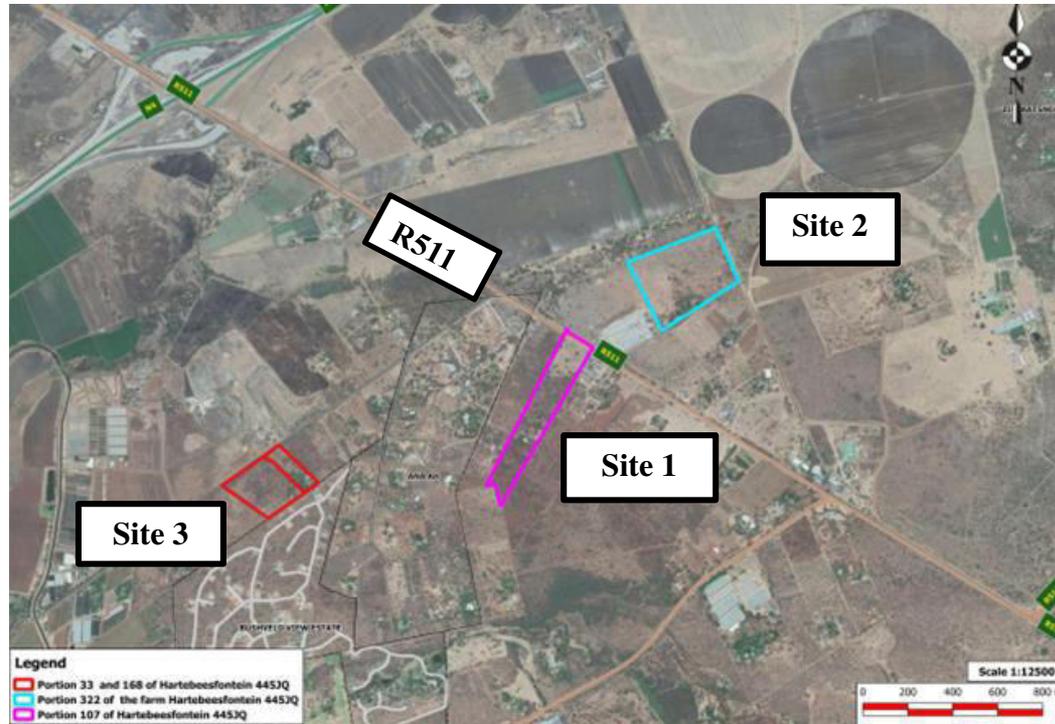
Direct:

<https://drive.google.com/file/d/1OYImzu8YrC26Q4F91kSc2XZB7SJDBRH0/view>

This Listed activity did not form part of the initial

Public Notice:

Listing Notice 3 – Activity 18 h.v. *(Please note that it is now included in the Basic Assessment Report).*



Please do not hesitate to contact us should you have any queries regarding the abovementioned development.

Contact person: **Juanita De Beer**

Tel: 012 346 3810 Fax: 086 570 5659

E-mail: reception@bokamoso.net

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 11 September 2019 08:19 AM
To: 'innocent@bojanala.gov.za'; 'munman@madibeng.gov.za'; 'Abrams@daff.gov.za';
'paia@eskom.co.za'; 'central@eskom.co.za'; 'deidre.herbst@eskom.co.za';
'nkoneigh@randwater.co.za'; 'mmpshe@randwater.co.za';
'albert.marumo@gauteng.gov.za'; 'MjonaT@dws.gov.za'; 'RamashalaL@dws.gov.za';
'nhiggitt@sahra.org.za'; 'mosianem@nwpg.gov.za'; 'BotaV@nra.co.za';
'boezaks@nra.co.za'; 'maritzadp@absamail.co.za'; 'tebogoprim@gmail.com';
'faancooper@gmail.com'; 'claassens@polka.co.za'; 'robbie@seasonshoa.co.za'
Cc: 'dashentha'; 'marylee'; 'adele'
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice
Attachments: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice.pdf

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Review Notice regarding the proposed **Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery** project.

A period of 30 days will be allowed for review and comment on the Basic Assessment Report for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery from **11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019**.

Your comments should be sent directly to our office at Bokamoso. Attention: Dashentha Moodley or Juanita De Beer (reception@bokamoso.net or fax: 086 570 5659).

A copy of the report will be available at:

Venue: Horizon Brick and Concrete

Address: Portion 321, Hartebeesfontein, R511.

Attention: Reception

Tel: 012 943 3701

Date: 11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019

Also available on our Website: www.bokamoso.net

Direct link: <https://drive.google.com/file/d/1OYImzu8YrC26Q4F91kSc2XZB7SJDHRH0/view>

This Listed activity did not form part of the initial Public Notice:

Listing Notice 3 – Activity 18 h.v.

(Please note that it is now included in the Basic Assessment Report)

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Leombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 11 September 2019 09:05 AM
To: 'mmohlalisi@nwpg.gov.za'
Cc: 'dashentha'
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice
Attachments: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice.pdf

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Review Notice regarding the proposed **Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery** project.

A period of 30 days will be allowed for review and comment on the Basic Assessment Report for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery from **11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019**.

Your comments should be sent directly to our office at Bokamoso. Attention: Dashentha Moodley or Juanita De Beer (reception@bokamoso.net or fax: 086 570 5659).

A copy of the report will be available at:

Venue: Horizon Brick and Concrete

Address: Portion 321, Hartebeesfontein, R511.

Attention: Reception

Tel: 012 943 3701

Date: 11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019

Also available on our Website: www.bokamoso.net

Direct link: <https://drive.google.com/file/d/1OYImzu8YrC26Q4F91kSc2XZB7SJDBRH0/view>

This Listed activity did not form part of the initial Public Notice:

Listing Notice 3 – Activity 18 h.v.

(Please note that it is now included in the Basic Assessment Report)

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

NOTICE OF A BASIC ASSESSMENT, HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT AND WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION PROCESSES

BASIC ASSESSMENT

Notice is hereby given that an application for an **Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA)** Process, more specifically a Basic Assessment (BA) process in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended) and Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, as amended on 7 April 2017 (Regulations in terms of Chapter 5 of the NEMA) will be lodged with the North West Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development (NWREAD).

HERITAGE IMPACT ASSESSMENT

Notice is hereby given that an application for a **Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA)** in terms of Section 38 of the National Heritage Resources Act (NHRA), 1999 (Act No. 25 of 1999) will be lodged with the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PRHA-G).

WATER USE LICENCE APPLICATION

A **Water Use Licence Application (WULA)** in terms of the National Water Act (NWA), 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998, as amended) will be submitted to the Department of Water and Sanitation.

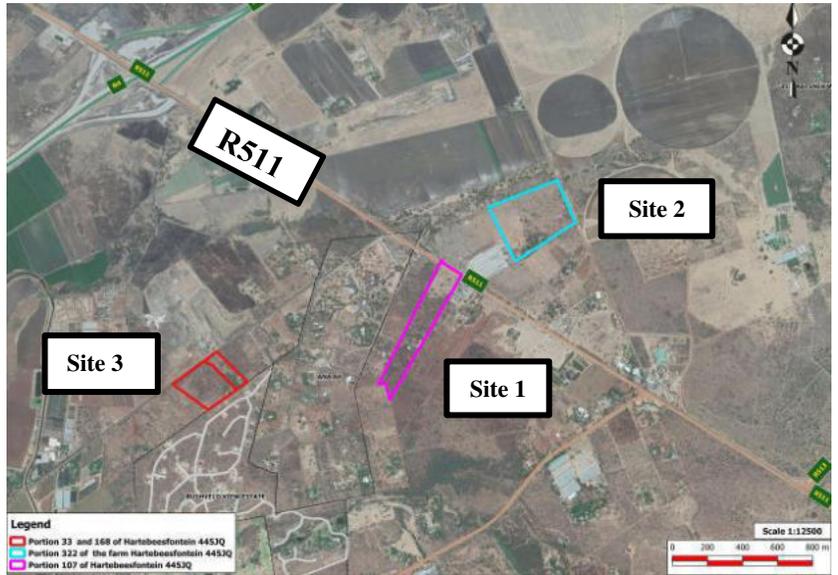
Project Name: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Proponent: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Project & Property Description: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed:

Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ;
Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and
Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Location: The three sites are situated within the area of Jurisdiction of the Madibeng Local Municipality, North West Province. The proposed sites are surrounded by agricultural land and urban developments. Portion 107 is situated approximately 5km north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and the R511 runs along the northern boundary of the site. Portion 322 is situated approximately 6km to the north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and is situated approximately 200m to the north-east of the R511 road. Portions 33 and 168 situated approximately 4.8km to the north of the Hartebeestpoort Dam and approximately 1.2km south west of the R511 road.



Listed Activities applied for in terms of the NEMA 2014 EIA Regulations, as amended:

Listing Notice 1 – Activity 4, 5, 8, 9, 10, 12, 19, 27 and 28.
Listing Notice 3 – Activity 12. h. iv., 14 h. iv., 15 e. (ii).

NHRA Activities Triggered: Due to Portion 33, 168, 107 and Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ exceeding 5 000m² a Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment will be required.

The proposed development triggers the following water uses in terms of the NWA:

Section 21 (a): Taking water from a water resource;
Section 21 (b): Storing of water;
Section 21 (c): Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse;
Section 21 (e): Engaging in a controlled activity;
Section 21 (g): Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource; and
Section 21 (i): Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse.

Date of Notice: 26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019.

The activities associated with the aforementioned infrastructure trigger activities listed in Listing Notice 1 and 3 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended in 2017, and are therefore subject to a **BA process**, and trigger activities in terms of Section 38 of the NHRA, and is therefore subject to a **HIA** and also a **WULA** due to activities triggered. Representations with respect to this application may be made by phone, fax or e-mail within **30 days** of the date of this notice. Please note that in order to continue to receive information regarding this project, you must register as an I&AP with the contact person listed below. All registered I&APs will be allowed **60 days** to comment on the WULA and **30 days** to comment on the BA Report upon release of the documentation.

Queries regarding this matter should be referred to:

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC
Public Participation registration and Enquiries: **Juanita De Beer**
Project Enquiries: **Dashentha Moodley**
Tel: (012) 346 3810
P.O. Box 11375
Maroelana 0161

Fax: (086) 570 5659
E-mail: reception@bokamoso.net
www.bokamoso.net

Project Name: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

26 February 2019

Dear Landowner/Tenant

You are hereby informed that Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC (here after referred to as Bokamoso) were appointed (as Environmental Assessment Practitioner - EAP) by **Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd** to conduct the **Basic Assessment Process** in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, 2014, as amended on 7 April 2017 as per the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended for the proposed **Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery, a Water Use Licence Application (WULA)** in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998, as amended), as well as a **Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA)** in terms of Section 38 of the National Heritage Resources Act (NHRA) (Act 25 of 1999).

Project Description:

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed:

Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ;

Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and

Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

In terms of the NEMA governing Basic Assessment Procedures (Notice 1 and Notice 3) of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations (and updated on 7 April 2017), the EAP must inform all landowners and tenants of the properties adjacent to the proposed development.

This letter serves as notification to you, landowner/tenant of the property, of the proposed development. Bokamoso requests that you supply the contact details of any tenants or other interested and affected parties (I&APs) that may reside or work on the property. Bokamoso will supply these parties with the necessary notification letters. Alternatively, you are also welcome to distribute copies of your notification to these parties. We will however require proof that you supplied the notices to the tenants, landowners, workers etc. An alternative to the above option is to act as representative on behalf of these parties.

Please confirm within 30 days from start date of this notice (via email/fax) that you received the landowners/tenant notification and this letter. Also indicate in this confirmation letter whether you have tenants on your property and your preferred method of tenant/worker notification.

The proposed development requires applications subject to a Basic Assessment Process and a Water Use Licence Application. All registered I&APs will be allowed 60 days to comment on the Water Use Licence Application and 30 days on the Basic Assessment Process upon release of the documentation.

Please may you notify Bokamoso if you are planning to sell your property as the new owners will be required to be registered as an I&AP.

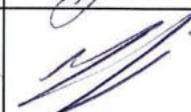
Regards



.....
Lizelle Gregory/Juanita De Beer

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery - Landowner Notification

Acknowledgement of Receipt of land owner notification concerning the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Project.

	Name	Address	Contact Details	Signature
1	I-brizon B3C	Portion 301 Wortbeersfontein RS11	Email: Fax: Tel: 0129433701	
2	Kobus. Landsberg	Plot 122 MouAbeersfontein	Email: Fax: Tel: 0832748110	
3	M. Morris	Plot MB	Email: Fax: 0827806762 Tel:	
4	Amanda		Email: Fax: Tel: 0627836701	
5	Seasons Mr. -Walker Estate	082 715 7474	Email: Fax: Tel:	Delivered at gate at security.
6			Email: Fax: Tel:	
7			Email: Fax: Tel:	
8			Email: Fax: Tel:	
9			Email: Fax: Tel:	
10			Email: Fax: Tel:	
11			Email: Fax: Tel:	
12			Email: Fax: Tel:	
13			Email: Fax: Tel:	
14			Email: Fax: Tel:	
15			Email: Fax: Tel:	



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Tuesday April 09, 2019
Page No: 1

Interim Comment

In terms of Section 38(3), 38(8) of the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999)

Attention: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Bokamos Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC have been appointed by Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd to conduct an Environmental Authorisation (EA) Application for the proposed hatchery on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ, near Hartebeespoort, North West Province.

A Basic Assessment Report (BAR) process will be completed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, no 107 of 1998 (NEMA), NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations. A project notification has been submitted noting that the development triggers section 38(1) of the National Heritage Resources Act, No 25 of 1999 (NHRA) and that an Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be submitted to the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PHRA-G).

An HIA has been submitted to the case in terms of section 38 of the NHRA has been conducted as part of the EA process by APelser Archaeological Consulting.

Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, Northwest Province.

A total of two (2) heritage sites were identified within the first and third areas of the proposed development. No heritage sites were identified within the second area under applications. The heritage site in the first area is a historical homestead rating as having a Grade IVc grading and is not worthy of conservation, though no assessment of the impact is provided. The second site identified within the third area for proposed development comprised a cemetery of between 30 – 50 graves. The site has been given a significance rating of Grade III and is worthy of conservation. It is noted that the burial ground is located outside of the direct

Our Ref:



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Tuesday April 09, 2019
Page No: 2

development footprint, however indirect impacts may occur.

Recommendations provided in the report include the following:

- No mitigation is required for the historical homestead;
- Clean site (burial ground) and document graves. Fence-in and protect and include in a Graves Management Plan. Normally if graves cannot be protected in situ and is to be negatively impacted then they could be exhumed and relocated after detailed consultation with possible descendants have been concluded and permits have been obtained from various local, provincial and National government departments;
- From a Cultural Heritage Point of View Sites 1 and 2 would be the most preferred for the proposed development, as there would be no impacts on any archaeological and/or historical sites, features or material. Site 3, with the Grave Site in close proximity, would be the least preferred. However, if the development is to take place on Site 3 then the graves can be exhumed and relocated after all due processes have been followed and the relevant permits have been obtained.

Interim Comment

The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites (APM) Unit would like to highlight the following:

- The current application does not trigger section 38(1) of the NHRA, but rather section 38(8) of the NHRA;
- That the application must be submitted to the North West Provincial Heritage Resources Authority (NWPHRA) as the proposed development is to be located in the North West Province.

Furthermore, SAHRA APM Unit requests that the HIA be revised to comply with section 38(3)a, c, d, e and f of the NHRA. The identified sites must be provided with unique site names and the impact to the sites must be adequately assessed.

The quickest process to follow for the archaeological component would be to contract a qualified archaeologist (see www.asapa.co.za or www.aphp.org.za to provide an Archaeological Impact Assessment (AIA). The AIA must comply with the SAHRA 2007 Minimum Standards: Archaeological and Palaeontological Component of Impact Assessments.

Our Ref:



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Tuesday April 09, 2019
Page No: 3

No assessment of the impact to palaeontological resources is required as the proposed development is located within an area of insignificant sensitivity for palaeontological resources as per the SAHRIS PalaeoSensitivity map.

Finally, the draft BAR and associated appendices must be submitted so that an informed comment may be issued. Further comments will be issued upon receipt of the above.

Should you have any further queries, please contact the designated official using the case number quoted above in the case header.

Yours faithfully

Natasha Higgitt
Heritage Officer
South African Heritage Resources Agency

Phillip Hine
Acting Manager: Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites Unit
South African Heritage Resources Agency

ADMIN:

Direct URL to case: <http://www.sahra.org.za/node/521556>
(, Ref:)

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 11 September 2019 11:03 AM
To: claassens@polka.co.za
Cc: dashentha
Subject: RE: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice

Dear Monica,

Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental noted your email below.

We will remove you from the registered I&AP list.

Have a wonderful day.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: claassens@polka.co.za <claassens@polka.co.za>
Sent: Wednesday, 11 September 2019 10:52
To: juanita@bokamoso.net
Subject: Re: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice

Goeie dag Juanita

Jy kan ons maar van die lys afhaal, ons het ons plot verkoop en dan nie meer geraak of betrokke nie.

Baie dankie

Vriendelike groete

Monica Claassens

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
To: innocent@bojanala.gov.za, munman@madibeng.gov.za, Abrams@daff.gov.za, paia@eskom.co.za, central@eskom.co.za, "deidre herbst" <deidre.herbst@eskom.co.za>, nkoneigh@randwater.co.za, mmpshe@randwater.co.za, "albert marumo" <albert.marumo@gauteng.gov.za>, MjonaT@dws.gov.za, RamashalaL@dws.gov.za, nhiggitt@sahra.org.za, mosianem@nwpg.gov.za, Botav@nra.co.za, boezaks@nra.co.za, maritzadp@absamail.co.za, tebogoprim@gmail.com, faancooper@gmail.com, claassens@polka.co.za, robbie@seasonshoa.co.za

Cc: "dashentha" <dashentha@bokamoso.net>, "marylee" <marylee@bokamoso.net>, "adele" <adele@bokamoso.net>

Sent: Wednesday, September 11, 2019 8:19:28 AM

Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery - Review Notice

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Review Notice regarding the proposed **Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery** project.

A period of 30 days will be allowed for review and comment on the Basic Assessment Report for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery from **11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019**.

Your comments should be sent directly to our office at Bokamoso. Attention: Dashentha Moodley or Juanita De Beer (reception@bokamoso.net or fax: 086 570 5659).

A copy of the report will be available at:

Venue: Horizon Brick and Concrete

Address: Portion 321, Hartebeesfontein, R511.

Attention: Reception

Tel: 012 943 3701

Date: 11 September 2019 – 14 October 2019

Also available on our Website: www.bokamoso.net

Direct link: <https://drive.google.com/file/d/1OYImzu8YrC26Q4F91kSc2XZB7SJDBRH0/view>

This Listed activity did not form part of the initial Public Notice:

Listing Notice 3 – Activity 18 h.v.

(Please note that it is now included in the Basic Assessment Report)

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Leombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

Juanita

From: dashentha@bokamoso.net
Sent: 13 March 2019 11:59 AM
To: claassens@polka.co.za
Cc: marylee; adele; juanita
Subject: RE: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery
Attachments: image002.png; image003.png

Good Day JG Claassens en ML Claassens,

Your email below regarding the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery has been acknowledged.

Bokamoso Environmental has sent the email to the client.

Trust that you find the above in order.

Kind regards,

Dashentha Moodley

WULA Practitioner and EAP

BA (Hons)(Environmental Management)(cum laude)



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: juanita@bokamoso.net [<mailto:juanita@bokamoso.net>]

Sent: Tuesday, 12 March 2019 2:01 PM

To: claassens@polka.co.za

Cc: dashentha; marylee

Subject: RE: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear JG Claassens en ML Claassens,

Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered you as an Interested and/or Affected Party for the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Please note that the Project Consultant will respond to your queries as soon as possible.

Bokamoso Environmental will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: claassens@polka.co.za [<mailto:claassens@polka.co.za>]

Sent: 12 March 2019 09:55 AM

To: reception@bokamoso.net

Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Aandag: Juanita de Beer

Hiermee doen ons, J.G Claassens en M.L. Claassens, woonagtig te Hartbeesfontein, (Ana Landbouhoewes) Gedeelte 253, 445JQ, Hartbeesfontein, Brits 0250, aansoek om te registreer en aansoek doen om deelname te verkry in die omgewings en asseserings proses van genoemde projek.

Ons sal dit hoog op prys stel indien ons per e-pos in kennis gestel kan word van alle beplanning, inligting, uitkomst asook publieke vergaderings wat ons kan bywoon.

Verder is dit ook net ter insae en wil ons ook u in kennis stel dat ons dit oorweeg om ons eiendom in die mark te lys as te koop. Ons eiendom is direk oorkant die gedeelte wat as "site 2" aangedui is, en langs die gedeelte "site 1", geleë.

Baie dankie

JG Claassens en ML Claassens

0823346739

0823316739

2019/03/12

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 12 March 2019 02:01 PM
To: claassens@polka.co.za
Cc: dashentha; marylee
Subject: RE: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear JG Claassens en ML Claassens,

Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered you as an Interested and/or Affected Party for the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Please note that the Project Consultant will respond to your queries as soon as possible.

Bokamoso Environmental will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659
Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: claassens@polka.co.za [<mailto:claassens@polka.co.za>]
Sent: 12 March 2019 09:55 AM
To: reception@bokamoso.net
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Aandag: Juanita de Beer

Hiermee doen ons, J.G Claassens en M.L. Claassens, woonagtig te Hartbeesfontein, (Ana Landbouhoewes) Gedeelte 253, 445JQ, Hartbeesfontein, Brits 0250, aansoek om te registreer en aansoek doen om deelname te verkry in die omgewings en assesserings proses van genoemde projek.

Ons sal dit hoog op prys stel indien ons per e-pos in kennis gestel kan word van alle beplanning, inligting, uitkomst asook publieke vergaderings wat ons kan bywoon.

Verder is dit ook net ter insae en wil ons ook u in kennis stel dat ons dit oorweeg om ons eiendom in die mark te lys as te koop. Ons eiendom is direk oorkant die gedeelte wat as "site 2" aangedui is, en langs die gedeelte "site 1", geleë.

Baie dankie

JG Claassens en ML Claassens

0823346739

0823316739

2019/03/12

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 28 February 2019 10:02 AM
To: tebogoprim@gmail.com; faancooper@gmail.com
Cc: dashentha
Subject: RE: kroon's gourmet chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear Tebogo,

Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered Hartebeestfontein Residents Association as an Interested and/or Affected Party for the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Bokamoso Environmental will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: Tebogo Primary [<mailto:tebogoprim@gmail.com>]
Sent: 28 February 2019 09:43 AM
To: reception@bokamoso.net
Subject: RE: kroon's gourmet chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear Juanita De Beer

Please find attached document for your attention

Regards

WAJ Lightfoot
Principal

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 02 April 2019 08:27 AM
To: robbie@seasonshoa.co.za
Cc: dashentha
Subject: RE: Seasons Objection Letter Kroons Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Dear Robbie Walker,

Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered you as an Interested and/or Affected Party (I&AP) for the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Bokamoso Environmental noted your comments on our Issues and Comments Register and will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.

Please note that we will respond to your comments when the Draft Basic Assessment Report (BAR) is available for review to all the registered I&APs.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Leombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659
Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: Robbie Walker [<mailto:robbie@seasonshoa.co.za>]
Sent: 01 April 2019 01:46 PM
To: reception@bokamoso.net
Subject: Seasons Objection Letter Kroons Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Dar Sir/Madam

Herewith please find attached, the objection document from Seasons Eco Golf Estate.

Kind Regards

Robbie Walker
General Manager, Seasons Home Owners Association
Cell. 082 713 7479
Email. robbie@seasonshoa.co.za

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 27 February 2019 10:57 AM
To: 'albert.marumo@gauteng.gov.za'; 'Kaye.petersen@gauteng.gov.za'
Cc: dashentha
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery - Public Participation Process
Attachments: image001.png; Kroon's Gourmet Chickens - Hatchery.pdf

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Public Notice regarding the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Bokamoso has been appointed as the environmental consultants to undertake the Basic Assessment (BA), Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) and Water Use Licence Application (WULA) Processes for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery.

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Kindly note that the 30-day registration process commences on **26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019**.

In order to ensure that you are identified as an Interested and/or Affected Party (I&AP) please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter in writing, to reception@bokamoso.net.

Should you have any queries regarding this project, please feel free to contact us.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

Juanita

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 26 February 2019 03:55 PM
To: 'innocent@bojanala.gov.za'; 'munman@madibeng.gov.za'; 'Abrams@daff.gov.za'; 'paia@eskom.co.za'; 'central@eskom.co.za'; 'deidre.herbst@eskom.co.za'; 'nkoneigh@randwater.co.za'; 'mmpshe@randwater.co.za'; 'RamashalaL@dws.gov.za'; 'mosianem@nwpg.gov.za'; 'BotaV@nra.co.za'; 'boezaks@nra.co.za'; 'maritzadp@absamail.co.za'
Cc: dashentha; marylee
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery - Public Participation Process
Attachments: image001.png; Kroon's Gourmet Chickens - Hatchery.pdf

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Public Notice regarding the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Bokamoso has been appointed as the environmental consultants to undertake the Basic Assessment (BA), Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) and Water Use Licence Application (WULA) Processes for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery.

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Kindly note that the 30-day registration process commences on **26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019**.

In order to ensure that you are identified as an Interested and/or Affected Party (I&AP) please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter in writing, to reception@bokamoso.net.

Should you have any queries regarding this project, please feel free to contact us.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659
Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

Juanita

From: dashentha@bokamoso.net
Sent: 16 October 2019 07:57 AM
To: juanita
Cc: adele; marylee@bokamoso.net
Subject: FW: New Document Received from +27145923553 - Kroon's Hatchery DEDECT comments
Attachments: 0865705659-15102019-155702-+27145923553-2.854399_u6yr1h.pdf
Follow Up Flag: Follow up
Flag Status: Flagged

Morning Juanita,

Please refer to the above attachment for the comments from DEDECT re: Kroon's Hatchery.

Kind regards,

Dashentha Moodley
*WULA Practitioner and EAP
BA (Hons)(Environmental Management)(cum laude)*



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659
Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: Bokamoso [<mailto:reception@bokamoso.net>]
Sent: Tuesday, 15 October 2019 4:07 PM
To: dashentha
Subject: FW: New Document Received from +27145923553

From: 2FaxDirect [mailto:fax_support_2faxdirect@ngntelecoms.com]
Sent: 15 October 2019 04:04 PM
To: Lizelle Gregory
Subject: New Document Received from +27145923553



Received Document

Attached please find a document that was received with the following detail:

Attention	Lizelle Gregory
------------------	-----------------

e-mail Address	lizelleg@mweb.co.za
Company	2FaxDirect
on Document Number	0865705659
Number of pages	2

The message was received from (*information supplied only if it was supplied by the remote document machine)

From Document Number	+27145923553
-----------------------------	--------------

Document Status: Any status other than RECEIVED OK - SUCCESS implies that the system ran into errors while receiving the document.

Receive Status	SUCCESS
Last Result	RECEIVED OK



**dedect**

Department:

Economic Development Environment Conservation and Tourism
North West Provincial Government
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA80 Kerk Street
Rustenburg
0299
Republic of South Africa
www.nwpg.gov.za**CHIEF DIRECTORATE: ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES**
DIRECTORATE: ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY MANAGEMENTEnquiries: Ms Q. Imasiku
Tel: (014) 597 3597
Email: QImasiku@nwpg.gov.za
Fax: (014) 592 3553

Reference: NWP/EIA/50/2019

Attention: **Ms. Dashantha Moodley**
Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC
P.O. Box 11375
MAROELANA
0161

Tel No.: (012) 346 3810
Fax No.: 086 570 5659
E-mail: dashantha@bokamoso.net

Dear Madam

COMMENTS ON THE DRAFT BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT FOR THE PROPOSED DEVELOPMENT AND OPERATION OF THE KROON'S CHICKEN HATCHERY ON PORTION 322 OF THE FARM HARTEBEESTFONTEIN 445 JQ, UNDER THE JURISDICTION OF MADIBENG LOCAL MUNICIPALITY, NORTH WEST PROVINCE

1. The Draft Basic Assessment Report (DBAR) submitted for comments, in respect of the above-mentioned proposed development received by this Department on 13 September 2019 has reference.
2. The Draft Basic Assessment Report has been reviewed by this Department and the following amendments are recommended:
 - a. To give an indication to the Department of the conclusion date of the development in order to determine the validity period of the Environmental Authorisation.
 - b. Amend your application form and only include listed activities that are applicable to the above-mentioned project.
 - c. Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) should complete and sign the form Declaration of Interest form entitled "Details of EAP and declaration of interest" available from the Department."



Together we move North West forward.

It is an offense in terms of Section 24F of the National Environmental Management Act to commence with a listed activity prior to obtaining an Environmental Authorisation.

Yours Faithfully



Ms. Motshabi Mohlali

Control Environmental Officer Grade B: Development Impact Management

Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism

Date: 15/10/2019



Juanita

From: Bokamoso <reception@bokamoso.net>
Sent: 01 April 2019 01:53 PM
To: marylee; adele
Cc: juanita
Subject: FW: Seasons Objection Letter Kroons Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd
Attachments: 0115_190402015214_001.pdf

From: Robbie Walker [<mailto:robbie@seasonshoa.co.za>]
Sent: 01 April 2019 01:46 PM
To: reception@bokamoso.net
Subject: Seasons Objection Letter Kroons Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Dar Sir/Madam

Herewith please find attached, he objection document from Seasons Eco Golf Estate.

Kind Regards

Robbie Walker
General Manager, Seasons Home Owners Association
Cell. 082 713 7479
Email. robbie@seasonshoa.co.za



s e a s o n s
e c o - g o l f e s t a t e

Reg. No 2006/038758/08

PO Box 1133
Brits
0250

Attention:

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental consultants CC
Tel: 012 346 3810
Email: reception@bokamoso.net
36 Lebombo Street, Ashlea Gardens
PO Box 11375,
Maroelana
0161

22 March 2019

**NOTICE OF OBJECTION TO THE PROPOSED NEW HATCHERY ON THREE POTENTIAL SITES
(ALL OTHER MATTERS RESERVED)**

Project Name: Kroon`s Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Project Description:

Site: 1 – located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartbeesfontein 445 JQ.

Site: 2 – located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartbeesfontein 445 JQ.

Site: 3 – located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartbeesfontein 445 JQ.

Dear Sir/Madam

We; The Seasons Eco Golf Estate located as per highlighted Attachment A and represented on this matter by Robert walker authorized by the Board of Directors Organization Proxy to apply and register this objection

From: Seasons Eco Golf Estate and Robert Walker

Seasons Lifestyle Estate

We hereby object to the application for the following reasons as stated below.

I/We have reviewed the planning application and wish to register my/our objection to this proposal.
I/We would kindly request the indulgences of the planning committee to consider our strong Objection to all three of these proposals but in particular in order of the Objection Site 3 and Site 1 due to their adjacent location to our Upmarket Housing Estate.
Please consider OBJECTION below:

Site: 3 – located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Harbeesfontein 445 JQ

1. The proposed development is located immediately adjacent and sharing a boundary fence with the residential village.

2. The odour from poultry faeces is extremely unpleasant and offensive. The odour would be permanently present in the village. There would be no reprieve from it.
3. Given the prevailing wind direction, which is over the proposed development and onto the village, the continual odour will significantly impact on normal life. Windows will need to be permanently kept shut; children will be unable to utilise the play area - the only communal facility remaining in the village; residents will be unable to enjoy their garden areas or utilise any other outside space.
4. The proposed range area extends right up to the nearest residential property. Given the destructive nature of chickens, this land will be scratched off, resulting in large dusty patches during dry periods. This dust combined with chicken faeces will be blown or carried over the village. This has significant health implications for all, but in particular any residents with respiratory conditions. Additionally, poultry faeces are a known source of salmonella.
5. Land drains are present on the land suggested for the proposed range area. This presents an issue with potential water contamination. In addition, during periods of heavy rain, the water runs off the field and onto Tarn Flatt road and into neighbouring garden areas. This has significant health implications. The Seasons Eco Golf Estate has a water license for this area with the use of boreholes that supply drinking water to the residential homes. The contamination of pollutants seeping into drinking water will be detrimental implementation to souring and contaminating this water.
6. The development has potential to cause significant noise pollution, given the close proximity to the village.
7. The development will lead to a significant increase in flies. This has significant health implications, given the disease carried by such insects. Bird diseases including Bird Flu are multiple and susceptible to humans and these diseases have reached epidemic proportions over the last few years. This close proximity to Residential Homes is irresponsible and dangerous.
8. The development will significantly increase the risk of rat infestation in the village and surrounding countryside.
9. In periods of inclement weather, it may not be possible to transport poultry manure away from the site. This means that manure will have to be stored on site, which will significantly increase risk of foul odour.
10. It is not possible for manure to be spread onto and ploughed into surrounding fields at a frequency of twice per week. Ploughing is only possible at certain times of the year, so again, this means there must be manure storage somewhere.
11. The manure produced will be spread over a number of fields within surrounding villages. This will impact a far greater number of residents of local villages and towns with the offensive odour and fly problems associated with chicken manure. Given the far-reaching implications of this, we feel that the surrounding villages and towns should be consulted on this development.
12. These pollutants be they noise; odour; infection; water; air contamination or health implications will also adversely affect property values in the area and specifically Season Eco Golf Estate.
13. Seasons Eco Golf Estate is an Eco Estate with multiple species of protected fauna and flora on the Estate which similar to their Human Co Inhabitants will be adversely affected by all the very same pollutants of the noise; odour infection; water air contamination and health implications.

Site: 1 – located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartbeesfontein 445 JQ

1. The proposed development is located in close proximity of approximately 580m to the residential village.
2. The odour from poultry faeces is extremely unpleasant and offensive. The odour would be permanently present in the village. There would be no reprieve from it.
3. Given the prevailing wind direction, which is over the proposed development and onto the village, the continual odour will significantly impact on normal life. Windows will need to be permanently kept shut; children will be unable to utilise the play area - the only communal facility remaining in the village; residents will be unable to enjoy their garden areas or utilise any other outside space.
4. The proposed range area extends in close proximity of approximately 580m - to the nearest residential property. Given the destructive nature of chickens, this land will be scratched off, resulting in large dusty patches during dry periods. This dust combined with chicken faeces will be blown or carried over the village. This has significant health implications for all, but in particular any residents with respiratory conditions. Additionally, poultry faeces are a known source of salmonella.
5. Land drains are present on the land suggested for the proposed range area. This presents an issue with potential water contamination. This has significant health implications. The Seasons Eco Golf Estate has a water license for this area with the use of boreholes that supply drinking water to the residential homes. The contamination of pollutants seeping into drinking water will be detrimental implementation to souring and contaminating this water.
6. The development has potential to cause significant noise pollution, given the close proximity to the village.
7. The development will lead to a significant increase in flies. This has significant health implications, given the disease carried by such insects. Bird diseases including Bird Flu are multiple and susceptible to humans and these diseases have reached epidemic proportions over the last few years. This close proximity to Residential Homes is irresponsible and dangerous.
8. The development will significantly increase the risk of rat infestation in the village and surrounding countryside.
9. In periods of inclement weather, it may not be possible to transport poultry manure away from the site. This means that manure will have to be stored on site, which will significantly increase risk of foul odour.
10. It is not possible for manure to be spread onto and ploughed into surrounding fields at a frequency of twice per week. Ploughing is only possible at certain times of the year, so again, this means there must be manure storage somewhere.
11. The manure produced will be spread over a number of fields within surrounding villages. This will impact a far greater number of residents of local villages and towns with the offensive odour and fly problems associated with chicken manure. Given the far-reaching implications of this, we feel that the surrounding villages and towns should be consulted on this development.
12. These pollutants be they noise; odour; infection; water; air contamination or health implications will also adversely affect property values in the area and specifically Season Eco Golf Estate.
13. Seasons Eco Golf Estate is an Eco Estate with multiple species of protected fauna and flora on the Estate which similar to their Human Co Inhabitants will be adversely affected by all the

very same pollutants of the noise; odour infection; water air contamination and health implications.

Site 2 – located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartbeesfontein 445 JQ

1. The proposed development is located in close proximity of approximately 1 450m to the residential village.
2. The odour from poultry faeces is extremely unpleasant and offensive. The odour would be permanently present in the village. There would be no reprieve from it.
3. Given the prevailing wind direction, which is over the proposed development and onto the village, the continual odour will significantly impact on normal life. Windows will need to be permanently kept shut; children will be unable to utilise the play area - the only communal facility remaining in the village; residents will be unable to enjoy their garden areas or utilise any other outside space.
4. The proposed range area extends in close proximity of approximately 1 450m - to the nearest residential property. Given the destructive nature of chickens, this land will be scratched off, resulting in large dusty patches during dry periods. This dust combined with chicken faeces will be blown or carried over the village. This has significant health implications for all, but in particular any residents with respiratory conditions. Additionally, poultry faeces are a known source of salmonella.
5. Land drains are present on the land suggested for the proposed range area. This presents an issue with potential water contamination. This has significant health implications. The Seasons Eco Golf Estate has a water license for this area with the use of boreholes that supply drinking water to the residential homes. The contamination of pollutants seeping into drinking water will be detrimental implementation to souring and contaminating this water.
6. The development has potential to cause significant noise pollution, given the close proximity to the village.
7. The development will lead to a significant increase in flies. This has significant health implications, given the disease carried by such insects. Bird diseases including Bird Flu are multiple and susceptible to humans and these diseases have reached epidemic proportions over the last few years. This close proximity to Residential Homes is irresponsible and dangerous.
8. The development will significantly increase the risk of rat infestation in the village and surrounding countryside.
9. In periods of inclement weather, it may not be possible to transport poultry manure away from the site. This means that manure will have to be stored on site, which will significantly increase risk of foul odour.
10. It is not possible for manure to be spread onto and ploughed into surrounding fields at a frequency of twice per week. Ploughing is only possible at certain times of the year, so again, this means there must be manure storage somewhere.
11. The manure produced will be spread over a number of fields within surrounding villages. This will impact a far greater number of residents of local villages and towns with the offensive odour and fly problems associated with chicken manure. Given the far-reaching implications of this, we feel that the surrounding villages and towns should be consulted on this development.

12. These pollutants be they noise; odour; infection; water; air contamination or health implications will also adversely affect property values in the area and specifically Season Eco Golf Estate.
13. Seasons Eco Golf Estate is an Eco Estate with multiple species of protected fauna and flora on the Estate which similar to their Human Co Inhabitants will be adversely affected by all the very same pollutants of the noise; odour infection; water air contamination and health implications.

I/We would like the opportunity to address the planning committee meeting when this application is considered."

I/We reserve the right to amplify and expand upon the formal objection contained in this correspondence at a later stage and in the appropriate forum, if necessary.

While I have many more concerns that can be tabled at this time, I reserve my right to express them at a later stage.

Kind Regards



Seasons Eco Golf Estate and Representative Proxy
Mr. R.C. Walker
Cell: 082 713 7479

Juanita

From: Bokamoso <reception@bokamoso.net>
Sent: 28 February 2019 09:44 AM
To: juanita
Subject: FW: kroon's gourmet chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery
Attachments: Scan_20190228 (2).jpg

From: Tebogo Primary [<mailto:tebogoprim@gmail.com>]
Sent: 28 February 2019 09:43 AM
To: reception@bokamoso.net
Subject: RE: kroon's gourmet chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear Juanita De Beer

Please find attached document for your attention

Regards

WAJ Lightfoot
Principal

HARTEBEEFONTEIN RESIDENTS ASSOCIATION

KONTAK: LIGHTY LIGHTFOOT TEL: 082 806 5615

KONTAK: FAAN COOPER TEL: 082 461 5547

P/O BOX 4593

BRITS

0250

28 FEBRUARIE 2019

BOKAMOS

PO/BOX 11375

MAROELANA 0161

Geagte Juanita de Beer

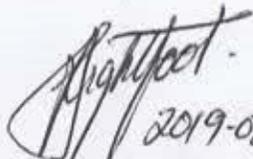
RE: Kroon's gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Ek, Wilfred A.J. Lightfoot, woonagtige te ANA Landbouhoewes Nr. 20 (K23) te Hartebeesfontein 445JQ en ook as verteenwoordige lid van die HRA (Hartebeesfontein Residenents Association). Namens die HRA wil ons as bestuur graag hiermee, u kantoor in kennis stel dat ons aansoek wil doen om as, Hartebeesfontein Residents Association (HRA), deelname te kan verkry, om deel van die omgewings-asseserings proses (inpak studie) te wees. Ons sal dit dus hoog op prys stel dat, die HRA, van alle beplanning, inspeksies, beweging van beamptes, inligting en uitkomste, direk vanaf Bokamos sal ontvang.

Alle dokumentasie rondom die registrasie vir publieke deelname, moet so spoedig as moontlik vanaf u kantoor na HRA gestuur word, vir voltooiing en inhandiging. Gebruik die volgende epos adres vir toekomstige kommunikasie. tebogoprim@gmail.com of faancooper@gmail.com

Ons wil u ook vra, om n publieke vergadering met die HRA lede te bele. Sodoende kan al die inwoners die regte inligting direk vanaf u kantoor aangaande die projek bekom en onduidelikhede deur vraag en antwoord, uit die weg geruim word.

Baie dankie vir u tyd en aandag. Ons hoop om n spoedige reaksie op hierdie versoek te verkry.



2019-02-28

LIGHTY LIGHTFOOT



Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Thursday October 03, 2019
Page No: 1

Final Comment

In terms of Section 38(4), 38(8) of the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999)

Attention: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Bokamos Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC have been appointed by Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd to conduct an Environmental Authorisation (EA) Application for the proposed hatchery on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ, near Hartebeespoort, North West Province.

A Basic Assessment Report (BAR) process will be completed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, no 107 of 1998 (NEMA), NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations. A project notification has been submitted noting that the development triggers section 38(1) of the National Heritage Resources Act, No 25 of 1999 (NHRA) and that an Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be submitted to the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PHRA-G).

An HIA has been submitted to the case in terms of section 38 of the NHRA has been conducted as part of the EA process by APelser Archaeological Consulting.

Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, Northwest Province.

A total of two (2) heritage sites were identified within the first and third areas of the proposed development. No heritage sites were identified within the second area under applications. The heritage site in the first area is a historical homestead rating as having a Grade IVc grading and is not worthy of conservation, though no assessment of the impact is provided. The second site identified within the third area for proposed development comprised a cemetery of between 30 – 50 graves. The site has been given a significance rating of Grade III and is worthy of conservation. It is noted that the burial ground is located outside of the direct



Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Thursday October 03, 2019
Page No: 2

development footprint, however indirect impacts may occur.

Recommendations provided in the report include the following:

- No mitigation is required for the historical homestead;
- Clean site (burial ground) and document graves. Fence-in and protect and include in a Graves Management Plan. Normally if graves cannot be protected in situ and is to be negatively impacted then they could be exhumed and relocated after detailed consultation with possible descendants have been concluded and permits have been obtained from various local, provincial and National government departments;
- From a Cultural Heritage Point of View Sites 1 and 2 would be the most preferred for the proposed development, as there would be no impacts on any archaeological and/or historical sites, features or material. Site 3, with the Grave Site in close proximity, would be the least preferred. However, if the development is to take place on Site 3 then the graves can be exhumed and relocated after all due processes have been followed and the relevant permits have been obtained.

In an Interim Comment issued on the 09/04/2019, SAHRA requested that the HIA be revised to comply with section 38(3)a, c, d, e and f of the NHRA. The identified sites must be provided with unique site names and the impact to the sites must be adequately assessed.

Since the issuing of the Interim Comment, a revised HIA has been submitted including the BAR with appendices.

Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, Northwest Province.

The revised HIA noted that the preferred location of the proposed development has been moved to Site alternative 2. No heritage resources were identified within this alternative site location. A Chance Finds Procedure is recommended.

Final Comment

The following comments are made as a requirement in terms of section 3(4) of the NEMA Regulations and section 38(8) of the NHRA in the format provided in section 38(4) of the NHRA and must be included in the Final BAR and EMPr:

Our Ref:



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za

Date: Thursday October 03, 2019
Page No: 3

CaseID: 13582

- 38(4)a – The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites (APM) Unit no objections to the proposed development;
- 38(4)b – The recommendations of the specialists are supported and must be adhered to. No additional specific conditions are provided for the development;
- 38(4)c(i) – If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (Natasha Higgitt/Phillip Hine 021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (Thingahangwi Tshivhase/Mimi Seetelo 012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;
- 38(4)d – See section 51(1) of the NHRA;
- 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists:
 - i) If heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;
 - The Final BAR and EMPr must be submitted to SAHRA for record purposes;
 - The decision regarding the EA Application must be communicated to SAHRA and uploaded to the SAHRIS Case application.

Should you have any further queries, please contact the designated official using the case number quoted above in the case header.

Yours faithfully

Our Ref:



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Thursday October 03, 2019
Page No: 4

Natasha Higgitt
Heritage Officer
South African Heritage Resources Agency

Phillip Hine
Manager: Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites Unit
South African Heritage Resources Agency

ADMIN:

Direct URL to case: <http://www.sahra.org.za/node/521556>
(, Ref:)

Terms & Conditions:

1. This approval does not exonerate the applicant from obtaining local authority approval or any other necessary approval for proposed work.
2. If any heritage resources, including graves or human remains, are encountered they must be reported to SAHRA immediately.
3. SAHRA reserves the right to request additional information as required.

Appendix I3:

Comments and Response Report

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
1	Faan Cooper faancooper@gmail.com	Hartebeestfontein Residents Association	28 February 2019	<p>Ek, Wilfred A.I. Lightfoot, woonagtig te ANA Landbouhoewes Nr. 20 (K23) te Hartebeesfontein 445JQ en ook as verteenwoordige lid van die HRA (Hartebeesfontein Residents Association). Namens die HRA wil ons as bestuur graag hiermee, u kantoor in kennis stel dat ons aansoek wil doen om as, Hartebeesfontein Residents Association (HRA), deelname te kan verkry, om deel van die omgewings-asserings proses (inpak studie) te wees. Ons sal dit dus hoog op prys stel dat, die HRA, van alle beplanning, inspeksies, beweging van beamptes, inligting en uitkomste, direk vanaf Bokamoso sal ontvang.</p> <p>Alle dokumentasie rondom die registrasie vir publieke deelname, moet so spoedig as moontlik vanaf u kantoor na HRA gestuur word, vir voltooiing en inhandiging. Gebruik die volgende epos adres vir toekomstige kommunikasie. tebogoprim@gmail.com of faancooper@gmail.com</p> <p>Ons wil u ook vra, om 'n publieke vergadering met die HRA lede te bele. Sodoende kan al die inwoners die regte inligting direk vanaf u kantoor aangaande die projek bekom en onduidelikhede deur vraag en antwoord, uit die weg geruim word.</p>	<p>Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered Hartebeestfontein Residents Association as an Interested and/or Affected Party for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery project.</p> <p>Bokamoso Environmental will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>Baie dankie vir u tyd en aandag. Ons hoop om 'n spoedige reaksie op hierdie versoek te verkry.</p> <p>Translation <i>I, Wilfred A.I Lightfoot, living at ANA Landbouhoewes Nr. 20 (K23) at Hartebeesfontein 445JQ and also a representative of HRA (Hartebeesfontein Residents Association). On behalf of the HRA, we as management would like to be registered as Interested and/or Affected Party, to receive participation, to be part of the environmental assessment process (impact study). The HRA must be notified of all the planning, inspection, moving officials, information and outcomes, direct from Bokamoso.</i></p> <p><i>All documents of registration for public participation, must be forwarded to our office, for completion and submission. Please use the following email address for future communication. tebogoprim@gmail.com or faancooper@gmail.com</i></p> <p><i>We would like to request a public meeting with the HRA. Therefore, all the residents must receive the correct information directly from your company regarding the project and uncertain questions to be answered.</i></p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
2	ML Claassens claassens@polka.co.za	Private	12 March 2019	<p>Hiermee doen ons, J.G Claassens en M.L. Claassens, woonagtig te Hartbeesfontein, (Ana Landbouhoewes) Gedeelte 253, 445JQ, Hartbeesfontein, Brits 0250, aansoek om te registreer en aansoek doen om deelname te verkry in die omgewings en asseserings proses van genoemde projek.</p> <p>Ons sal dit hoog op prys stel indien ons per e-pos in kennis gestel kan word van alle beplanning, inligting, uitkomste asook publieke vergaderings wat ons kan bywoon.</p> <p>Verder is dit ook net ter insae en wil ons ook u in kennis stel dat ons dit oorweeg om ons eiendom in die mark te lys as te koop. Ons eiendom is direk oorkant die gedeelte wat as "site 2" aangedui is, en langs die gedeelte "site 1", geleë.</p> <p>Translate <i>Hereby, J.G Claassens and M.L Claassens living in Hartebeestfontein (Ana Landbouhoewes) Portion 253, 445 JQ, Hartebeestfontein, Brits 0250, we want to register in the Public Participation Process in the environmental impact assessment process of the abovementioned project.</i></p>	<p>Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered you as an Interested and/or Affected Party for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery project.</p> <p>Please note that the Project Consultant will respond to your queries as soon as possible.</p> <p>Bokamoso Environmental will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.</p> <p>Project Consultant response: Your email below regarding the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery has been acknowledged.</p> <p>Bokamoso Environmental has sent the email to the client.</p> <p>Trust that you find the above in order.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p><i>We will appreciate to receive emails of information of all the planning, information, outcomes and public meetings as well.</i></p> <p><i>Further, we want to notify you that we consider to sell our property. Our property is direct opposite the portion that is "Site 2" and next to the portion that is "Site 1".</i></p>	
3	Robbie Walker robbie@seasonshoa.co.za	Seasons Home Owners Association	1 April 2019	<p>We, The Seasons Eco Golf Estate located as per highlighted Attachment A and represented on this matter by Robert Walker authorized by the Board of Directors Organization Proxy to apply and register this objection.</p> <p>From: Seasons Eco Golf Estate and Robert Walker.</p> <p>Seasons Lifestyle Estate.</p> <p>We hereby object to the application for the following reasons as stated below.</p> <p>I/We have reviewed the planning application and wish to register my/our objection to this proposal. I/We would kindly request the indulgences of the planning committee to consider our strong Objection to all three of these proposals but in</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>particular in order of the Objection Site 3 and Site 1 due to their adjacent location to our Upmarket Housing Estate. Please consider OBJECTION below:</p> <p>Site 3 – located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeesfontin 445 JQ</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The proposed development is located immediately adjacent and sharing a boundary fence with the residential village. 2. The odour from poultry faeces is extremely unpleasant and offensive. The odour would be permanently present in the village. There would be no reprieve from it. 3. Given the prevailing wind direction, which is over the proposed development and onto the village, the continual odour will significantly impact on normal life. Windows will need to be permanently kept shut; children will be unable to utilise the play area – the only communal facility remaining in the village, residents will be unable to enjoy their garden areas or utilise any other outside space. 4. The proposed range area extends right up to the nearest residential property. Given the destructive nature of chickens, this land will 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Yes, that is correct. 2. Should Site 2 be the preferred and the chosen site, the developer would implement all possible measures to ensure that any odours that arise are combatted and in accordance with the Environmental Management Programme Report. 3. As stated above. 4. Where dust is generated, the site will be dampened down on a regular basis to counteract dust pollution. With regards to chicken faeces, this will be contained in a specific area managed through the use of lined manure dams. No chicken faeces will be permitted to

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>be scratched off, resulting in large dusty patches during dry periods. This dust combined with chicken faeces will be blown or carried over the village. This has significant health implications for all, but in particular any residents with respiratory conditions. Additionally, poultry faeces are a known source of salmonella.</p> <p>5. Land drains are present on the land suggested for the propose range area. This presents an issue with potential water contamination. In addition, during periods of heavy rain, the water runs off the field and onto Tarn Flatt road and into neighbouring garden areas. This has significant health implications. The Seasons Eco Golf Estate has a water licence for this area with the use of boreholes that supply drinking water to the residential homes. The contamination of pollutants seeping into drinking water will be detrimental implementation to souring and contaminating this water.</p> <p>6. The development has potential to cause significant noise pollution, given the close proximity to the village.</p>	<p>remain on the external premises of the hatchery.</p> <p>5. The developer is also intending to abstract water from boreholes to supply the proposed hatchery. A Geohydrologist has also been contacted to conduct a Phase 1 Study for the project. Based on the study that has been conducted, the Geohydrologist has not raised any concerns regarding potential ground water pollution. In addition, the developer will also have to apply for a Water Use Authorisation which will stipulate specific conditions for the developer to adhere to and that will include monitoring of water levels as well as potential ground water pollution.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>7. The development will lead to a significant increase in flies. This has significant health implications, given the disease carried by such insects. Bird diseases including Bird Flu are multiple and susceptible to humans and these diseases have reached epidemic proportions over the last few years. This close proximity to Residential Homes is irresponsible and dangerous.</p>	<p>6. Noise will be generated during the construction and the operational phases of the development, however, this will be limited to working hours and certain measures will also be implemented to buffer the noise as per the EMPr.</p> <p>7. Should the proposed hatchery development be approved by the relevant competent authority, the Environmental Authorisation (EA) will be very clear regarding adherence to issues pertaining to health. The developer will also have to adhere to the Occupational Health and Safety Act [OHSA], 1993 (Act No 85 of 1993) and Occupational Health & Safety Amendment Act (Act No. 181 of 1993). This Act will apply to the persons who will be responsible for construction and operation of the hatchery.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>8. The development will significantly increase the risk of rat infestation in the village and surrounding countryside.</p>	<p>The act was created to provide for the health and safety of persons at work and for the health and safety of persons in connection with the use of plant and machinery; the protection of persons other than persons at work against hazards to health and safety arising out of or in connection with the activities of persons at work; to establish an advisory council for occupational health and safety; and to provide for matters connected therewith.</p> <p>8. The developer will ensure that strict measures are implemented to ensure that no rat infestation occurs. The developer will also have to protect the hatchery from such rodents. The developer will have to ensure that water storage areas remain clean and the water is changed every day.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>9. In periods of inclement weather, it may not be possible to transport poultry manure away from the site. This means that manure will have to be stored on site, which will significantly increase risk of foul odour.</p> <p>10. It is not possible for manure to be spread onto and ploughed into surrounding fields at a frequency of twice per week. Ploughing is only possible at certain times of the year, so again, this means there must be manure storage somewhere.</p> <p>11. The manure produced will be spread over a number of fields within surrounding villages. This will impact a far greater number of residents of local villages and towns with the offensive odour and fly problems associated with chicken manure. Given the far-reaching implications of this, we feel that the surrounding villages and towns should be consulted on this development.</p> <p>12. These pollutants be the noise; odour; infection; water; air contamination or health implications will also adversely affect property values in the area and specifically Season Eco Golf Estate.</p> <p>13. Seasons Eco Golf Estate is an Eco Estate with multiple species of protected fauna and flora</p>	<p>The eggs must be placed in a safe enclosed area especially overnight. All areas of the hatchery must be kept clean and hygienic. The site must also be cleaned especially if there bushes and long grass to protect the area from rats.</p> <p>9. Manure will be temporarily stored on the site in a lined dam which can be covered.</p> <p>10. As stated above.</p> <p>11. The potential odours that are associated with the proposed development will be local in nature. The surrounding land owners within a 100m radius of the proposed developments have been notified about the proposed development.</p> <p>12. The property prices should not be affected by this proposed</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>on the Estate which similar to their Human Co Inhabitants will be adversely affected by all the very same pollutants of the noise; odour infection; water air contamination and health implications.</p> <p>Site 1 – located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeesfontein 445 JQ</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The proposed development is located in close proximity of approximately 580m to the residential village. 2. The odour from poultry faeces is extremely unpleasant and offensive. The odour would be permanently present in the village. There would be no reprieve from it. 3. Given the prevailing wind direction, which is over the proposed development and onto the village, the continual odour will significantly impact on normal life. Windows will need to be permanently kept shut; children will be unable to utilise the play area – the only communal facility remaining in the village; residents will be unable to enjoy their garden areas or utilise any other outside space. 4. The proposed range area extends in close 	<p>development. As stated above, all measures will be implemented to counteract any potential impacts on water, air contamination or health.</p> <p>13. Bokamoso's In-House Ecologist has conducted an Ecological Study for Flora and Fauna. Based on the ecological sensitivity of the area, Site 3 has a low sensitivity rating as the site is transformed and it is used as a dumping site. It is not foreseen that the flora and fauna species will be impacted upon by the proposed development.</p> <p style="color: red;">The selected site for the proposed hatchery is not located in close proximity of the Seasons Eco Golf Estate. Location Alternative 3 is located adjacent to the Golf Estate, but it was eventually recommended that the Hatchery be developed on location alternative 2.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>proximity of approximately 580m – to the nearest residential property. Given the destructive nature of chickens, this land will be scratched off, resulting in large dusty patches during dry periods. This dust combined with chicken faeces will be blown or carried over the village. This has significant health implications for all, but in particular any residents with respiratory conditions. Additionally, poultry faeces are a known source of salmonella.</p> <p>5. Land drains are present on the land suggested for the proposed range area. This presents an issue with potential water contamination. This has significant health implications. The Seasons Eco Golf Estate has a water licence for this area with the use of boreholes that supply drinking water to the residential homes. The contamination of pollutants seeping into drinking water will be detrimental implementation to souring and contaminating this water.</p> <p>6. The development has potential to cause significant noise pollution, given the close proximity to the village.</p> <p>7. The development will lead to a significant increase in flies. This has significant health</p>	<p>We therefore no longer regard the impacts as raised by the golf estate as significant. We however decided to address the issues as raised in any way.</p> <p>It must be emphasized that a hatchery is very different from a broiler as the facility is enclosed and live chicks are dispatched off site within 48 hours. The potential nuisance impacts of a hatchery thus differ significantly from that of a broiler farm.</p> <p>The development proposed is not a broiler farm, but an enclosed hatchery facility with a small development footprint of only 4100m². Considering that all activities will occur indoors and that all biological waste in the form of infertile eggs, mortalities and egg shells will go through a macerator situated inside the facility before being transferred into enclosed steel drums situated outside the facility, no odour is expected to occur as a result of the proposed hatchery facility and</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>implications, given the disease carried by such insects. Bird diseases including Bird Flu are multiple and susceptible to humans and these diseases have reached epidemic proportions over the last few years. This close proximity to Residential Homes is irresponsible and dangerous.</p> <p>8. The development will significantly increase the risk of rat infestation in the village and surrounding countryside.</p> <p>9. In periods of inclement weather, it may not be possible to transport poultry manure away from the site. This means that manure will have to be stored on site, which will significantly increase risk of foul odour.</p> <p>10. It is not possible for manure to be spread onto and ploughed into surrounding fields at a frequency of twice per week. Ploughing is only possible at certain times of the year, so again, this means there must be manure storage somewhere.</p> <p>11. The manure produced will be spread over a number of fields within surrounding villages. This will impact a far greater number of residents of local villages and towns with the offensive odour and fly problems associated with chicken manure. Given the far-reaching</p>	<p>associated infrastructure.</p> <p>The same applies to the concern relating to noise. As the proposed hatchery will be part of an enclosed building, no noise will be generated by the hatchery facility during the operational phase. Ancillary activities such as egg delivery trucks or chick collection trucks could potentially pose a noise nuisance during the operational phase of the project, however no deliveries or collections will occur after hours, thus the potential impact is regarded as negligible.</p> <p>All effluent (wash water and treated sewage effluent) generated by the proposed hatchery will be discharged into an impermeable waste water pond. Effluent will be used to irrigate gardens on site. Clean storm water runoff falling on the roof of the hatchery facility or elsewhere on site will be allowed to flow undeterred by means of natural sheet flow to the watercourse flowing past the northern</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>implications of this, we feel that the surrounding villages and towns should be consulted on this development.</p> <p>12. These pollutants be the noise; odour; infection; water; air contamination or health implications will also adversely affect property values in the area and specifically Season Eco Golf Estate.</p> <p>13. Seasons Eco Golf Estate is an Eco Estate with multiple species of protected fauna and flora on the Estate which similar to their Human Co Inhabitants will be adversely affected by all the very same pollutants of the noise; odour infection; water air contamination and health implications.</p> <p>Site 2 – located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeesfontein 445 JQ</p> <p>1. The proposed development is located in close proximity of approximately 1450m to the residential village.</p> <p>2. The odour from poultry faeces is extremely unpleasant and offensive. The odour would be permanently present in the village. There would be no reprieve from it.</p> <p>3. Given the prevailing wind direction, which is</p>	<p style="color: red;">boundary of the site. Due to the proposed waste water pond being lined, no contamination of groundwater is foreseen. Any potential groundwater contamination will be detected in the production borehole situated on site during periodic groundwater monitoring, as the water quality required for Hatcheries is very strict.</p> <p style="color: red;">In terms of the South African Poultry Association Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery, Hygiene and chick health is of high priority and there should be a comprehensive cleaning, disinfection and hygiene monitoring system in place and thus rodents are not foreseen to be a potential impact.</p> <p style="color: red;">Considering the above, it is not foreseen that the proposed hatchery will have any impact, positive or negative on surrounding property values.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>over the proposed development and onto the village, the continual odour will significantly impact on normal life. Windows will need to be permanently kept shut; children will be unable to utilise the play area – the only communal facility remaining in the village; residents will be unable to enjoy their garden areas or utilise any other outside space.</p> <p>4. The proposed range area extends in close proximity of approximately 1450m – to the nearest residential property. Given the destructive nature of chickens, this land will be scratched off, resulting in large dusty patches during dry periods. This dust combined with chicken faeces will be blown or carried over the village. This has significant health implications for all, but in particular any residents with respiratory conditions. Additionally, poultry faeces are a known source of salmonella.</p> <p>5. Land drains are present on the land suggested for the proposed range area. This presents an issue with potential water contamination. This has significant health implications. The Seasons Eco Golf Estate has a water licence for this area with the use</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>of boreholes that supply drinking water to the residential homes. The contamination of pollutants seeping into drinking water will be detrimental implementation to souring and contaminating this water.</p> <p>6. The development has potential to cause significant noise pollution, given the close proximity to the village.</p> <p>7. The development will lead to a significant increase in flies. This has significant health implications, given the disease carried by such insects. Bird diseases including Bird Flu are multiple and susceptible to humans and these diseases have reached epidemic proportions over the last few years. This close proximity to Residential Homes is irresponsible and dangerous.</p> <p>8. The development will significantly increase the risk of rat infestation in the village and surrounding countryside.</p> <p>9. In periods of inclement weather, it may not be possible to transport poultry manure away from the site. This means that manure will have to be stored on site, which will significantly increase risk of foul odour.</p> <p>10. It is not possible for manure to be spread into and ploughed into surrounding fields at</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>a frequency of twice per week. Ploughing is only possible at certain times of the year, so again, this means there must be manure storage somewhere.</p> <p>11. The manure produced will be spread over a number of fields within surrounding villages. This will impact a far greater number of residents of local villages and towns with the offensive odour and fly problems associated with chicken manure. Given the far-reaching implications of this, we feel that the surrounding villages and towns should be consulted on this development.</p> <p>12. These pollutants be the noise; odour; infection; water; air contamination or health implications will also adversely affect property values in the area and specifically Season Eco Golf Estate.</p> <p>13. Seasons Eco Golf Estate is an Eco Estate with multiple species of protected fauna and flora on the Estate which similar to their Human Co Inhabitants will be adversely affected by all the very same pollutants of the noise; odour infection; water air contamination and health implications.</p> <p>I/We would like the opportunity to address the</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>planning committee meeting when this application is considered.</p> <p>I/We reserve the right to amplify and expand upon the formal objection contained in this correspondence at a later stage and in the appropriate forum, if necessary.</p> <p>While I have many more concerns that can be tabled at this time, I reserve my right to express them at a later stage.</p>	
4	Natasha Higgitt nhiggitt@sahra.org.za	SAHRA	9 April 2019	<p>Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC have been appointed by Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd to conduct an Environmental Authorisation (EA) Application for the proposed hatchery on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ, near Hartebeespoort, North West Province.</p> <p>A Basic Assessment Report (BAR) process will be completed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, no 107 of 1998 (NEMA), NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations. A project notification has been submitted noting that the development triggers section 38(1) of the</p>	<p>The HIA was revised to comply with section 38(3)a, c, d, e and f of the NHRA. The identified sites were provided with unique site names and the impacts to the sites were adequately assessed.</p> <p>The Phase 1 HIA was submitted to the NWHRA as requested.</p> <p>It must be noted that no sites of cultural historical significance are present on the preferred alternative, namely site Alternative 2.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>National Heritage Resources Act, No 25 of 1999 (NHRA) and that an Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be submitted to the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PHRA-G).</p> <p>An HIA has been submitted to the case in terms of section 38 of the NHRA has been conducted as part of the EA process by APelser Archaeological Consulting.</p> <p><i>Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, Northwest Province.</i></p> <p>A total of two (2) heritage sites were identified within the first and third areas of the proposed development. No heritage sites were identified within the second area under applications. The heritage site in the first area is a historical homestead rating as having a Grade IVc grading and is not worthy of conservation, though no assessment of the impact is provided. The second site identified within the third area for proposed development comprised a cemetery of between 30 – 50 graves. The site has been given a significance rating of Grade III and is worthy of conservation. It is noted that the</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>burial ground is located outside of the direct development footprint, however indirect impacts may occur.</p> <p>Recommendations provided in the report include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No mitigation is required for the historical homestead; • Clean site (burial ground) and document graves. Fence-in and protect and include in a Graves Management Plan. Normally if graves cannot be protected in situ and is to be negatively impacts then they could be exhumed and relocated after detailed consultation with possible descendants have been concluded and permits have been obtained from various local, provincial and National government departments; • From a Cultural Heritage Point of View Sites 1 and 2 would be the most preferred for the proposed development, as there would be no impacts on any archaeological and/or historical sites, features or material. Site 3, with the Grave Site in close proximity, would be the least preferred. However, if the development is to take place on Site 3 then the graves can be exhumed and relocated 	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>after all due processes have been followed and the relevant permits have been obtained.</p> <p>Interim Comment</p> <p>The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meterorites (APM) Unit would like to highlight the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The current application does not trigger section 38(1) of the NHRA, but rather section 38(8) of the NHRA. That the application must be submitted to the North West Provincial Heritage Resources Authority (NWPHERA) as the proposed development is to be located in the North West Province. <p>Furthermore, SAHRA APM Unit requests that the HIA be revised to comply with section 38(3)a, c, d, e and f of the NHRA. The identified sites must be provided with unique site names and the impact to the sites must be adequately assessed.</p> <p>The quickest process to follow for the archaeological component would be to contract a qualified archaeologist (see www.asapa.co.za or</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>www.aphp.org.za to provide an Archaeological Impact Assessment (AIA). The AIA must comply with the SAHRA 2007 Minimum Standards: Archaeological and Palaeontological Component of Impact Assessments.</p> <p>No assessment of the impact to palaeontological resources is required as the proposed development is located within an area of insignificant sensitivity for palaeontological resources as per the SAHRIS PalaeoSensitivity map.</p> <p>Finally, the draft BAR and associated appendices must be submitted so that an informed comments may be issued. Further comments will be issued upon receipt of the above.</p> <p>Should you have any further queries, please contact the designated official using the case number quoted above in the case header.</p>	
After the BAR Review Process					
5	Monica Claassens claassens@polka.co.za	Private	11 September 2019	<p>Jy kan ons maar van die lys afhaal, ons het ons plot verkoop en dan nie meer geraak of betrokke nie.</p> <p>Translate <i>You can remove use on the I&AP list, we sold our</i></p>	<p>Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental noted your email below.</p> <p>We will remove you from the</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT					
No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<i>property and is long longer involved or affected.</i>	registered I&AP list.
6	Natasha Higgitt nhiggitt@sahra.org.za	Sahra	3 October 2019	<p>Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC have been appointed by Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd to conduct an Environmental Authorisation (EA) Application for the proposed hatchery on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ, near Hartebeespoort, North West Province.</p> <p>A Basic Assessment Report (BAR) process will be completed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, no 107 of 1998 (NEMA), NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations. A project notification has been submitted noting that the development triggers section 38(1) of the National Heritage Resources Act, No 25 of 1999 (NHRA) and that an Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be submitted to the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PHRA-G).</p> <p>An HIA has been submitted to the case in terms of section 38 of the NHRA has been conducted as part of the EA process by APelser Archaeological Consulting.</p>	<p>Noted.</p> <p>The final comments as stipulated on pages 3 and 4 of the SAHRA comment letter have been considered, analysed, assessed and addressed in the BAR, the relevant specialist inputs and the mitigation measures/development guidelines, which is a product of the impacts assessment, has been carried over into a well-informed EMPr. The SAHRA comment letter is attached in the Public Participation as Appendix I.</p>

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p><i>Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, North West Province.</i></p> <p>A total of two (2) heritage sites were identified within the first and third areas of the proposed development. No heritage sites were identified within the second area under applications. The heritage site in the first area is a historical homestead rating as having a Grade IVc grading and is not worthy of conservation, though no assessment of the impact is provided. The second site identified within the third area for proposed development comprised a cemetery of between 30 – 50 graves. The site has been given a significance rating of Grade III and is worthy of conservation. It is noted that the burial ground is located outside of the direct development footprint, however indirect impacts may occur.</p> <p>Recommendations provided in the report include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No mitigation is required for the historical homestead; • Clean site (burial ground) and document graves. Fence-in and protect and include in a 	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>Graves Management Plan. Normally if graves cannot be protected in situ and is to be negatively impacted then they could be exhumed and relocated after detailed consultation with possible descendants have been concluded and permits have been obtained from various local, provincial and National government departments;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • From a Cultural Heritage Point of View Sites 1 and 2 would be the most preferred for the proposed development, as there would be no impacts on any archaeological and/or historical sites, features or material. Site 3 with the Grave Site in close proximity, would be the least preferred. However, if the development is to take place on Site 3 then the graves can be exhumed and relocated after all due processes have been followed and the relevant permits have been obtained. <p>In an Interim Comment issued on the 09/04/2019, SAHRA requested that the HIA be revised to comply with section 38(3)a, c, d, e and f of the NHRA. The identified sites must be provided with unique site names and the impact to the sites must be adequately assessed.</p>	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>Since the issuing of the Interim Comment, a revised HIA has been submitted including the BAR with appendices.</p> <p><i>Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, North West Province.</i></p> <p>The revised HIA noted that the preferred location of the proposed development has been moved to Site alternative 2. No heritage resources were identified within this alternative site location. A Chance Finds Procedure is recommended.</p> <p>Final Comment</p> <p>The following comments are made as a requirement in terms of section 3(4) of the NEMA Regulations and section 3(8) of the NHRA in the format provided in section 38(4) of the NHRA and must be included in the Final BAR and EMPPr.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 38(4)a – The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites (APM) Unit no objections to the proposed development; 	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 38(4)b – The recommendations of the specialists are supported and must be adhered to. No additional specific conditions are provided for the development; 38(4)c(ii) – If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone, artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development,. SAHRA APM Unit (Natasha Higgitt/Phillip Hine 021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule; 38(4)c(ii) – If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (Thingahangwi Tshivhase/Mimi Seetelo 012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule; 	

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 38(4)d – See section 51(1) of the NHRA; 38(4)e – The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists; i) If heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA; The Final BAR and EMPr must be submitted to SAHRA for record purposes; The decision regarding the EA Application must be communicated to SAHRA and uploaded to the SAHRIS Case application. <p>Should you have any further queries, please contact the designated official using the case number quoted above in the case header.</p>	
7	Ms Q. Imasiku Q Imasiku	DEDECT	15 October 2019	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The Draft Basic Assessment Report (DBAR) submitted for comments, in respect of the above-mentioned proposed development received by this Department on 13 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The DEDECT's comments have been noted. 2. Please refer to the response below.

COMMENTS AND RESPONSE REPORT

No.	Name & Email	Affiliation	Date received	Comment	Response
				<p>September 2019 has reference.</p> <p>2. The Draft Basic Assessment Report has been reviewed by this Department and the following amendments are recommended:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. To give an indication to the Department of the conclusion date of the development in order to determine the validity period of the Environmental Authorisation. b. Amend your application form and only include listed activities that are applicable to the above-mentioned project. c. Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) should complete and sign the form Declaration of Interest form entitled "Details of EAP and declaration of interest" available from the Department." <p>It is an offense in terms of Section 24F of the National Environmental Management Act to commence with a listed activity prior to obtaining an Environmental Authorisation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. The conclusion date and/or operational phase of the development is approximately 20 years. b. The application form has been amended to include only the applicable listed activities. c. The EAP declaration has been completed and signed, and it is attached to this FBAR as Appendix K3 – EAP Details.

Appendix 14:

Proof that the Authorities and
Organs of State received written
notification and draft report

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 26 February 2019 03:55 PM
To: 'innocent@bojanala.gov.za'; 'munman@madibeng.gov.za'; 'Abrams@daff.gov.za'; 'paia@eskom.co.za'; 'central@eskom.co.za'; 'deidre.herbst@eskom.co.za'; 'nkoneigh@randwater.co.za'; 'mmpshe@randwater.co.za'; 'RamashalaL@dws.gov.za'; 'mosianem@nwpg.gov.za'; 'BotaV@nra.co.za'; 'boezaks@nra.co.za'; 'maritzadp@absamail.co.za'
Cc: dashentha; marylee
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery - Public Participation Process
Attachments: image001.png; Kroon's Gourmet Chickens - Hatchery.pdf

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Public Notice regarding the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Bokamoso has been appointed as the environmental consultants to undertake the Basic Assessment (BA), Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) and Water Use Licence Application (WULA) Processes for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery.

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Kindly note that the 30-day registration process commences on **26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019**.

In order to ensure that you are identified as an Interested and/or Affected Party (I&AP) please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter in writing, to reception@bokamoso.net.

Should you have any queries regarding this project, please feel free to contact us.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659
Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: juanita@bokamoso.net
Sent: 27 February 2019 10:57 AM
To: 'albert.marumo@gauteng.gov.za'; 'Kaye.petersen@gauteng.gov.za'
Cc: dashentha
Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery - Public Participation Process
Attachments: image001.png; Kroon's Gourmet Chickens - Hatchery.pdf

Dear Interested and/or Affected Parties,

Please refer to the attached Public Notice regarding the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Bokamoso has been appointed as the environmental consultants to undertake the Basic Assessment (BA), Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) and Water Use Licence Application (WULA) Processes for the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery.

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Kindly note that the 30-day registration process commences on **26 February 2019 – 29 March 2019**.

In order to ensure that you are identified as an Interested and/or Affected Party (I&AP) please submit your name, contact information and interest in the matter in writing, to reception@bokamoso.net.

Should you have any queries regarding this project, please feel free to contact us.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Tuesday April 09, 2019
Page No: 1

Interim Comment

In terms of Section 38(3), 38(8) of the National Heritage Resources Act (Act 25 of 1999)

Attention: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd

Kroon's Gourmet Chickens proposes the development of a new hatchery: Three (3) potential sites are proposed: Site 1 is located on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Site 2 is located on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Site 3 is located on Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ.

Bokamos Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC have been appointed by Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd to conduct an Environmental Authorisation (EA) Application for the proposed hatchery on Portion 107 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ; and Portion 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ, near Hartebeespoort, North West Province.

A Basic Assessment Report (BAR) process will be completed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, no 107 of 1998 (NEMA), NEMA Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations. A project notification has been submitted noting that the development triggers section 38(1) of the National Heritage Resources Act, No 25 of 1999 (NHRA) and that an Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) will be submitted to the Provincial Heritage Resources Authority of Gauteng (PHRA-G).

An HIA has been submitted to the case in terms of section 38 of the NHRA has been conducted as part of the EA process by APelser Archaeological Consulting.

Pelser, A. 2019. Phase 1 HIA Report for the Proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chicken Hatchery on various Portions of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445JQ Madibeng Local Municipality, Northwest Province.

A total of two (2) heritage sites were identified within the first and third areas of the proposed development. No heritage sites were identified within the second area under applications. The heritage site in the first area is a historical homestead rating as having a Grade IVc grading and is not worthy of conservation, though no assessment of the impact is provided. The second site identified within the third area for proposed development comprised a cemetery of between 30 – 50 graves. The site has been given a significance rating of Grade III and is worthy of conservation. It is noted that the burial ground is located outside of the direct

Our Ref:



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Tuesday April 09, 2019
Page No: 2

development footprint, however indirect impacts may occur.

Recommendations provided in the report include the following:

- No mitigation is required for the historical homestead;
- Clean site (burial ground) and document graves. Fence-in and protect and include in a Graves Management Plan. Normally if graves cannot be protected in situ and is to be negatively impacted then they could be exhumed and relocated after detailed consultation with possible descendants have been concluded and permits have been obtained from various local, provincial and National government departments;
- From a Cultural Heritage Point of View Sites 1 and 2 would be the most preferred for the proposed development, as there would be no impacts on any archaeological and/or historical sites, features or material. Site 3, with the Grave Site in close proximity, would be the least preferred. However, if the development is to take place on Site 3 then the graves can be exhumed and relocated after all due processes have been followed and the relevant permits have been obtained.

Interim Comment

The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites (APM) Unit would like to highlight the following:

- The current application does not trigger section 38(1) of the NHRA, but rather section 38(8) of the NHRA;
- That the application must be submitted to the North West Provincial Heritage Resources Authority (NWPHERA) as the proposed development is to be located in the North West Province.

Furthermore, SAHRA APM Unit requests that the HIA be revised to comply with section 38(3)a, c, d, e and f of the NHRA. The identified sites must be provided with unique site names and the impact to the sites must be adequately assessed.

The quickest process to follow for the archaeological component would be to contract a qualified archaeologist (see www.asapa.co.za or www.aphp.org.za to provide an Archaeological Impact Assessment (AIA). The AIA must comply with the SAHRA 2007 Minimum Standards: Archaeological and Palaeontological Component of Impact Assessments.

Our Ref:



an agency of the
Department of Arts and Culture

T: +27 21 462 4502 | F: +27 21 462 4509 | E: info@sahra.org.za
South African Heritage Resources Agency | 111 Harrington Street | Cape Town
P.O. Box 4637 | Cape Town | 8001
www.sahra.org.za

Enquiries: Natasha Higgitt
Tel: 021 462 4502
Email: nhiggitt@sahra.org.za
CaseID: 13582

Date: Tuesday April 09, 2019
Page No: 3

No assessment of the impact to palaeontological resources is required as the proposed development is located within an area of insignificant sensitivity for palaeontological resources as per the SAHRIS PalaeoSensitivity map.

Finally, the draft BAR and associated appendices must be submitted so that an informed comment may be issued. Further comments will be issued upon receipt of the above.

Should you have any further queries, please contact the designated official using the case number quoted above in the case header.

Yours faithfully

Natasha Higgitt
Heritage Officer
South African Heritage Resources Agency

Phillip Hine
Acting Manager: Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites Unit
South African Heritage Resources Agency

ADMIN:

Direct URL to case: <http://www.sahra.org.za/node/521556>
(, Ref:)

Appendix 15:

List of Registered Interested and
Affected Parties (I&APs)

REGISTERED INTERESTED AND AFFECTED PARTIES



PROJECT TITLE: _____ **Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery**

CONTACT	NAME	PHONE	FAX	E-MAIL	ADDRESS (Postal/Physical)
Client					
Department of Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism (DEDECT).	Motshabi Mohlalisi	014 597 3597 and 072 157 8434	018 392 4377	mmohlalisi@nwpg.gov.za	Agricentre Building, Cnr Dr James Moroka Drive & Stadium Road, Mmabatho
Bonjanala Platinum District Municipality	Mr Innocent Sirovha	014 590 4502	214 597 0306	innocent@bojanala.gov.za	cnr Beyers Naude and Fatima Bhayat Drive, RUSTENBURG
Madibeng Local Municipality	Mr Monde Juta	012 318 9500	012 318 9556	munman@madibeng.gov.za	53 Vanvelden Street, BRITS
DAFF	Mr Mowelase Abram Shiya	012 319 6045	018 384 4571	Abrams@daff.gov.za	Agricentre Building, cnr Dr James Moroka Drive and Stadium Street, MMABATHO
Eskom	Deidre Herbst	011 800 3501		paia@eskom.co.za ; central@eskom.co.za / deidre.herbst@eskom.co.za	
Rand Water	Natalie Koneight	011 682 0911		nkoneigh@randwater.co.za ; mmpshe@randwater.co.za	522 Impala Road, Glenvista, 2058
Department of Health	Albert Marumo			albert.marumo@gauteng.gov.za	
Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS)	Thato Mjona			MjonaT@dws.gov.za	

Appendix 16:

Copies of any correspondence
and minutes of any meetings

juanita@bokamoso.net

From: Bokamoso <reception@bokamoso.net>
Sent: 28 February 2019 09:44 AM
To: juanita
Subject: FW: kroon's gourmet chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery
Attachments: Scan_20190228 (2).jpg

From: Tebogo Primary [mailto:tebogoprim@gmail.com]
Sent: 28 February 2019 09:43 AM
To: reception@bokamoso.net
Subject: RE: kroon's gourmet chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear Juanita De Beer

Please find attached document for your attention

Regards

WAJ Lightfoot
Principal

HARTEBEEFONTEIN RESIDENTS ASSOCIATION

KONTAK: LIGHTY LIGHTFOOT TEL: 082 806 5615

KONTAK: FAAN COOPER TEL: 082 461 5547

P/O BOX 4593

BRITS

0250

28 FEBRUARIE 2019

BOKAMOS

PO/BOX 11375

MAROELANA 0161

Geagte Juanita de Beer

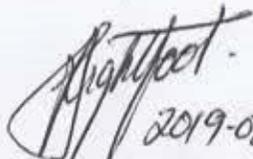
RE: Kroon's gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Ek, Wilfred A.J. Lightfoot, woonagtige te ANA Landbouhoewes Nr. 20 (K23) te Hartebeesfontein 445JQ en ook as verteenwoordige lid van die HRA (Hartebeesfontein Residenents Association). Namens die HRA wil ons as bestuur graag hiermee, u kantoor in kennis stel dat ons aansoek wil doen om as, Hartebeesfontein Residents Association (HRA), deelname te kan verkry, om deel van die omgewings-asseserings proses (inpak studie) te wees. Ons sal dit dus hoog op prys stel dat, die HRA, van alle beplanning, inspeksies, beweging van beamptes, inligting en uitkomste, direk vanaf Bokamos sal ontvang.

Alle dokumentasie rondom die registrasie vir publieke deelname, moet so spoedig as moontlik vanaf u kantoor na HRA gestuur word, vir voltooiing en inhandiging. Gebruik die volgende epos adres vir toekomstige kommunikasie. tebogoprim@gmail.com of faancooper@gmail.com

Ons wil u ook vra, om n publieke vergadering met die HRA lede te bele. Sodoende kan al die inwoners die regte inligting direk vanaf u kantoor aangaande die projek bekom en onduidelikhede deur vraag en antwoord, uit die weg geruim word.

Baie dankie vir u tyd en aandag. Ons hoop om n spoedige reaksie op hierdie versoek te verkry.



2019-02-28

LIGHTY LIGHTFOOT

From: dashentha@bokamoso.net
Sent: 13 March 2019 11:59 AM
To: claassens@polka.co.za
Cc: marylee; adele; juanita
Subject: RE: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery
Attachments: image002.png; image003.png

Good Day JG Claassens en ML Claassens,

Your email below regarding the proposed Kroon's Gourmet Chickens Hatchery has been acknowledged.

Bokamoso Environmental has sent the email to the client.

Trust that you find the above in order.

Kind regards,

Dashentha Moodley

WULA Practitioner and EAP

BA (Hons)(Environmental Management)(cum laude)



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: juanita@bokamoso.net [mailto:juanita@bokamoso.net]

Sent: Tuesday, 12 March 2019 2:01 PM

To: claassens@polka.co.za

Cc: dashentha; marylee

Subject: RE: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Dear JG Claassens en ML Claassens,

Thank you for your response, Bokamoso Environmental registered you as an Interested and/or Affected Party for the proposed ***Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery*** project.

Please note that the Project Consultant will respond to your queries as soon as possible.

Bokamoso Environmental will keep you updated regarding the process in the future.

Kind regards,

Juanita de Beer

Personal Assistant (PA) to Owner and Public Participation Officer



36 Lebombo Road, Ashlea Gardens, Pretoria | PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161

Tel: 012 346 3810 | Fax: 086 570 5659

Email: reception@bokamoso.net | Website: www.bokamoso.net

From: claassens@polka.co.za [mailto:claassens@polka.co.za]

Sent: 12 March 2019 09:55 AM

To: reception@bokamoso.net

Subject: Kroon's Gourmet Chickens (Pty) Ltd Hatchery

Aandag: Juanita de Beer

Hiermee doen ons, J.G Claassens en M.L. Claassens, woonagtig te Hartbeesfontein, (Ana Landbouhoewes) Gedeelte 253, 445JQ, Hartbeesfontein, Brits 0250, aansoek om te registreer en aansoek doen om deelname te verkry in die omgewings en asseserings proses van genoemde projek.

Ons sal dit hoog op prys stel indien ons per e-pos in kennis gestel kan word van alle beplanning, inligting, uitkomst asook publieke vergaderings wat ons kan bywoon.

Verder is dit ook net ter insae en wil ons ook u in kennis stel dat ons dit oorweeg om ons eiendom in die mark te lys as te koop. Ons eiendom is direk oorkant die gedeelte wat as "site 2" aangedui is, en langs die gedeelte "site 1", geleë.

Baie dankie

JG Claassens en ML Claassens

0823346739

0823316739

2019/03/12

Appendix J:

Environmental Management
Programme (EMPr)

36 Lebombo Street, Ashlea Gardens
PO Box 11375, Maroelana, 0161
012 346 3810
086 570 5659
reception@bokamoso.net
www.bokamoso.net

BOKAMOS
Landscape Architects & Environmental Consultants CC



ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME FOR THE PROPOSED KROON'S HATCHERY

To be situated on Portion 322 of the Farm
Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ

REFERENCE:

December 2019

Prepared by:

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and
Environmental Consultants CC

Tel: (012) 346 3810

Fax: 086 570 5659

E-mail: reception@bokamoso.net

Website: www.bokamoso.net

PO BOX 11375

MAROELANA

0161

Prepared for:

Kroon Familie Trust

Tel: 012 504 2117

E-mail: jacques@kroonchickens.co.za

PO Box 48657

Hercules

0030

BOKAMOS
Landscape Architects & Environmental Consultants CC



Compliance with Appendix 4 of 2014 NEMA

EIA Regulations, as amended

Section	Requirement	Location addressed in EMPr
1(1)	An EMPr must comply with section 24N of the Act and include—	
(a)	details of—	Refer Report details, page 3
(i)	the EAP who prepared the EMPr; and	
(ii)	the expertise of that EAP to prepare an EMPr, including a curriculum vitae;	
(b)	a detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the EMPr as identified by the project description;	Refer to Section 1.2
(c)	a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers;	Refer to Section 1.4 and Figure 3
(d)	a description of the impact management outcomes, including management statements, identifying the impacts and risks that need to be avoided, managed and mitigated as identified through the environmental impact assessment process for all phases of the development including—	Refer to Section 1.3 and 4
(i)	planning and design;	
(ii)	Pre-construction activities;	
(iii)	construction activities;	
(iv)	rehabilitation of the environment after construction and where applicable post closure; and	
(v)	where relevant, operation activities;	
(f)	A description of proposed impact management actions, identifying the manner in which the impact management outcomes contemplated in paragraph (d) will be achieved, and must, where applicable, include actions to —	Refer to Section 4
(i)	avoid, modify, remedy, control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation;	
(ii)	comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices;	
(iii)	comply with any applicable provisions of the Act regarding closure, where applicable; and	
(iv)	comply with any provisions of the Act regarding financial provision for rehabilitation, where applicable;	
(g)	the method of monitoring the implementation of the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f);	Refer Section 3 and 4
(h)	the frequency of monitoring the implementation of the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f);	Refer to Section 4
(i)	an indication of the persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the impact management actions;	Refer to Section 3 and 4
(j)	the time periods within which the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f) must be implemented;	Refer to Section 3 and 4
(k)	the mechanism for monitoring compliance with the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f);	Refer to Section 4
(l)	a program for reporting on compliance, taking into account the requirements as prescribed by the Regulations;	Refer to Section 5
(m)	an environmental awareness plan describing the manner in which—	Refer to Appendix A
(i)	the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and	
(ii)	risks must be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment; and	
(n)	any specific information that may be required by the competent authority.	NA
(2)	Where a government notice gazetted by the Minister provides for a generic EMPr, such generic EMPr as indicated in such notice will apply.	NA

Report details

Report Details	Rev 0
Report Title	Environmental Management Programme Report for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery
Project Consultant	Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC
Prepared by	Lizelle Gregory and Dashantha Moodley, B Soc Sc (Hons) BA (Hons) (cum laude) – Environmental Management B Soc Sc – Geography and Environmental Management Nearly nine years' experience in the field of integrated environmental and water resource management.
Public Participation compiled and reviewed by	Juanita de Beer Seven years' experience in public relations and public participation processes.
Internal QC review by	Adèle Drake, BA. (University of Pretoria), NQF Level 7 Air Quality Management (University of Johannesburg) Adèle has more than 15 years' experience in the field of environmental management within the following industries; mining, forestry, renewables and consulting.
Final review by	Lizelle Gregory, (BLArch) Lizelle has 25 years' experience in the field of environmental management and is a member of the South African Council of the Landscape Architects Profession (SACLAP), the International Association of Impact Assessments (IAIA) and the Institute of Environmental Management and Assessment (IEMA). Professional Practice Number: 97078
Declaration	I, Lizelle Gregory, as authorised representative of Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC hereby confirm my independence in terms of Section 13.(1)(a) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) 2014 EIA Regulations as amended.
Copyright Warning	Unless otherwise noted, the copyright in all text and other content (including the manner of presentation) is the exclusive property of Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC.

Table of Contents

1	Project description	5
1.1	Background	5
1.2	Description of aspects of the (activity) listed activities associated with the proposed development	7
1.3	Impacts on and risks identified to the receiving environment (proposed development site) and management actions	8
1.4	Environmental sensitivities	14
2	Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) objectives	15
3	Roles and responsibility in terms of monitoring and implementation	15
3.1	Roles and responsibilities	16
3.2	Reporting Procedures	20
	3.2.1 Reporting of EMPr non-compliance	20
	3.2.2 Reporting of environmental pollution incidents	20
3.3	Site Instruction Book.....	21
3.4	ESO (Environmental Site Officer) Diary Entries.....	21
3.5	Methods Statements	21
3.6	Record Keeping.....	22
3.7	Programmes and Plans.....	22
4	Impact identification, management, mitigation and responsibility per project phase	23
5	EMPr review and reporting on compliance	40

1 Project description

1.1 Background

Kroon Familie Trust appointed Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC to conduct an Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) process and Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery Development on one of three properties situated within Madibeng Local Municipality, Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, North West Province.

The applicant is a well-known chicken farmer and urgently requires a new hatchery in close proximity of their current chicken broiler's and abattoir. Even though the hatchery needs to be in close proximity of the current facility for logistical purposes, it cannot be located on the same property than the broilers and abattoir based on **The South African Poultry Association Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery**. In terms of the Code of Practice a hatchery facility should be established in an isolated geographical location far away from other poultry and livestock due to facility hygiene and disease control.

Note Regarding Report format

This application for environmental authorisation was initially completed on the North West Department of Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development (NWREAD) Template for a Basic Assessment Report, December 2014. NWREAD officials however advised during June 2019 that the Basic Assessment Report should not be completed on the former NWREAD Template, but must conform to Appendix 1 of the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA), 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended) 2014 Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) Regulations, as amended April 2017.

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery



Figure 1: Locality map

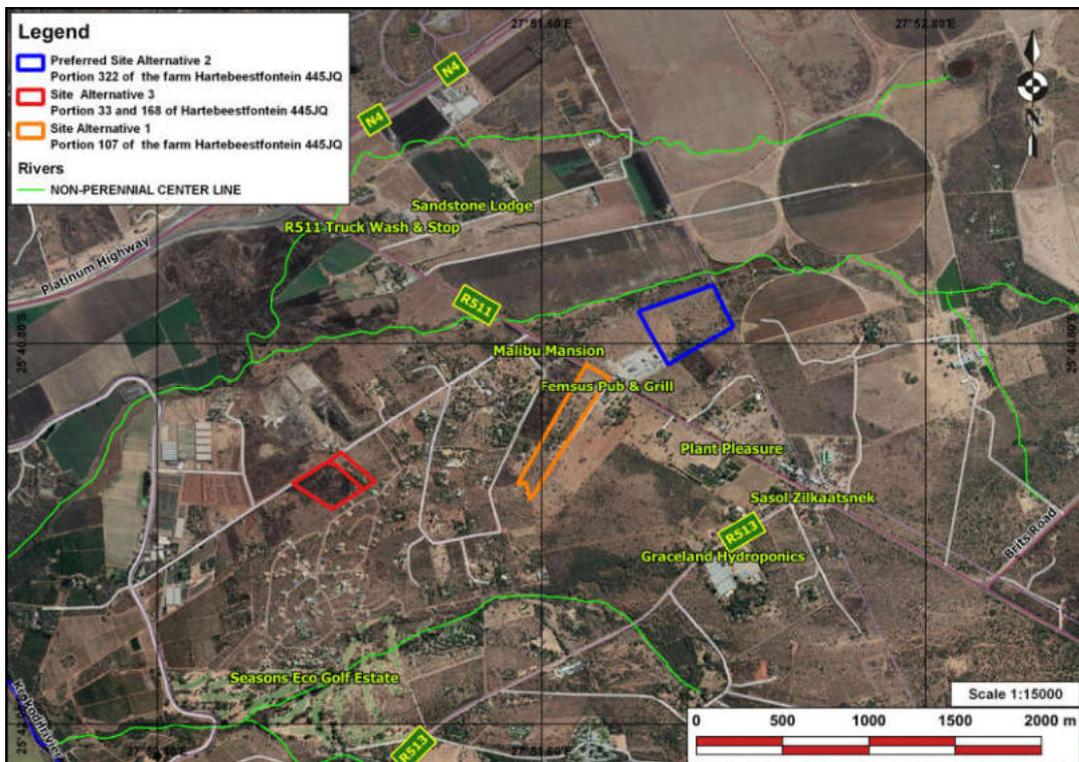


Figure 2: Aerial map

1.2 Description of aspects of the (activity) listed activities associated with the proposed development

The proposed Kroon's Hatchery facility to be constructed over five phases, will eventually cover a surface area of 4 100m² capable of hatching approximately 600 000 chicks per week. A "Hatchery" is a facility where poultry eggs are hatched under artificial conditions. The eggs usually hatch within 21 days and an egg incubator is required to assist with the controlling of temperature, humidity and egg turning. Chicks are dispatched from the hatchery site as soon as possible after hatching to ensure that they receive food and water within 48 hours. Refer to Section 1.3.1 for a description of the hatchery facility structures and associated infrastructure.

It must be emphasized that a hatchery is very different from a broiler as the facility is enclosed and live chicks are dispatched off site within 48 hours. The potential nuisance impacts of a hatchery thus differ significantly from that of a broiler farm. Biosecurity is of utmost importance to ensure healthy chicks.

The hatchery facility will comprise of egg receiving areas, egg storage rooms, incubation rooms, hatching rooms, chick handling rooms and hatchery debris removal and storage. It is estimated that approximately 9.7 tons of solid waste will be generated per week (38.8t per month) which includes, office waste and biological waste in the form of infertile eggs, mortalities and egg shells. Biological waste will go through a macerator situated inside the facility before being transferred into steel drums situated outside the facility via a screw conveyor. The biological waste will then be transported to the Kroon's Chickens Abattoir's rendering plant.

Ancillary activities associated with the hatchery facility may include the upgrading of an existing access road which falls within a registered 9.44m wide servitude, construction of an on-site sewage package plant and waste water pond, irrigation with wastewater and groundwater abstraction. Effluent (waste water) from the hatchery facility in the form of wash water containing soap, detergent and fluff of

approximately 160m³ per week (640m³ per month), as well as treated effluent from the on-site package plant, will be discharged into the waste water pond for the purpose of irrigation.

1.3 Impacts on and risks identified to the receiving environment (proposed development site) and management actions

Geology and soils:

- The geology of the site is composed of Rustenburg, lebowa and rashoop rock type. The study area and its surroundings are mainly underlain by pyroxinite, harzburgite and norite rocks. The northern parts of the study site are underlain by plinthic catena with eutrophic red soils. The southern part of the study site is composed of plinthic catena with eutrophic red soils.

Hydrology & Wetlands:

- The study site occurs within the quaternary catchment A21J, Upper Crocodile Sub-catchment in the Limpopo Water Management Area. A non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west past the site outside the northern boundary.
- A Wetland Delineation and Risk Assessment Report dated March 2019 concluded that no wetlands occur within a 500m radius from the proposed Hatchery site, however a 100m buffer was recommended for the non-perennial watercourse due to the study site occurring outside the urban edge. No development is planned within this buffer area as part of the proposed Hatchery. The Ecological Importance and Sensitivity of the watercourse is regarded as being Moderate due to high vegetation cover.

Topography

- The topography of the study area is regarded as favourable for the installation of engineering services. The site slopes approximately 11metres over a distance of approximately 520m (approximately 1 metre every 45 metres). The proposed hatchery will be located in the southern, higher lying section of the study area and the proposed on-site sewer treatment facility will be situated at a point lower than the facility in order to allow for the sewer to gravitate. The sewer treatment facility will be situated outside of the 1:100-year flood line and the watercourse buffer.

Storm water will also be directed to the lower lying sections of the study area. Storm water will mainly be sheet flow and the industrial water will be separated from the clean storm water.

Climate

- In the North-West Province, specifically the town of Brits summer temperatures can range between 19° and 29°C, and winter is usually associated with arid sunny days and relatively chilly nights.
- The average winter temperature which is from May to July varies from 2°C to 20°C during the day. In terms of rainfall patterns, the Brits receives approximately 540mm of rain per annum with most of the rainfall occurring during the summer months.
- Should the construction phase be scheduled for the summer months, appropriate erosion and siltation measures must be implemented.

Fauna and flora:

- The preferred site alternative occurs within a Savannah Biome within the Central Bushveld Bioregion and the Moot Plains Bushveld Vegetation Unit.
- The north-eastern corner of the site occurs within a Threatened Ecosystem in the form of the Marikana Thornveld, carrying the status Vulnerable.
- According to the North West Biodiversity Sector Plan, the proposed development site has moderate to high hyperdiversity and is classified as Critical Important Area in terms of Flora. According to the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) Geographical Information System, the proposed Hatchery site occurs within an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA) which is in a natural state.

Agricultural:

- The study site falls within an area that is earmarked as arable. Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ is surrounded by agricultural and commercial land uses. The site is suitable for agricultural activities, such as the proposed hatchery, due to it being situated on a small holding. Portions 33 and 168's proximity to residential estates makes it

less desirable for agricultural activities, due to potential noise and odours emanating from the hatchery

Cultural /Historical:

- A Phase 1 Heritage Impact Assessment Report was conducted by A Pelsier Archaeological Consulting (APAC). No sites of cultural significance were identified on the preferred site (Site Alternative 2).
- A final comment letter has been received from the SAHRA who acknowledges that the preferred development site is site alternative 2 and that no heritage resources have been identified within site 2. However, a Chance Finds Procedure is recommended. The final comment letter of the SAHRA recommends that specific mitigation measures are incorporated into the FBAR and the EMPr. Such measures will be stipulated in the impact assessment. The SAHRA comment letter is attached as Appendix I in the Public Participation.

Social:

- The proposed chicken hatchery is viewed as a societal priority due to the contribution to food production, as egg production is not conducted on a large scale within the Madibeng Local Municipality, therefore, the proposed hatchery will indirectly contribute to expanding the commercial farming sector, specifically egg production.
- The hatchery is also in line with the Integrated Development Plan (IDP) and the Spatial Development Plan (SDP) as the development will be contributing towards food production and employment creation.
- In terms of land use, a Rezoning Application is required in order to give effect to the proposed Hatchery and has been submitted to the Madibeng Local Authority for consideration and approval.

Visual

- Portion 322 is separated from Road R511 by the concrete brick factory known as Horizon Bricks. No visual impact is foreseen.
- Site Alternative 3 is situated on Portions 33 and 168 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ, and a residential estate namely Bushveld View Estate is located to the immediate south of the study site and the Multi Plant Seedling Nursery is located to the north-west of the study site. Should this site Alternative be chosen, there could be a potential visual impact.

Air Pollution (dust and noise):

- The study site of Portion 322 is located the furthest from the residential areas (specifically Bushveld View Estate and Ana Agricultural Holdings), and is therefore very unlikely to pose an air pollution issue in terms of odour which would cause continuous complaints by the residents.
- The wind direction is easterly during winter and westerly during summer. Any probable odour emanating from the hatchery would affect the Horizon Brick factory.
- Some construction phase noise associated with builder's machinery and processes are expected for the construction phase.
- The proposed hatchery will not generate large amounts of traffic and the hatchery activities will mainly take place indoors. It is therefore not anticipated that the noise levels associated with the proposed facility will exceed 45dBA (an acceptable noise level for a rural residential area) at any of the property boundaries. Also take note that the study area is bordered by a brick factory to the immediate west and other business properties as well as a busy road also occur to the north-west, west and south-west of the study area. The land-use to the north-east, east and south-east is mainly agricultural and the dwellings of the farms to the north-east, east and south-east is not located in close proximity of the hatchery facility.

Erosion and loss of topsoil:

- Ensure sloped rehabilitated areas do not erode by using appropriate erosion control such as berms and stakes.
- Rehabilitate slope areas to 1:3 and cover with topsoil, revegetate and water regularly.
- Ensure that Storm water is properly managed and diverted around the site to avoid erosion.
- Rehabilitation with stockpiled topsoil to occur as soon as possible.

Service provision:

- A 24-hour yield test is required to confirm availability of water for all five phases of the hatchery development.
- As per the water quality tests carried out by an accredited laboratory, all of the general water quality parameters comply with the SANS 241-1: 2015 drinking water quality standards. In terms of anions, all parameters comply with SANS excluding nitrate (N) and nitrate as (NO₃). In terms of the hatchery water quality, pH, the sum of chloride and sulphate and iron are within the guideline limits. In contrast, the total hardness (560 mg CaCO₃/ℓ) exceeds the recommended maximum concentration of 35 to 107mg mg CaCO₃/ℓ for typical hatchery water quality. It is therefore recommended that water softeners will be required to reduce the water hardness. The magnesium concentration (96.8mg/ℓ) exceeds the recommended maximum concentration of 50 mg/ℓ and requires specific treatment.
- Bulk water tanks maybe required for the storage of the abstracted water.
- The construction of an on-site sewage package plant and waste water pond will be required for the treatment of sewage generated by the proposed hatchery. This is due to no current municipal connection available.

- In terms of road infrastructure, the proposed hatchery will include the upgrade of an existing access road which falls within registered 9.44m wide servitude.
- The proposed service infrastructure such as the proposed on-site sewage package plant, abstraction of water from the existing borehole and due to the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flowing from the east to the west passed the site along the northern boundary; a Section 21 WULA will need to be applied for.
- Regarding the electrical supply to the proposed hatchery, the site has an existing dwelling unit which is supplied with electricity. The electricity is supplied from an existing 25kVA transformer situated on Pole BL14/2 located at the entrance to Portion 322. Eskom confirmed in e-mail correspondence dated 12 October 2018 that they will be able to upgrade the transformer to a 500kVA transformer immediately subsequent to the property transferring to Kroon Chickens.

1.4 Environmental sensitivities

The most significant environmental sensitivities associated with the proposed chicken hatchery site development and associated infrastructure are listed below:

- A non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River which flows from east to west passed the site outside the northern boundary. A 100m buffer is recommended for the non-perennial watercourse due to the study site occurring outside of the urban edge.
- The North West Biodiversity Sector Plan (NW BSP) 2015 denotes the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flowing from east to west past the northern boundary of the proposed development site as an Instream Wetland classed as Ecological Support Area 1 (ESA1).
- Approximately 60% (eastern part) of Portion 322 is classified as Critical Biodiversity Area 2 (CBA2) and the remaining 40% (western part) is classified as Ecological Support Area 2 (ESA2) due to occurring within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area in the form of the Hartebeestpoort

Nature Reserve and the Magaliesberg Nature Reserve and due to occurring within an Important Bird Area and within a Freshwater Ecosystem Protected Area (FEPA) Catchment.

The proposed development site occurs within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area, thus certain NEMA listed activities apply to the proposed hatchery development.

2 Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) objectives

The objective of this programme is to comply with Section 24N of NEMA as well as Appendix 4 of the NEMA 2014 EIA Regulations as amended.

In accordance with Section 24N(2) of the National Environmental Management Act, Act No. 107 of 1998, as amended, this EMPr contains management, mitigation, protection or remedial measures that will be undertaken to address the environmental impacts that have been identified for the following phases of the proposed project:

- Planning and design phase;
- Pre-construction phase;
- Construction phase;
- Rehabilitation phase; and
- Operational phase.

3 Roles and responsibility in terms of monitoring and implementation

In order for the EMPr to be successfully implemented all role players involved from planning through to operation, must have a clear understanding of their roles and responsibilities in terms of monitoring and implementing the impacts management actions tabulated in **Section 4**.

3.1 Roles and responsibilities

Holder of Environmental Authorisation (EA)

The holder of the EA is ultimately accountable for ensuring compliance with the EMPr and conditions contained in the Environmental Authorisation. The holder of the EA must appoint an independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO), for the duration of the pre-construction and construction phases, to ensure compliance with the requirements of this EMPr. The holder must ensure that the ECO is integrated as part of the project team. The responsibility of compliance will be carried across to the individual property owners/lessees upon completion of construction. A copy of this document must be supplied to all contractors and subcontractors appointed, as well as C.

Project Manager

The project manager appointed by the holder of the EA is responsible to ensure compliance with this EMPr through delegation of the EMPr to the contractors and monitoring of performance as per the Environmental Control Officer's monthly reports.

Environmental Control Officer (ECO)

An independent Environmental Control Officer (ECO) shall be appointed by the holder of the EA, for the duration of all phases of the proposed project, to ensure compliance with the requirements of this EMPr.

- The Environmental Control Officer shall ensure that the contractor is aware of all the specifications pertaining to the project;
- Any damage to the environment must be repaired as soon as possible after consultation between the Environmental Control Officer, Project Engineer and Contractor;
- The Environmental Control Officer shall ensure that the project staff and/or contractor(s) adhere to all measures stipulated in the EMPr;
- The Environmental Control Officer shall be responsible for monitoring the EMPr throughout the project phases by means of site visits and meetings. This should be documented as part of the site meeting minutes;
- The Environmental Control Officer shall be responsible for the environmental awareness training program;
- The Environmental Control Officer shall ensure that all clean up and rehabilitation or any remedial action required, are completed prior to transfer of properties; and
- A post construction environmental audit is to be conducted to ensure that all conditions in the EMPr have been adhered to.

Contractor (C):

The contractors shall be responsible for ensuring that all activities on site are undertaken in accordance with the environmental measures stipulated in this EMPr and that sub-contractor(s) and labourers are duly informed of their roles and responsibilities in this regard.

The contractor will be required, where specified to provide Method Statements setting out in detail how the management actions contained in the EMPr will be implemented.

The contractors will be responsible for the cost of rehabilitation of any environmental damage that may result from non-compliance with the environmental legislation, regulations, the EA issued, and this EMPr.

Environmental Site Officer (ESO):

The ESO is appointed by the Contractor to monitor, review, and verify compliance with the EMPr by the Contractor. The ESO is not an independent appointment but must be a member of the Contractor's management team. The ESO must ensure that he/she is involved at all phases of the construction from site clearance to rehabilitation.

Competent Authority:

The Competent Authority is the relevant environmental department that issued the Environmental Authorisation. The authorities are responsible for ensuring that monitoring is carried out in accordance with the EA and EMPr and other authorisations issued, by means of reviewing audit reports submitted by the ECO and conducting regular site visits.

Other Authorities:

Other authorities associated with this project include the Madibeng Local Municipality, the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality and the North West Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS).

Parastatals

Parastatals associated with this project include Eskom.

Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP):

According to section 1 of NEMA the definition of an environmental assessment practitioner is "the individual responsible for the planning, management and coordination of environmental impact assessments, strategic environmental assessments, environmental management plans, or any other appropriate environmental instruments through regulations".

The EAP must comply with general requirements listed under Section 13(1) of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended.

3.2 Reporting Procedures

3.2.1 Reporting of EMPr non-compliance

The ECO should immediately report any breach of the EMPr to the Project Manager in writing. The Project Manager should then be responsible for rectifying the problem on-site after discussion with the contractor. Should this require additional cost, then the EA holder should be notified immediately before any additional steps are taken. The Environmental Control Officer shall report to the EA holder regarding EMPr compliance during monthly site meetings.

3.2.2 Reporting of environmental pollution incidents

All environmental pollution incidents occurring on site must be reported by the ESO to the Environmental Control Officer immediately, in order for the ECO to inform the competent authority, as stipulated in the EA.

“pollution” means any change in the environment caused by

- (i) substances;
- (ii) radioactive or other waves; or
- (iii) noise, odours, dust or heat.

emitted from any activity, including the storage or treatment of waste or substances, construction and the provision of services, whether engaged in by any person or an organ of state, where that change has an adverse effect on human health or well-being or on the composition, resilience and productivity of natural or managed ecosystems, or on materials useful to people, or will have such an effect in the future.

3.3 Site Instruction Book

The site instruction book will be used for the recording of general site instructions as they relate to the activities on site. Stop work orders will be issued with the purpose of immediately halting any contractor activities that may pose environmental risk.

3.4 ESO (Environmental Site Officer) Diary Entries

The appointed ESO should keep diary in book form. Each of entries must be available in duplicate, with copies for the Engineer and ESO. These books should be available to the authorities for inspection upon request. All environmental incidents are to be recorded in the ESO diary.

3.5 Methods Statements

The contractor will be required to compile Methods Statements for specific sensitive tasks on request of authorities or ESO. All method statements compiled are subject to measures contained within this EMPr. For each instance wherein it is requested that the contractor submit a method statement to the satisfaction of ESO, the format should clearly indicate the following:

- Why – reason for method statement required;
- What - a brief description of the actions required as part of the task to be undertaken;
- How - a detailed description of the process of actions, methods and materials to be used;
- Where - a description / sketch map of the locality of task; and
- When - the sequencing of actions associated with the task with commencement dates and estimated completion date.

The contractor must submit the method statement before any particular construction activity is due to start. Work may not commence until the method statement has been approved by the ESO.

3.6 Record Keeping

All records related to the implementation of this EMPr e.g. site instruction book, ESO diary, methods statements etc. must be kept in a central location at the site office where it is safe and can be retrieved easily. These records should be kept for the duration of construction and operation of the development for scrutiny by any relevant authority.

3.7 Programmes and Plans

Over and above the Method Statements required under Section 3.5 of this EMPr, to be compiled as part of the impacts and mitigation measures listed in the table under Section 4, an **Environmental Awareness Plan** appended as Appendix A to this EMPr must be implemented.

A **Waste Management Programme** which is site specific and covers all phases of the integrated human settlement development, types of waste to be generated, storage methods, storage locations, disposal methods, disposal locations, responsibilities in terms of storage, disposal and removal, frequency of removal and record keeping, must be compiled and implemented.

An **Alien Vegetation Management Programme** applicable to all phases of the integrated human settlement developments stipulating alien vegetation to be removed, methods of removal, disposal locations, responsibilities, frequency of removal etc. must be compiled and implemented.

4 Impact identification, management, mitigation and responsibility per project phase

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
Geology and Soils	<p>Excavation of soils for foundations</p> <p>Vegetation clearing for site camp/s, parking areas and stockpile areas</p>	To prevent the loss of soil and siltation of the watercourses	<p>Site 2 is not located near any geological structural defects.</p> <p>It is critical that all civil design and construction must be in accordance with prevalent soil conditions. Designs of storage tanks for water must be appropriate to site layout. Determine the ground water levels on the site before designing of the structures and the tank installation.</p> <p>-Soils associated with such rocks usually have heave characteristics and therefore foundation designs and all other structures and features to be erected on the study area must be designed to accommodate some swelling and shrinking. Corrosiveness can also be an issue and therefore services designs, especially pipes and connections to be used must be able to tolerate heave and corrosive conditions.</p> <p>Designs of on-site sewage package plant to cater for leak detection system and underground containment tank in the case of a power failure.</p> <p>Waste water pond where the waste water (wash water, detergent and fluff) effluent from the hatchery and on-site package plant will be discharged into must be appropriately lined (SANS approved) to counteract leakage.</p> <p>Include dust pollution control measures.</p> <p>- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels.</p> <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the</p>	Civil designs cater for geology issues identified	Developer	Once-off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p> <p>Paved areas to be impermeable surfaces and such surface must also be lined in order to prevent leachate/ soil pollution and ground water pollution. Make provision for ground water quality in monitoring boreholes to assist with the monitoring of ground water levels and quality.</p> <p>- Pyroxinite, harzburgite and norite soils is the geology of the study site.</p> <p>-The soils of the study area are underlain by plinthic catena with eutrophic red soils.</p> <p>-Mark all excavations clearly and make workers aware of possible soils collapse in and around excavations.</p> <p>-Trucks and equipment should be kept away from the unstable areas in order to avoid collapse.</p>			

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
Agriculture	Site occurs in an area denoted as arable	To prevent loss of arable land	Although the site is denoted as arable, according to the Due Diligence Report: Land Use Matters, the property is zoned as "Undetermined, and as per the Madibeng Spatial Development Framework (SDF), the area within the subject site is allocated for future residential, however, the operation of a hatchery is not eliminated.	Reports compiled	Developer/EAP	Once-off
Hydrology	Subject site occurs with the quaternary catchment A21J, upper Crocodile Sub-catchment in the Limpopo Water Management Area. A non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west past the site outside the northern boundary.	Protect the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River	Although no wetlands were identified on site during the Wetland Assessment conducted, the wetland specialist recommended that a 100m buffer must be applied around the non-perennial watercourse due to the site occurring outside the urban edge (due to connectivity that still exists upstream and downstream of the watercourse).	Implementation of the EMPr	EA holder/EAP	Once-off
	Leakage of on-site package plant and waste pond (that will receive effluent from the hatchery and package plant) can cause ground water pollution. Spillages on the surface can cause surface water pollution potentially pollute the non-perennial tributary of the	Prevent surface and groundwater pollution	Although no wetlands were identified on site during the Wetland Assessment conducted, the wetland specialist recommended that a 100m buffer must be applied around the non-perennial watercourse due to the site occurring outside the urban edge (due to connectivity that still exists upstream and downstream of the watercourse). -Design the on-site package plant to prevent surface water and ground water contamination. -Design the waste pond to include an appropriate lining (SABS approved) to prevent any leakage. -Compile an emergency and response plan for pollution and other incidents. -Take the necessary SANS standards for poultry facilities, into consideration. -Take the contaminated land provisions as set out in the	Implementation of the EMPr, ground and surface water monitoring.	Developer/Engineers/EAP	Once-off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
	Crocodile River that flows from east to west along the northern boundary of the Site Alternative 2 (Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ)		<p>National Environmental Management: Waste Act into consideration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Paved areas to be impermeable. -Confirm water discharge standards with the local authority. -Prevent the mixing of cleaning/process water with storm water and roof water. -A proper storm water management system should be designed or in place for implementation during construction to manage all surface water flows in a sustainable manner. Provision should in addition be made for an oil-water separator to remove all hydrocarbons, greases etc. as a result of waste items that may be contaminated, prior to be discharged into the municipal storm water system. - This separator must be compliant with SANS. - Proper provision should be made for a designated area on site for the duration of the operational phase for the storage of hazardous and/ or flammable items, including oils, greases, fuel etc. The said area should be lined with secondary containment and banded to contain at least 110% of the spilled substance. - The hazardous waste to be treated/processed during the 1st phase of the hatchery development will be less than 550kg per day and therefore it will not be necessary to apply for a waste license for the 1st phase of the hatchery development. The applicant will apply for a waste license at the National Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) by means of a Full EIA and will only commence with the 2nd phase of the development once the required waste license has been issued by DEA. <p>According to Annexure 1(a) of the National Waste Information Regulations, 2012, the owner has to register the generation of hazardous waste on the South African Waste Information System (SAWIS). This Regulation is regarded as applicable, because the facility generates more than 20kg of hazardous waste per day. The facility will also treat/process hazardous waste and according to the Regulations, the treatment</p>			

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			of general waste using any form of treatment at a facility that has the capacity to process 10 tons of general waste or 500kg of hazardous waste per day excluding the treatment of effluent, wastewater or sewerage, must register on SAWIS.			
	The proposed development triggers a section 21 (a), (b), (c), (e), (g) and (i) WULA	Legal compliance	Apply for Water Use Licence (WUL) for all water uses triggered by the proposed development.	WULA submitted	EAP	Once-off
	Availability of groundwater to sustain the proposed development is required	Groundwater resource availability	<p>A Section 21 (a) Water Use Licence Application will need to be applied for the abstraction of water from existing borehole on the site.</p> <p>-The water needs of the hatchery at 10 950m³, far exceed the abstraction allowed in terms of the GA and that a non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west past the site outside the northern boundary of the site, a full Water Use Licence Application is triggered. No development is allowed within the 100m buffer associated with the non-perennial stream flowing past the site outside its northern boundary.</p> <p>-A 24-hour yield test is required to confirm availability of water for all five phases of the hatchery development.</p> <p>-Borehole water quality tests must also be carried out to ascertain whether the borehole water quality meets the hatchery standards or whether water treatment will be required.</p> <p>-The quality of groundwater supply must be monitored frequently for parameters as stipulated in the EMPr.</p> <p>-Monitoring boreholes downstream of the hatchery to detect any groundwater contamination which emanate from this activity.</p> <p>-Regular water quality tests of the watercourse should be performed at regular intervals during the operational phase to ensure no pollution of surface water has occurred.</p> <p>Water quality in the hatchery must consider the</p>	<p>Studies conducted</p> <p>Yield testing is still required to confirm water availability for all five phases.</p>	EAP	Once-off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>following water quality parameters:</p> <p>Acidity/alkalinity (pH): A pH of 7 is neutral. Below 7, the water becomes acid (can cause corrosion) while above 7 means the water is alkaline (can indicate hard water due to high levels of calcium). Generally, a pH of 6-8 is acceptable - and pH can be corrected by adding chemicals.</p> <p>Total hardness is an indication of hard water, which can cause limescale build-up, resulting in inefficiencies or the breakdown of equipment. The most common unit used is °dH (German degree) or mg CaCO₃/l. Generally, 2-6°dH (35-107 mg CaCO₃/l) is advised, with a maximum of 2°dH recommended for nozzle/spray humidification. Water softeners are used to reduce water hardness.</p> <p>Suspended particles should be absent, as these will block pipes, nozzles etc. Suspended solids are removed by filters.</p> <p>Microbial contamination should be absent. If water is contaminated, another source should be used. Disinfection can reduce contamination, but for example, using water contaminated with Pseudomonas, Acentobacter, Proteus, yeasts or molds - even after disinfection - for humidification is not advised.</p> <p>Some elements in water are known for aggressive reactions which cause the discolouration of equipment. Commonly, the following thresholds are used: the total sum of chloride and sulphate (Cl & SO₄) max 200mg/l, Magnesium (Mg) max 50mg/l, Iron (Fe) max 0.02mg/l. These elements require specific treatments. Extremely pure water (for example distilled or Reverse Osmosis water) is also known to be aggressive. It is therefore advisable to build a small bypass into the system.</p>			
	Potential for surface and groundwater pollution due to	Prevent impact on the non-perennial drainage line	<p>No development is allowed within the 100m buffer associated with the non-perennial stream flowing past the site outside its northern boundary.</p> <p>Designs of on-site sewage package plant to cater for</p>	<p>Service Report compiled</p> <p>Ground and surface</p>	Developer/ Engineers	Daily/Weekly

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
	<p>Leakage of on-site package plant and waste pond (that will receive effluent from the hatchery and package plant) can cause ground water pollution. Spillages on the surface can cause surface water pollution potentially pollute the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River that flows from east to west along the northern boundary of the Site Alternative 2 (Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeesfontein 445 JQ)</p>		<p>leak detection system and underground containment tank in the case of a power failure. -Waste water pond where the waste water (wash water, detergent and fluff) effluent from the hatchery and on-site package plant will be discharged into must be appropriately lined (SANS approved) to counteract leakage. --On site sewage package plant should have spare capacity of 48 hours to store untreated sewage.</p> <p>-Paved areas to be impermeable surfaces and such surface must also be lined in order to prevent leachate/ soil pollution and ground water pollution.</p>	<p>water monitoring programme in place Leak detection system in place</p>		
	<p>Potential groundwater pollution from the on-site package plant</p>	<p>Install monitoring boreholes</p>	<p>Make provision for ground water quality in monitoring boreholes to assist with the monitoring of ground water levels and quality. -Adherence to borehole pumping rates and ensure the correct pump is installed to enable pumping of the recommended volumes. -Monitoring of water levels in the abstraction borehole.</p>	<p>Boreholes installed</p>	<p>Developer</p>	<p>Once off</p>
<p>Topography</p>	<p>Topography is generally flat</p>	<p>Prevent and alteration of topography- cut and fill exercises- low gradient</p>	<p>Engineering designs must cater for the topography and associated surface drainage. The impact on the environment is expected to be Low.</p>	<p>Stormwater Management Plan compiled.</p>	<p>EA holder/ EAP</p>	<p>Once-off</p>

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
		-Loose soils cause siltation	<p>Topography is generally flat. Temporary construction phase storm water management measures to be implemented (i.e. sand bags and hay bales) in order to prevent siltation.</p> <p>Take environmental features (water bodies, environmentally sensitive areas, heavy traffic) into consideration during site foundation. -Avoid drainage lines, -Avoid large indigenous trees or include them in the landscaping. -Ensure sloped rehabilitated areas do not erode by using appropriate erosion control such as berms and stakes. -Rehabilitate slope areas to 1:3 and cover with topsoil, revegetate and water regularly. -Ensure that Storm water is properly managed and diverted around the site to avoid erosion. -Rehabilitation with stockpiled topsoil to occur as soon as possible.</p>			
Climate	Should the construction phase be scheduled for the summer months, erosion could be an issue due to soil type	Prevent erosion	Construction should be planned to take place during winter months only.	Gantt chart	Developer	Once-off
Flora	The study area has a low ecological sensitivity. Removal of indigenous vegetation.	Protect sensitive species	<p>Approximately 60% (eastern part) of Portion 322 is classified as a Critical Biodiversity Area 2 (CBA 2) and the remaining 40% (western part) is classified as Ecological Support Area (ESA2) due to occurrence within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area in the form of the Hartebeestpoort Nature Reserve and the Magaliesberg Protected Natural Environment, and due to occurring within an Important Bird Area and within a Freshwater Ecosystem Protected Area (FEPA) Catchment. -Due to the proposed development site occurring within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area, specific</p>	<p>Ecological Management Plan Implemented</p> <p>Indigenous trees removed/stripped must be conserved for rehabilitation/landscaping purposes</p>	Developer/ ECO	Once-off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>NEMA listed activities apply to the proposed hatchery.</p> <p>-The study site of Portion 322 has been classified as having a low ecological sensitivity.</p> <p>-Prior to construction commencing with any construction works, the development area should be fenced off from the areas that are to be retained as an open space system. The construction related impacts must be contained within the fenced-off development area.</p> <p>-An Ecological Management Plan (EMP) must be developed for the construction and the operational phase of the hatchery.</p> <p>- The indigenous plants that naturally grow on the study site (that would otherwise be destroyed) should be incorporated into the landscaped area.</p> <p>-The area must be properly managed throughout the construction phase in terms of fire, eradication of exotics etc. to ensure continuous biodiversity. It is proposed that as little of the vegetation cover to be cleared to prevent erosion on the application site. Only sections that are intended for the development must be cleared from vegetation. Each section must be rehabilitated as soon as construction is done.</p>			
Flora and Fauna	Spread of invasive and alien vegetation	To prevent invasion and spread of the area with alien invaders	Alien eradication programme must be compiled to satisfaction of the ECO.	Programme compiled	EAP/ECO	Continuous
Fauna	Fauna and Flora Comparative Assessment conducted, Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeesfontein 445 JQ is deemed to be the most suitable site from an environmental perspective as it is categorised to be	Preserve sensitive environments	<p>According to the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI) Geographical Information System, the proposed hatchery site occurs within an Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA) which is in a natural state.</p> <p>Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas (IBAs), as defined by Bird Life International, constitute a global network of over 13 500 sites, of which 112 sites are found in South Africa. IBAs are sites of global significance for bird conservation.</p> <p>Should any fauna species be discovered during the</p>	Ecological Management Plan implemented	Developer/ EAP/ECO	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
	a low sensitivity site, with no protective species having been observed on site		construction phase of the proposed development, construction workers must not trap or kill any species, however must relocate the species to an area of conservation.			
Archaeology	No heritage site on Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ	Preserve site	<p>Site Alternative 2 is the preferred site due to no impacts that will be posed on archaeological or historical sites, features or material.</p> <p>During the construction phase, should the construction workers identify any cultural heritage features, all construction work must cease and this must be reported to the appointed Environmental Control Officer (ECO) or site officer in charge, and the relevant Heritage Authority and in this context the North West Provincial Heritage Authority.</p> <p>The following have been recommended as per comments received from the SAHRA in accordance with Section 38(4) of the NHRA:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Section 38(4)a-The SAHRA Archaeology, Palaeontology and Meteorites (APM) Unit no objections to the proposed development; -Section 38(4)b –The recommendations of the specialists are supported and must be adhered to. No additional specific conditions are provide for the development; -Section 38(4) c (I) - If any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources are found during the proposed development, SAHARA AMP unit (Natasha Huggett/Phillip Hine 021 462 5402) must be alerted as per section 35(3) of the NORA. Non- compliance with section 51(1)e of the NORA and item 5 of the Schedule; -Section 38(4)c(ii)-If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHARA Burial Grounds and Graves 	HIA compiled	Developer /EAP	Once-off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>(BAG) Unit (Thingahangwi Tshivhase/Mimi Seetelo 012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. Non-compliance with section of the NHRA is an offense in terms of section 51(1)e of the NHRA and item 5 of the Schedule;</p> <p>-Section 38(4)d-See section 51(1) of the NHRA;</p> <p>-Section 38(4)e- The following conditions apply with regards to the appointment of specialists:</p> <p>i) if heritage resources are uncovered during the course of the development, a professional archaeologist or palaeontologist, depending on the nature of the finds, must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the heritage resource. If the newly discovered heritage resources prove to be of archaeological or palaeontological significance, a Phase 2 rescue operation maybe required subject to permits issued by SAHRA;</p> <p>-The Final BAR and EMPr must be submitted to SAHRA for record purposes; and</p> <p>-The decision regarding the EA Application must be communicated to SAHRA and uploaded to the SAHRIS Case application.</p>			
Social and economic	<p>No financial provision for the decommissioning phase and for rehabilitation. Must be included as part of the EMP.</p> <p>-Peruse all the mitigation measures as supplied by all the specialists and ensure that there are sufficient funds available for rehabilitation purposes and decommissioning</p>	Sufficient financial provision	<p>Make provision for the decommissioning phase and for rehabilitation and emergency incidents prior to the construction of the proposed hatchery.</p> <p>If required obtain the necessary insurance to cover pollution incidents, contaminated land queries and reports as well as any other health, safety or environmental incidents that could arise during the construction, operation and decommissioning phases of the hatchery.</p>	Pertinent paperwork in place	Developer	Once-off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
	Need for economic opportunities	Provide economic opportunities	The proposed hatchery is in line with the IDP and the SDF plans as the development will be contributing towards food production and employment creation. -Proposed hatchery viewed as a societal priority due to contribution to food production egg production is not conducted on a large scale within the Madibeng Local Municipality and therefore the hatchery will indirectly contribute to expanding the commercial farming sector, specifically egg production.	Economic opportunities	Developer	Once-off
Visual	Visual impact	No negative visual impact	The visual impact of construction activities will be low-medium term. Bollards and protective barriers as well as safety tape may be utilized around the site. -A specific location must be designated for the stockpiling of builders' rubble and associated construction material. -Prior to construction commencing on the site, an area on site must be demarcated for a site camp. -The selected site should not impair views (line of sight) of drivers utilising roads, nor should it be a distraction.	Structures aesthetically pleasing	Developer	Once-off
Air quality	Generation of dust and noise pollution as well as odours	Dust and noise generated during construction	-The study site of Portion 322 is located the furthest from the residential areas (specifically Bushveld View Estate and Ana Agricultural Holdings), and is therefore very unlikely to pose an air pollution issue in terms of odour which would cause continuous complaints by the residents. -The wind direction is easterly during winter and westerly during summer. Any probable odour emanating from the hatchery would affect the Horizon Brick factory. Construction activities may only be carried out from 07:00 to 17:00 daily as to prevent potential impact on the surrounding and adjacent properties (Horizon Brick Factory). Construction activities should comply with Municipal By-laws and conform to NHBRC Standards.	No community complaints received	Contractor/ ECO	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>Address dust pollution and specify damping down of exposed surfaces during the dry and windy seasons.</p> <p>- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels.</p> <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p>			

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>Noise could become a factor to the Hartebeestpoort Nature Reserve and the Magaliesberg Protected Natural Environment situated south-west within 3kms and south-south east within 2kms of the proposed hatchery site.</p> <p>- Some construction phase noise associated with builder's machinery and processes are expected for the construction phase.</p> <p>The proposed hatchery will not generate large amounts of traffic and the hatchery activities will mainly take place indoors. It is therefore not anticipated that the noise levels associated with the proposed facility will exceed 45dBA (an acceptable noise level for a rural residential area)¹ at any of the property boundaries. Also take note that the study area is bordered by a brick factory to the immediate west and other business properties as well as a busy road also occur to the north-west, west and south-west of the study area. The land-use to the north-east, east and south-east is mainly agricultural and the dwellings of the farms to the north-east, east and south-east is not located in close proximity of the hatchery facility.</p> <p><i>It will be necessary to manage and monitor the noise levels throughout the construction and operational phases and complaints lodged regarding noise by surrounding land-owners, tenants etc. must be captured in the site incidents book and must be addressed.</i></p> <p>-Construction operations shall not occur before or after normal working hours. Noise monitoring should be undertaken as spot checks.</p> <p>-When required noise mufflers should be utilized to reduce noise. It is important to keep an open channel of communication between all stakeholders and keep record of any concerns raised i.e. Complaints Register to be kept on site.</p>			

¹ In terms of the Gauteng Noise Regulations

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>-All construction activities must be restricted to normal working hours as depicted in the NBR document for site operations.</p> <p>-No construction may take place on Sundays and public holidays.</p> <p>-If any construction activities are required to take place on the aforementioned days, the surrounding neighbours must be informed of such planned works at least 48 hours prior to the relevant Sunday or public holiday.</p> <p>- Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day.</p> <p>- A facility conducting an activity per source category and above the threshold stipulated in Annexure 1 is regarded as a Category A data provider and must register within 30 days of the Regulations coming into effect, on the National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS).</p> <p>Therefore, it will be necessary for the applicant to register on the data base as referred to above as soon as the hatchery becomes operational. The information as captured on the data base will eventually be used for purpose of the determination of Tax payable when Phase 2 of the Carbon Tax Act comes into effect.</p>			
Services	Water required for the main users/processes in the hatchery	Ensure services available	<p>A 24-hour yield test is to be carried out in order to confirm availability of water for all five phases of the hatchery development. Borehole water quality tests, in terms of the parameters listed above, must also be carried out to ascertain whether the borehole water quality meets hatchery standards or whether water treatment will be required.</p> <p>- In terms of compliance with the hatchery water quality, pH, the sum of chloride and sulphate and iron are within the guideline limits. In contrast, the total</p>	Yield test carried out WULA commenced	Developer/ ECO	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			hardness (560 mg CaCO ₃ /ℓ) exceeds the recommended maximum concentration of 35 to 107mg mg CaCO ₃ /ℓ for typical hatchery water quality. It is therefore recommended that water softeners will be required to reduce the water hardness. The magnesium concentration (96.8mg/ℓ) exceeds the recommended maximum concentration of 50 mg/ℓ and requires specific treatment.			
	An on-site sewage package plant to be constructed	Ensure services available	The on-site sewage package plant triggers water uses in terms of the National Water Act, 1998, as amended and thus requires a WUL.	WULA commenced for on-site package plant	Developer/ ECO	Once off
	Impacts on provincial and local roads and on adjacent properties	Legal compliance	<p>-The existing gravel road that falls within an existing servitude, leading off the R511 may need to be widened or upgraded to cater for deliveries and collections to and from the hatchery.</p> <p>-During the construction and operational phases of the gravel road, dust suppression measures will have to be implemented.</p> <p>-- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels.</p> <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also take legislation which regulated the qualitative</p>	<p>In-principal approval obtained</p> <p>Authorisations applied for</p>	Developer/ Engineers/ ECO	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
			<p>environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p> <p>–Identify surrounding properties that could potentially be affected by road widening (i.e. accesses temporarily affected) and prepare notices to distribute to such affected parties.</p> <p>–Due to the low trip generation where there are less than fifty (50) peak hour trips, the site will not require any mitigation or road improvements as the subject property is adequate to permit safe traffic movements by utilizing the one point of access to and from the R511.</p>			
	WULA triggered by service infrastructure	Protect watercourse	A WULA covering all water uses triggered by proposed on-site service infrastructure as well as the proposed hatchery development.	WULA submitted	Developer/ ECO	Once off
	Electrical supply line required to cater for the proposed development	Ensure services available	The proposed hatchery development site has an existing dwelling unit which is supplied with electricity. The electricity is supplied from an existing 25kVA transformer situated on Pole BL14/2 located at the entrance to Portion 322. Eskom confirmed in e-mail correspondence dated 12 October 2018 that they will be able to upgrade the transformer to a 500kVA transformer immediately subsequent to the property transferring to Kroon Chickens		Developer/ ECO	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Planning and design phase						
Waste management	Pollution of sensitive environments	Prevent impact on sensitive environments	Waste management during construction phase to be budgeted for e.g. supply of enclosed containers and skips as well as removal cost.	Budget includes waste management	Developer/ ECO	Once off
			Madibeng Local Municipality to confirm responsibility for waste removal during operational phase.	Madibeng commitment received	Developer/ ECO	Once off
			Waste Management system catering for construction phase to be compiled to the satisfaction of the ECO.	Waste management system	Developer/ ECO	Prior to construction commencing
Fire Management	Damage to ecologically sensitive environments	Prevent impact on sensitive environments	Plan and discuss fire prevention measures and allow for the installation of the required fire equipment and health and safety signage for the operational phase.	Fire prevention measures in place.	Developer/ ECO	Prior to construction commencing
			Fire breaks will have to be maintained during the operational phase of the hatchery by the owner.	Fire breaks maintained.		
Hygiene	Health	Prevent spread of disease	Budget for and design acceptable control measures to be implemented at the Hatchery to prevent the transmission of diseases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hatcheries shall conduct regular tests for Salmonella. The Hatchery should have a comprehensive cleaning, disinfection and hygiene monitoring system. Disinfectant foot baths shall be placed at strategic points within the Hatchery to prevent the transfer of bacteria from one section to another. 	Disease control budgeted for	Developer	Prior to construction commencing
Livestock	Injury/suffering	Prevent suffering of chicks	Plan and budget for training Personnel to prevent the unnecessary suffering of chicks. Staff shall be trained in any required procedure e.g. sexing, toe-removal, maceration, transportation or de-spurring without causing suffering to the chicks.	Training budgeted for	Developer	Prior to construction commencing

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
Geology and Soils	Excavation of soils for foundations Vegetation clearing for site camp/s, parking areas and stockpile areas	To prevent the loss of soil and siltation of the watercourses	<p>-Site 2 is not located near any geological structural defects.</p> <p>--It is critical that all civil design and construction must be in accordance with prevalent soil conditions.</p> <p>-Designs of storage tanks for water must be appropriate to site layout.</p> <p>-Determine the ground water levels on the site before designing of the structures and the tank installation.</p> <p>-Designs of on-site sewage package plant to cater for leak detection system and underground containment tank in the case of a power failure.</p> <p>-Design the on-site package plant should be situated at the lowest point of the site to prevent surface water and ground water contamination.</p> <p>-Waste water pond where the waste water (wash water, detergent and fluff) effluent from the hatchery and on-site package plant will be discharged into must be appropriately lined (SANS approved) to counteract leakage.</p> <p>-Include dust pollution control measures.</p> <p>-- The gravel road will not be upgraded, but it will be necessary to monitor and manage the dust levels generated by the trucks (approximately 4 trucks per day) and the employees of the hatchery. If the dust generated by the traffic of the facility becomes a nuisance to the hatchery and the surrounding properties, it will be necessary to implement measures to reduce the dust levels to more acceptable levels.</p> <p>The developer of the hatchery facility was aware of the brick factory when they purchased the property and it was confirmed by the applicant that most of the hatchery activities will take place indoors and that the design of the facility will make provision for measures that will prevent dust accumulation on packaging stock, working surfaces etc.</p> <p>The brick factory is also obliged to implement measures that will reduce air pollution and the facility must also</p>	Engineering designs implemented	Contractor/ ECO	During construction

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			<p>take legislation which regulated the qualitative environment (including air pollution) into consideration during all their current and future manufacturing activities.</p> <p>Soil contamination tests that were taken of the soils on the study area prior to the purchasing of the land for the development, confirmed that the soil is not currently polluted by the cement manufacturing activities on the adjacent property.</p> <p>It is recommended that the management of the Hatchery take soils samples, ground water samples and surface water samples on a 6-monthly basis in order to ensure that the environmental conditions on the Hatchery study area remains within acceptable pollution limits and to prevent the land from being contaminated.</p> <p>The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (NEM: AQA), 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004 as amended) must be taken into consideration when developing the facility, when the facility is in operation and when the facility is decommissioned.</p> <p>From a site selection point of view Portion 322 is situated the furthest away from residential areas i.e. Bushveld View Estate and Ana Agricultural Holdings. From this perspective Portion 322 is the least likely to pose any potential nuisance impact on residential estates situated to the west or south-west, which could result in continuous complaints by residents.</p> <p>-Paved areas to be impermeable surfaces and such surface must also be lined in order to prevent leachate/ soil pollution and ground water pollution. -Make provision for ground water quality in monitoring boreholes to assist with the monitoring of ground water levels and quality.</p>			
	Erosion due to unstable slopes	Prevent erosion	Sediment containment structures throughout the site to prevent sediment runoff and accumulation in the	Stormwater management plan	Developer	During construction

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			watercourses and adequate stormwater mitigation to prevent surges.	implemented		
	Loss of Vegetation, and topsoil	Strip topsoil to depth of 150mm	Areas where construction is to take place is to be stripped of topsoil to a depth of at least 150mm .	Vegetation only removed in designated areas. Topsoil stripped to 150mm.	Contractor/ ESO	Before any construction activity commences
	Loss of topsoil	To prevent the loss of topsoil To prevent soil and materials being tracked onto the road.	Stockpiling of topsoil will only be done in designated areas where it will not interfere with the natural drainage paths of the environment and must not be higher than 1, 5 m. -Rehabilitate slope areas to 1:3 and cover with topsoil, revegetate and water regularly. In order to minimise erosion of topsoil and siltation and disturbance to existing vegetation, it is recommended that stockpiling be done in already disturbed/exposed areas. Remove vegetation only in areas designated during the planning stage and for the purpose of construction.	No loss of topsoil. Excavated materials correctly stockpiled < 1.5m high. No visible signs of erosion of topsoil.	Contractor/ ESO	Before construction commences in a designated area.
Hydrology and Geohydrology	Pollution of ground and surface water	Prevent the pollution of the ground- and surface water	Chemical toilets may not be placed within 100m from drainage lines. At least one sanitary facility for each sex and for every worker at each construction area. The contractor shall keep the toilets in a clean, neat, and hygienic condition. Toilets provided by the contractor must be easily accessible and a maximum of 50 m from the working area to ensure they are utilized. The contractor (who must use reputable toilet-servicing company) shall be responsible for the cleaning, maintenance and servicing of the toilets. The contractor (using reputable toilet-servicing company) shall ensure that all toilets are cleaned and emptied before the builders' or other public holidays. No person is allowed to use any other area than chemical toilets. No French drain systems may be installed. No chemical or waste water must be allowed to contaminate the run-off on site.	Toilets are located away from drainage lines. Workforce use toilets provided. Chemical toilets are clean and maintained.	Contractor/ ESO	Before construction activities commence

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			<p>The chemical toilets may not be placed in close proximity of adjacent developments to prevent odours.</p> <p>-It is recommended for storm water to be channeled away from the facility.</p> <p>-Industrial stormwater should be separated from natural storm water.</p> <p>-Industrial storm water (parking, washing bays, effluent related to industrial activities etc.) to be separated from natural storm water. This water must go through a filtration system (grease/oil, silt traps etc.).</p> <p>-Industrial storm water to go through a drainage point with a grid cover to remove litter and other large solids.</p> <p>-It is recommended that green technology such as rain water harvesting be used to capture storm water on the hatchery roof tops.</p> <p>-- Surface water runoff should be spread as wide as possible and not directed on specific areas as this could lead to the increase of soil erosion potential. Groundwater seepage and erosion control measures should be implemented to prevent water stagnation, siltation and loss of existing and remaining topsoil on site.</p> <p>- Return of topsoil and seed with endemic vegetation must commence immediately once construction is completed;</p> <p>Embankments are to be compacted and covered with grass;</p> <p>Suitable stormwater structures and techniques must be implemented to prevent erosion; and</p> <p>Attenuate stormwater on the site, where required as necessary and break the speed and quantity of the stormwater to be discharged into the natural environment.</p>			
Hydrology and Geohydrology	Pollution of ground and surface water	Prevent pollution of ground and surface water by hydrocarbons from mobile plant	<p>Drip trays should be provided for all mobile plant on site for the construction period, while parked;</p> <p>All mobile plant should be equipped with a hydrocarbon spills kit to facilitate cleaning up any spills as a result of a breakdown;</p>	<p>No signs of hydrocarbon spillages on site.</p> <p>The contractor must prove vehicles have been serviced and</p>	Contractor/ ESO	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			<p>An impermeable plastic sheet must be placed underneath the mobile plant to be worked on to prevent ingress of hydrocarbons into soil or water; Any spillages on the impermeable sheet must be cleaned with a spills kit prior to removing the sheet. No leaking vehicle shall be allowed on site. The mechanic/the mechanic of the appointed contractor must supply the environmental officer with a letter of confirmation that the vehicles and equipment are leak proof.</p> <p>- A spill Contingency or Emergency Response Plan must be drawn up and should include the actions that need to be taken in account in the event of spillages of chemicals, fuels etc., during the construction and operational phase of the proposed activity.</p> <p>-- <u>Storage of liquid waste in settling ponds:</u> Where possible, solids and larger suspended matter should be removed from the effluent stream by the use of coarse screening equipment prior to entering a settling pond. The capacity of any settling pond should provide adequate retention time for entrained solids to settle out (one and a half to two hours are normally satisfactory). Adequate free board should be provided to prevent storm water overflowing from the pond. The outflow from the settling pond should be conveyed either to a holding pond before irrigation over land or to wastewater stabilisation ponds. Captured solids should be applied to land in a sustainable manner using crop nutrient needs and status of soil. The nutrient loading to land is a cumulative loading from all sources, i.e. solid manures, liquids and any artificial fertiliser added.</p>	do not have any leaks.		

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
		To minimize pollution of surface and groundwater resources due to spilling of hazardous materials.	Hydrocarbons and chemicals must be confined to specific secured areas within the site camp. These areas must be banded with adequate containment (at least 1.5 times the volume of the substance stored) for potential spills or leaks. All spilled hazardous substances must be contained in impermeable containers for removal to a licensed hazardous waste site. No bins containing organic solvents such as paint and thinners shall be cleaned on site. All spillages must be cleaned up with spills orb product and contaminated soil removed as hazardous waste. Hazardous waste must be disposed of by a registered contractor at an appropriately registered disposal site.	No pollution of the environment by hazardous substances visible on site	Contractor/ ESO	Continuous
		To minimize pollution of surface and groundwater resources by cement	The mixing of concrete shall only be done at specifically selected sites outside the aquatic buffer zone, on mortar boards or similar structures to prevent run-off into surrounding drainage lines, streams, and natural vegetation.	No evidence of cement contaminated soil on the construction site	Contractor/ ESO	Continuous
Hydrology and Geohydrology	Pollution of ground and surface water	To minimize pollution of surface and Groundwater resources due to effluent	No effluent (including effluent from any storage areas) may be discharged into any water surface or groundwater resource.	No evidence of contaminated water resources	Contractor/ ESO	Continuous
Waste management	Pollution of sensitive environments	Prevent impact on sensitive environments	Waste management system must be implemented. A Waste Management Plan must be developed specifically for the hatchery. -All unusable waste must be stored in an appropriately sealed container and store in a banded area. -Waste bins must be sealed appropriately to prevent leakage of waste and which must be emptied out regularly. -Waste should be recycled as far as possible and separated into different containers (paper, plastic, glass etc.). -Waste water is recommended to be re-used where possible. -Waste water disposal methods must ensure no	Plan implemented	ECO	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			pollution of the environment (soil and water) occurs.			
Health and Safety	Impacts on the health and safety of the surrounding environment during the construction and operational phase - Impacts on the health and safety of the employees at the chicken hatchery and any clientele at the hatchery during construction and operational phases	Prevent adverse impacts regarding health and safety	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Make provision for the appointment of a suitably qualified health and safety officer to assist with compliance with the relevant health and safety legislation during all the development phases of the hatchery. -The minimum standards relating to the health and safety for chick hatcheries as stipulated in the South African Poultry Association Abridged Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery, must be adhered to. -Plan and discuss fire prevention measures and allow for the installation of the required fire equipment and health and safety signage for the operational phase. - In light of the nature of the proposed development and control measures that are required to be implemented to counteract the transmission of diseases, it is recommended that the developer may have to register in terms of the Fertilizers, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies, and Stock Remedies Act. 	health and Safety Plan implemented	Health and Safety Officer and Developer	continuous
	Safety and security	Prevent safety and security issues	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Health and safety officer to be appointed prior to commencement with construction and the safety plan as well as the required safety gear for workers to be available on the study area. -Allow for 24-hour security on the study area. -Fence the construction site at strategic points. This will keep the public out of the potentially dangerous construction area. -Site security will ensure that the site is secured and only authorised access allowed. -If required for some of the workers to sleep on the site, such workers must be accommodated in an allocated area on the construction site. -Plan for the implementation of a security system that will reflect a database of all workers and personnel on site during the construction phase. -Also indicate the names of the workers that will reside on the study area during the construction phase. -Remove the names of workers no longer involved in construction works on the study area immediately after 	No issues regarding safety and security arising.	Health and Safety Officer and Developer	continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			<p>such workers stopped with their duties/ we removed from their duties.</p> <p>-The 24-hour security must be notified of new construction workers/ workers to be accommodated on the study area and must also be informed of workers no longer involved in construction activities on the study area.</p> <p>-Workers that sleep on the study area must sign out when they leave the premises after hours and must sign back in when they return to the accommodation supplied on site. On site accommodation could prevent illegal occupation of open spaces in close proximity of the study area by workers that cannot afford daily travelling costs.</p> <p>-Where possible local laborers must be used in order to avoid an influx of people into the area.</p> <p>-Details of all persons to work on the site that must be supplied to the security and project manager must include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Name and Surname, ID Number or Passport Number, Driver's License, copy of relevant ID document/ passport/ driver's license/ service delivered by worker/ employee of the worker/Contact Details of the worker and contact details of a family member or employee. <p>-Fence the area earmarked for the temporary accommodation of construction workers.</p> <p>- If possible, fence the construction site and allow for one/ two allocated and monitored contractor's entrance/s.</p>			
Compliance with the relevant local authority by-laws and policies	-Local authorities have specific requirements for storm water management, discharge of treated effluent into the municipal system, emergency		<p>-It is recommended that the proposed hatchery be authorised due to being in line with local plans and strategies with the provision that the hatchery development complies with the recommendations as contained in the EMPr.</p> <p>- Obtain copies of such by-laws/policies from the local and district municipality in order to ensure compliance.</p> <p>-Confirm that the proposed hatchery will comply with the relevant local authority and district municipality by-laws and policies:</p>	All of the relevant by-laws and plans implemented and adhered to	Developer	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
	<p>procedures, construction works that affect roads and accesses to roads, road safety conditions, temporary disruption of services, air emissions, waste management, outdoor advertising, water services, health and safety, security etc.</p>		<p>North West Biodiversity Sector Plan, 2015; Madibeng Local Municipality Integrated Development Plan (IDP); Madibeng Local Municipality Draft Spatial and Land Use Management By-Law 2016 and; Madibeng Local Municipality Draft Waste Management By-Law, 2017.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Site Alternative 2 is in line with national, provincial and local development policies and frameworks. -The proposed hatchery is in line with the IDP and the SDF plans as the development will be contributing towards food production and employment creation. -Proposed hatchery viewed as a societal priority due to contribution to food production egg production is not conducted on a large scale within the Madibeng Local Municipality and therefore the hatchery will indirectly contribute to expanding the commercial farming sector, specifically egg production. -Minimum standards pertaining to Health and Safety, for Chick Hatcheries as set out in South African Poultry Association Abridged Code of Practice: Chick Hatchery must be conformed to. -In terms of the Madibeng Local Municipality Draft Waste Management By-Law 2019, the Municipal waste management officer must be informed of the intention to generate general waste, 60 days prior to commencement of generating waste. --Application made in terms of Section 56 of the Madibeng Spatial Planning and Land Use Management By-Law, 2016 for the amendment of the Peri-Urban Town Planning Scheme, 1975 for the rezoning of the property to include a "cultivation shed" for purposes of the hatchery. -The hatchery will need to comply with the Norms and Standards for Storage of Waste, 2013 published in terms of the NEM:WA due to triggering Category C (2) of the List of Waste Management Activities that have, or are likely to have a detrimental effect on the environment, due to storing more than 80m³ of hazardous waste. -The hatchery must register in terms of the Fertilizers, farm feeds, Agricultural Remedies, Stock Remedies Act, if required. 			

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			<p>-A separate Environmental Impact Assessment process will be conducted for the Waste Management Licence and Air Quality Licence triggered by the processing of waste by means of the macerator.</p> <p>- It is recommended for storm water to be channeled away from the facility.</p> <p>-Industrial stormwater should be separated from natural storm water.</p> <p>-Industrial storm water (parking, washing bays, effluent related to industrial activities etc) to be separated from natural storm water. This water must go through a filtration system (grease/oil, silt traps etc).</p> <p>-Industrial storm water to go through a drainage point with a grid cover to remove litter and other large solids.</p> <p>-It is recommended that green technology such as rain water harvesting be used to capture storm water on the hatchery roof tops.</p> <p>- Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day.</p> <p>- A facility conducting an activity per source category and above the threshold stipulated in Annexure 1 is regarded as a Category A data provider and must register within 30 days of the Regulations coming into effect, on the National Atmospheric Emission Inventory System (NAEIS). Therefore, it will be necessary for the applicant to register on the data base as referred to above as soon as the hatchery becomes operational. The information as captured on the data base will eventually be used for purpose of the determination of Tax payable when Phase 2 of the Carbon Tax Act comes into effect.</p>			
Hygiene	Health	Prevent spread of disease	Install acceptable control measures at the Hatchery to prevent the transmission of diseases:	Disease control installed	Developer	Prior to construction

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hatcheries shall conduct regular tests for Salmonella. The Hatchery should have a comprehensive cleaning, disinfection and hygiene monitoring system. Disinfectant foot baths shall be placed at strategic points within the Hatchery to prevent the transfer of bacteria from one section to another. 			commencing
Livestock	Injury/suffering	Prevent suffering of chicks	Train staff in any required procedure e.g. sexing, toe-removal, maceration, transportation or de-spurring to prevent suffering to the chicks.	Training presented	Developer	Prior to construction commencing
Flora	<p>The study area has a low ecological sensitivity.</p> <p>Removal of indigenous vegetation.</p>	Protect sensitive species	<p>Approximately 60% (eastern part) of Portion 322 is classified as a Critical Biodiversity Area 2 (CBA 2) and the remaining 40% (western part) is classified as Ecological Support Area (ESA2) due to occurrence within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area in the form of the Hartebeestpoort Nature Reserve and the Magaliesberg Protected Natural Environment, and due to occurring within an Important Bird Area and within a Freshwater Ecosystem Protected Area (FEPA) Catchment.</p> <p>-Due to the proposed development site occurring within the 5km buffer of a Protected Area, specific NEMA listed activities apply to the proposed hatchery.</p> <p>-The study site of Portion 322 has been classified as having a low ecological sensitivity.</p> <p>-Prior to construction commencing with any construction works, the development area should be fenced off from the areas that are to be retained as an open space system. The construction related impacts must be contained within the fenced-off development area.</p> <p>-An Ecological Management Plan (EMP) must be developed for the construction and the operational phase of the hatchery.</p> <p>- The indigenous plants that naturally grow on the study</p>	<p>Ecological Management Plan Implemented</p> <p>Indigenous trees removed/stripped must be conserved for rehabilitation/landscaping purposes</p>	ECO/ESO	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Pre-construction and Construction phase						
			site (that would otherwise be destroyed) should be incorporated into the landscaped area. -The area must be properly managed throughout the construction phase in terms of fire, eradication of exotics etc. to ensure continuous biodiversity. It is proposed that as little of the vegetation cover to be cleared to prevent erosion on the application site. Only sections that are intended for the development must be cleared from vegetation. Each section must be rehabilitated as soon as construction is done.			
	Spread of invasive and alien vegetation	To prevent invasion and spread of the area with alien invaders	Alien eradication programme must be implemented to ensure removal of alien vegetation, following construction.	No alien vegetation visible	EA holder/ Project Manager	Continuous
	Incomplete rehabilitation	To protect the existing indigenous flora and fauna	Upon completion of construction and rehabilitation the ECO should assess and approve the adequacy of the rehabilitation and ensure that sufficient levels of rehabilitation have been undertaken to allow re-establishment of the necessary vegetation. Rehabilitation works should be monitored until 80% of vegetation has been established.	ECO to audit site rehabilitation	Contractor/ ESO/ECO	Once off
Aesthetic	Pollution of environment due to illegal dumping of waste	Waste removed from construction site to be disposed of applicable registered landfill site	All construction waste has to be removed from the site during the decommissioning phase and prior to the project being regarded as operational. Safe Disposal Certificates are to be retained on site. Ensure compliance to Waste Management Plan.	Audit compliance to Waste Management Programme	Contractor/ ESO/ECO	Once off
Legal compliance	Compliance with EA/EMPr/WULA	ECO to conduct final site inspection and audit	ECO to conduct final inspection on site and sign off that the EMPr has been complied with or identify breaches. Submit report to NWREAD for approval.	ECO to audit EMPr compliance	Contractor/ ESO/ECO	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
Agriculture	Site occurs in an area denoted as arable	To prevent loss of arable land	Although the site is denoted as arable, according to the Due Diligence Report: Land Use Matters, the property is zoned as "Undetermined, and as per the Madibeng Spatial Development Framework (SDF), the area within the subject site is allocated for future residential, however, the operation of a hatchery is not eliminated.	Reports compiled	Developer	Once-off
Hydrology	Subject site occurs with the quaternary catchment A21J, upper Crocodile Sub-catchment in the Limpopo Water Management Area. A non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west past the site outside the northern boundary.	Protect the non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River	Although no wetlands were identified on site during the Wetland Assessment conducted, the wetland specialist recommended that a 100m buffer must be applied around the non-perennial watercourse due to the site occurring outside the urban edge (due to connectivity that still exists upstream and downstream of the watercourse).	Implementation of the EMPr	EA holder	Once -off
	Leakage of on-site package plant and waste pond (that will receive effluent from the hatchery and package plant) can cause ground water pollution. Spillages on the surface can cause surface water pollution potentially pollute the non-perennial	Prevent surface and groundwater pollution	Although no wetlands were identified on site during the Wetland Assessment conducted, the wetland specialist recommended that a 100m buffer must be applied around the non-perennial watercourse due to the site occurring outside the urban edge (due to connectivity that still exists upstream and downstream of the watercourse). -Design the on-site package plant to prevent surface water and ground water contamination. -Design the waste pond to include an appropriate lining (SABS approved) to prevent any leakage. -Compile an emergency and response plan for pollution and other incidents. -Take the necessary SANS standards for poultry facilities, into consideration.	Implementation of the EMPr, ground and surface water monitoring.	Developer/ Engineers/	Once off

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
	tributary of the Crocodile River that flows from east to west along the northern boundary of the Site Alternative 2 (Portion 322 of the Farm Hartebeestfontein 445 JQ)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Take the contaminated land provisions as set out in the National Environmental Management: Waste Act into consideration. -Paved areas to be impermeable. -Confirm water discharge standards with the local authority. -Prevent the mixing of cleaning/process water with storm water and roof water. -A proper storm water management system should be designed or in place for implementation during construction to manage all surface water flows in a sustainable manner. Provision should in addition be made for an oil-water separator to remove all hydrocarbons, greases etc. as a result of waste items that may be contaminated, prior to be discharged into the municipal storm water system. - This separator must be compliant with SANS. - Proper provision should be made for a designated area on site for the duration of the operational phase for the storage of hazardous and/ or flammable items, including oils, greases, fuel etc. The said area should be lined with secondary containment and banded to contain at least 110% of the spilled substance. --On site sewage package plant should have spare capacity of 48 hours to store untreated sewage. - Surface water runoff drains and maintenance of structure and equipment that surrounds the waste water pond is maintained and kept in a good working condition. 			
	The proposed development triggers a section 21 (a), (b), (c), (e), (g) and (i) WULA	Legal compliance	Water Use Licence issued.	WUL conditions adhered to	Developer/	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
	<p>Availability of groundwater to sustain the proposed development is required</p>	<p>Groundwater resource availability</p>	<p>A Section 21 (a) Water Use Licence Application approved.</p> <p>The water needs of the hatchery at 10 950m³, far exceed the abstraction allowed in terms of the GA and that a non-perennial tributary of the Crocodile River flows from east to west past the site outside the northern boundary of the site, a full Water Use Licence Application is triggered. No development is allowed within the 100m buffer associated with the non-perennial stream flowing past the site outside its northern boundary.</p> <p>-A 24-hour yield test is required to confirm availability of water for all five phases of the hatchery development.</p> <p>-Borehole water quality tests must also be carried out to ascertain whether the borehole water quality meets the hatchery standards or whether water treatment will be required.</p> <p>-The quality of groundwater supply must be monitored frequently for parameters as stipulated in the EMPr.</p> <p>--Monitoring boreholes downstream of the hatchery to detect any groundwater contamination which emanate from this activity.</p> <p>--Regular water quality tests of the watercourse should be performed at regular intervals during the operational phase to ensure no pollution of surface water has occurred.</p> <p>Implement the emergency preparedness and response plan for the operational phase and put emergency contact number on walls at strategic points for purpose of dealing with emergencies (i.e. fires, explosions, oil spills, fuel spills etc.).</p> <p>Water quality in the hatchery must consider the following water quality parameters: Acidity/alkalinity (pH): A pH of 7 is neutral. Below 7, the water becomes acid (can cause corrosion) while above 7 means the water is alkaline (can indicate hard water due to high levels of calcium). Generally a pH of 6-8 is acceptable - and pH can be corrected by</p>	<p>Ground water monitoring programme implemented.</p> <p>Monitoring boreholes</p>	<p>Developer</p>	<p>Continuous</p>

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
			<p>adding chemicals.</p> <p>Total hardness is an indication of hard water, which can cause limescale build-up, resulting in inefficiencies or the breakdown of equipment. The most common unit used is °dH (German degree) or mg CaCO₃/l. Generally, 2-6°dH (35-107 mg CaCO₃/l) is advised, with a maximum of 2°dH recommended for nozzle/spray humidification. Water softeners are used to reduce water hardness.</p> <p>Suspended particles should be absent, as these will block pipes, nozzles etc. Suspended solids are removed by filters.</p> <p>Microbial contamination should be absent. If water is contaminated, another source should be used. Disinfection can reduce contamination, but for example, using water contaminated with Pseudomonas, Acentobacter, Proteus, yeasts or molds - even after disinfection - for humidification is not advised.</p> <p>Some elements in water are known for aggressive reactions which cause the discolouration of equipment. Commonly, the following thresholds are used: the total sum of chloride and sulphate (Cl & SO₄) max 200mg/l, Magnesium (Mg) max 50mg/l, Iron (Fe) max 0.02mg/l. These elements require specific treatments. Extremely pure water (for example distilled or Reverse Osmosis water) is also known to be aggressive. It is therefore advisable to build a small bypass into the system.</p> <p>--Adherence to borehole pumping rates and ensure the correct pump is installed to enable pumping of the recommended volumes.</p> <p>--Monitoring of water levels in the abstraction borehole.</p>			
Services	Water required for the main users/processes in the hatchery	Ensure services available	<p>Conditions stipulated in the relevant authorisations must be complied with during the operational phase i.e. mentoring requirements etc.</p> <p>WUL and EA conditions must be complied with during the operational phase.</p>	<p>WUL conditions implemented.</p> <p>Ground water monitoring</p>		

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
	An on-site sewage package plant to be constructed	Ensure services available	Conditions stipulated in the relevant authorisations must be complied with during the operational phase	WUL conditions implemented. Regular water quality tests of the watercourse should be performed at regular intervals during the operational phase to ensure no pollution of surface water has occurred. Leak detection system implemented		
	Impacts on provincial and local roads and on adjacent properties	Legal compliance	Maintenance of road Due to the low trip generation where there are less than fifty (50) peak hour trips, the site will not require any mitigation or road improvements as the subject property is adequate to permit safe traffic movements by utilizing the one point of access to and from the R511.			
	WULA triggered by service infrastructure	Protect watercourse	WUL issued for all water uses implemented and conditions adhered to.	WUL conditions adhered to	Developer	Continuous
Waste management	Pollution of sensitive environments	Prevent impact on sensitive environments	The Waste Management Plan developed specifically for the hatchery must be implemented. -All unusable waste must be stored in an appropriately sealed container and store in a bunded area. -Waste bins must be sealed appropriately to prevent leakage of waste and which must be emptied out regularly. -Waste should be recycled as far as possible and separated into different containers (paper, plastic, glass etc.). -Waste water is recommended to be re-used where possible. -Waste water disposal methods must ensure no	Waste Management Plan implemented	Developer	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
			<p>pollution of the environment (soil and water) occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Domestic waste will be removed from the site by a certified waste contractor. -Waste disposal certificates must be kept on record. 			
	Hazardous waste	Prevent impact on sensitive environments	<p>The proposed hatchery must comply with the Norms and Standards for Storage of Waste, 2013 published in terms of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, as the hatchery will store more than 80m³ of hazardous (biological waste: infertile eggs, mortalities and egg shells) waste.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -During the operational phase, all biological waste will be reduced through the use of a macerator situated inside of the facility before being transferred into steel drums outside the facility via a screw conveyor. The waste will then be transported to the Kroon's Chickens Abattoir's rendering plant. <p>A separate Environmental Impact Assessment process will be conducted for the Waste Management Licence and Air Quality Licence triggered by the processing of waste by means of the macerator.</p> <p>-- Category 10: Animal Matter Processing of NEM: AQA is triggered by the treatment of hazardous waste by means of maceration and thus an Atmospheric Emissions Licence is triggered by the proposed hatchery, however, only from Phase 2 as this listed activity only applies to installations, handling more than 1 ton of raw material per day.</p>	<p>Waste Management Plan implemented</p> <p>Norms and standards adhered to</p>	Developer	Continuous
Fire Management	Damage to ecologically sensitive environments	Prevent impact on sensitive environments,	<p>Fire and emergency plans will be implemented during construction especially due to the two nature reserves and surrounding agricultural holdings located in close proximity.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Adequate firefighting equipment will be instituted as recommended. -Fire breaks will have to be maintained during the operational phase of the hatchery by the owner. 	Fire Management Plan implemented	Developer	Continuous

Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) for the proposed Kroon's Hatchery

Environmental Attribute	Environmental impact and risk	Management objective/ outcome/ statement	Impact management actions and mitigation measures	Method of monitoring	Responsibility	Frequency of monitoring
Operational Phase						
Ecological integrity	Damage to natural environment	Raise environmental awareness of all persons involved with operation of the site	Implement Environmental Awareness Plan attached as Appendix A to this EMPr	Verbally test understanding of environmental awareness of operations personnel	ECO	Monthly
	Fire risk to site and surrounding land users	To decrease fire risk	Emergency numbers/contact details must be available on site.	Inspect and verbally confirm: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency numbers displayed. 	ECO	Weekly
	Loss of protected Vegetation	To prevent invasion and spread of alien invaders	Alien eradication programme must be implemented to ensure removal of alien vegetation during development phase of proposed project.	Confirm alien vegetation management programme implemented	ECO	Continuous
Hygiene	Health	Prevent spread of disease	Implement acceptable control measures at the Hatchery to prevent the transmission of diseases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hatcheries shall conduct regular tests for Salmonella. The Hatchery should have a comprehensive cleaning, disinfection and hygiene monitoring system. Disinfectant foot baths shall be placed at strategic points within the Hatchery to prevent the transfer of bacteria from one section to another. 	Disease control implemented	Developer	Prior to construction commencing

5 EMPr review and reporting on compliance

The EMPr is a dynamic document which should be reviewed and amended as the need arises, in accordance with the EIA Regulations.

In terms of Section 32 (1) of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended, if the project scope is changed subsequent to EA being granted, then a Part 2 Amendment Application together with an amended EMPr has to be subjected to another public participation process of at least 30 days.

In terms of Section 34 (1) and (2) of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended the holder of the EA must have the EA and EMPr audited by an independent person and submit an audit report to the relevant authority at intervals stipulated in the EA. If the auditor finds insufficient mitigation measures or non-compliance to the EA or EMPr, the holder must submit recommendations to the competent authority to amend the EMPr together with the audit report.

The audit report and amended EMPr must be made available to potential and registered interested and affected parties within 7 days of submission to the competent authority.

In terms of Section 35 (1) and (2) of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended the competent authority may approve the amended EMPr resulting from an audit or request further amendments to manage and mitigate environmental impacts.

In terms of Section 37 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 as amended the holder of the EA may apply for amendment of the EMPr from the competent authority following publications of the amended EMPr for 30-day review as part of public participation process.

Appendix A: Environmental Awareness Plan

SITE ENVIRONMENTAL RULES

TOOLBOX TALK 1: Site environmental rules.

ISSUE: Do's and Don'ts of the Construction Site.

PRESENTER:

What is the Environment?

Environment (NEMA, 1998) - means the surroundings within which humans exist and that are made up of:

- the land, water and atmosphere of the earth;
- microorganisms, plant and animal life;
- any part or combination of (i) and (ii) and the interrelationships among and between them; and
- the physical, chemical, aesthetic and cultural properties and conditions of the foregoing that influence human health and wellbeing;

What is the Pollution?

Pollution (NWA, 1998) - means the direct or indirect alteration of the physical, chemical or biological properties of a water resource so as to make it -

- (a) less fit for any beneficial purpose for which it may reasonably be expected to be used; or
- (b) harmful or potentially harmful -
 - (aa) to the welfare, health or safety of human beings;
 - (bb) to any aquatic or non-aquatic organisms;
 - (cc) to the resource quality; or
 - (dd) to property;

What is an EMPr?

Environmental Management Programme – refers to a document that is used to investigate, assess and evaluate the impacts that a development is likely to have on the environment during the construction, operation and decommission phases.

Why should we protect the Environment?

- It is our right to live in a clean and healthy environment.
- To ensure that future generations live in a clean environment.
- To prevent the loss of species diversity.
- To prevent loss of ecological goods and services

Environmental Site Rules:

- *No urinating or defecating on site. Toilet facilities provided at the construction site must be used at all times.*
- *Do not waste water.*
- *No littering.*
- *No washing of cars or other vehicles on site.*
- *No open fires allowed on site.*

DATE:	TIME:	LOCATION:
TOPIC:	Site environmental rules	
ISSUE:	EMPr compliance	

DISPENSING, STORAGE AND DISPOSAL OF HYDROCARBONS/CHEMICALS

TOOLBOX TALK 2: Dispensing, storage and disposal of hydrocarbons/chemicals

ISSUE: Do's and Don'ts.

What is a Hydrocarbon (mineral oil)?

Diesel/hydraulic oil etc. are hydrocarbons and therefore classified as hazardous substances. A hazardous substance is any material that poses an unreasonable risk to people, property and the environment. The environment is our surroundings, soil, air and water.

Chemicals

Hydrocarbons/chemicals are toxic if swallowed by humans or animals. The presence of Hydrocarbons/chemicals in water can also prevent aquatic organisms from breathing and may result in aquatic kills depending on the extent of the spill. Hydrocarbons should therefore be prevented from contaminating ground or surface water.

Note:

Only 1 litre of oil can contaminate a soccer field size of water. It is therefore essential to prevent spillages as far as possible and to ensure that if they do occur that they are properly cleaned up and that the resulting material is disposed of correctly.

What is a spillage?

All situations involving the spilling of a Hydrocarbons/chemicals on to the floor or ground or in water, irrespective of volume.

How do we manage this?

1 Correct Storage:

- a. Refer to issues around the bunded area.
- b. Should be contained in waterproof and leak proof containers. Any containers or points that are leaking to be addressed immediately.
- c. Should be stored in a dedicated area on site.

2 Correct Dispensing:

- a. Should check lines for leaks before starting with dispensing.
- b. Place drip tray so as to catch any drips. How would you and into what would you empty the drip tray?
- c. Ensure all residual Hydrocarbons/chemicals is drained from pipe before disconnecting.

3 Maintenance of vehicles and equipment

- a. Check equipment and vehicles for leaks daily. Report leaks to supervisor immediately. Contain slow drips using a drip tray.
- b. Do not use excessive grease when greasing vehicle or equipment parts.

4 Correct Spillage Handling and Disposal:

- a. Clean all spillages immediately. This means treat spill using spill kit and remove spillage.
- b. Dispose in hazardous waste drum or skip.
- c. Report spillage to supervisor.

DATE:	TIME:	LOCATION:
TOPIC:	Dispensing, storage and disposal of Hydrocarbons/chemicals	
ISSUE:	Spillage	

USE AND MAINTENANCE OF DRIP TRAYS

TOOLBOX TALK 3: Use and maintenance of drip trays.

ISSUE: Do's and Don'ts of the Construction Site.

What is a Drip Tray?

A drip tray is a plastic or metal container that can be used to contain a liquid. A container is suitable to be used as a drip tray, if

- It is heavy enough not to be blown away;
- Has no holes in the base or side from which a liquid could leak; and
- The sides are high enough that the liquid will not overflow.

The drip tray must be sized according to the amount of liquid that needs to be captured and contained.

What is the risk?

There is a risk of spillage of hydrocarbons or other chemicals under the following circumstance:

- Various equipment and vehicles may develop slow hydrocarbon leaks (oils);
- During maintenance of vehicles and equipment, there is a risk that hydrocarbons, grease, diesel/petrol may be spilt;
- Refuelling of equipment and vehicles;
- During decanting of chemicals such as paint and curing compound etc., some of the chemicals may be spilt on the ground; and/or
- While applying paint or grease you need something to put the tin, paint brush or roller into.
- Temporary storage of chemicals at point of use

Under all these circumstances the correct use of a drip tray could prevent a spillage on to the ground or into water.

What is correct use of a drip tray?

Note that the use of a drip tray should be an additional precaution to other controls. For example:

- Decanting of chemicals should be done within a bunded area as far as possible. A funnel should be used when discharging liquids into a container with a small opening. Spillage of chemicals should always be avoided. A drip tray should be used only as a precaution in case there is a spill.
- Vehicles and equipment should be checked daily and maintained correctly to prevent leaks. Drip trays should be placed underneath equipment and vehicles when stationary as a precaution in case there is a leak.
- Temporary storage of chemicals at point of use. Chemicals should always be returned to chemical store at the end of the shift.
- When refuelling vehicles or equipment a drip tray should be used to capture any excess or spillages from the nozzle of the hose. There should be no overfilling of vehicles and equipment.
- Drip trays may be used for the placing of paint brushes and rollers while applying curing compound.

Correct maintenance?

Drip trays should be maintained empty. Drip trays are to be checked daily, cleaned and emptied into the hazardous waste skip. Drip trays that are not being used should be stored under cover to prevent them filling with rain water.

DATE:	TIME:	LOCATION:
TOPIC:	Use and maintenance of drip trays	
ISSUE:	Spillage	

USE, HANDLING AND STORAGE OF CHEMICALS

TOOLBOX TALK 4: Use. Handling and storage of chemicals

ISSUE: Do's and Don'ts of the Construction Site.

What is a Hazardous Chemical?

These are substances that may be dangerous to humans and or the environment if not handled, stored and disposed of correctly. The definition of a hazardous chemical is based on the amount, concentration or inherent properties of the waste.

e.g. Consumption of Alcohol,

Amount – the effect of 1 glass versus 5 litres. It is the same with a chemical. One drop may not be harmful but continuous dripping over a period of a week could be very harmful

Concentration – Beer as opposed to wine, there is alcohol in both but there is more alcohol in the wine than in the beer. It is the same with some chemicals

Inherent properties – Methylated spirits versus Beer, one bottle of methylated spirits could kill you but one beer won't because of the type of alcohol in the beer versus that in methylated spirits. It is the same with some chemicals

What is the risk?

There is a risk of spillage of chemicals under the following circumstance:

- During decanting of chemicals such as paint and curing compound etc., some of the chemicals may be spilt on the ground; and/or
- While applying paint or grease you need something to put the tin, paint brush or roller into.
- Temporary storage of chemicals at point of use

What is the correct use, handling and storage of hazardous chemicals?

- Hazardous chemicals should be stored in a roofed, bunded area that is kept locked. Entry of rain water into the bunded area must be prevented.
- All chemicals or chemical contaminated items should be stored within the bunded area. NOT on the wall of the bunded area or outside the bunded area on a concrete slab.
- Empty chemical containers and drums should be stored in the bunded area until removed or smaller containers thrown in the hazardous waste skip e.g. paint tins, paint brushes or rollers.
- Decanting of chemicals should be done within a bunded area as far as possible. A funnel should be used when discharging liquids into a container with a small opening. Spillage of chemicals should always be avoided.
- All chemical containers should be labelled. No food related containers are to be used for the storage of chemicals e.g. cool drink bottles.
- Temporary storage of chemicals at point of use. Chemicals should always be returned to chemical store at the end of the shift.
- Drip trays may be used for the placing of paint brushes and rollers while applying curing compound or shutter oil.
- All these chemicals must have an MSDS (material safety data sheet). This information is required to ensure that all chemicals are stored, handled and disposed of in the best possible way to ensure the safety of staff and the environment.

Correct maintenance of bunded area

Any cracks in the walls or floors and holes in the roof are to be repaired as soon as possible. Bunded area is to be kept free of spillages. Any spillages are to be cleaned up and disposed of as hazardous waste.

DATE:	TIME:	LOCATION:
TOPIC:	Use and storage of hazardous chemicals	
ISSUE:	Spillage	

WASTE SEGREGATION AND SEPARATION

TOOLBOX TALK 5: Waste segregation and separation.

ISSUE: Do's and Don'ts of the Construction Site.

What is waste separation?

This is the separation of hazardous and general waste

Some examples of hazardous wastes generated on site:

Used oils (hydrocarbons), contaminated spill absorbent or sand, paints, batteries (acid), fluorescent tubes (mercury), concrete.

Some examples of general waste generated on site:

Cool drink bottles, chip packets, plastic, leftover food, paper etc.

Correct handling, storage and disposal

- General waste must be disposed of designated marked bins or marked skips provided
- Hazardous waste to be thrown in designated marked skips provided or 210L marked drums provided in certain areas
- The two must not be mixed!
- If hazardous waste is found in general waste, all must be disposed of as hazardous waste.

Why?

- The two waste types are disposed of at different waste dumps. The general waste dump is built only to deal with general waste. Hazardous waste accidentally disposed of here, could pollute the water and harm the people in the area.
- Disposal of general waste at a hazardous waste site results in an unnecessary cost to the company, as it is a lot more expensive to dispose of hazardous waste than general waste.

What is an incident?

- Mixed waste in any of the skips or bins.

DATE:	TIME:	LOCATION:
TOPIC:	Waste segregation and separation	
ISSUE:	Waste management	

ENVIRONMENTAL INCIDENTS

TOOLBOX TALK 6: Environmental Incidents

ISSUE: Do's and Don'ts of the Construction Site.

What constitutes an environmental incident?

Any incident which could potentially negatively impact the environment such as a watercourse, protected plant, historic graves, or an animal irrespective of how minor or severe e.g. 5l oil spill on soil, animal caught in snare, honey sucker overturning and sewage flowing into river etc. are all environmental incidents.

What to do in case you come across an environmental incident:

Report the incident immediately to the ESO and your direct supervisor. ESO will advise on corrective actions to be taken.

When reporting an environmental incident, be specific, stipulating who, what, where and when.

DATE:	TIME:
TOPIC:	Wasting drinking water
ISSUE:	Scarcity of drinking water
	Expense to supply drinking water

GENERAL PROCEDURES:	SITE INCEPTION	CONSTRUCTION	POST CONSTRUCTION	OPERATION	KEY ISSUES
<p>GENERAL ADMINISTRATION</p>	<p>SITE INCEPTION</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An emergency response plan must be available on site as must a copy of the EMPr and the EA. • A complaints register must be maintained and kept on site. • A record of training must be maintained and kept on site. • Records proving source of materials must be kept on site. • A record of audits conducted on operations, as well as findings must be kept by the Site Engineer, and findings from audits are to be communicated to the Foreman on site. Proof of communication of findings is to be kept on site. • The site must be sufficiently lit, enabling security and policing should work be required at night. • The following details are to be available at each site: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Emergency contact numbers: Name, contact details ▪ Environmental Control Officer: Name, contact details ▪ A list of the sensitive areas identified for that site ▪ Proof of communication of these details to the staff at that particular site. • A hazardous chemical/waste storage area must be provided for, if required. This could be in the form of a leak proof container or suitably sized drip tray. An inventory of goods stored must be maintained and updated weekly. • General waste bins with lids must be provided on site. Accumulated waste must be removed from site regularly and disposed of at a suitably licensed landfill site. • Adequate spill kits and containers for spilled and contaminated material must be provided on site. • Designated areas for stockpiling of raw materials must be identified on site. No stockpiling is to occur on or near slopes or watercourses. All stockpiling areas must be approved by the Site Engineer. • Haulage roads must be identified and demarcated at site set up. Turning areas must be identified and clearly demarcated. Roads may not be located in the designated sensitive areas. • Temporary stormwater protection measures must be established before construction activities commence. <p>All staff is to be trained on their environmental responsibilities before commencing work. All new staff is to be trained before they start work on site. All construction staff will have basic environmental awareness training, which can be conducted at the same time as the required health, & safety training. Training should include (1) the definition of environment (people + air + soil + water +business); (2) reasons for conserving and protecting the environment; (3) how the following activities can impact the environment: - Not using assigned ablutions, hazardous materials, uncleaned spills, mixing of cement or paint on soil or grass surfaces, waste management i.e. use of waste receptacles and waste separation for recycling, vehicle washing polluting soil & ground water; litter; (4) What to do to prevent the above impacting the environment i.e. assign impermeable mixing areas, no vehicle washing on site, use of waste</p>				

Appendix A: National Building Regulations

**NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS AND
BUILDING STANDARDS ACT
NO. 103 OF 1977**



Copyright © 2008 - M. Keuter - Some Rights Reserved

Except where otherwise noted this work is licensed under Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-No Derivative Works 2.5 South Africa License.

Under this license

You are free to:

- **Share :**

to copy, distribute and transmit the work
(for permissions beyond the scope of this public license - contact the author)

Under the following conditions:

- **Attribution:**

You must attribute the work in the manner specified by the author or licensor (but not in any way that suggests that they endorse you or your use of the work).

- **Noncommercial:**

You may not use this work for commercial purposes.

- **No Derivative Works:**

You may not alter, transform, or build upon this work.

- For any reuse or distribution, you must make clear to others the license terms of this work.

The best way to do this is with a link to this [web page](#).

- Any of the above conditions can be waived if you get permission from the copyright holder.

- Nothing in this license impairs or restricts the author's moral rights.

To view a copy of this license,

visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/2.5/za/> or

send a letter to

Creative Commons, 171 Second Street, Suite 300, San Francisco, California, 94105, USA.

Creative Commons South Africa may be contacted at <http://za.creativecommons.org>

Acknowledgment and Disclaimer

The National Building Regulations and Standards Act 103 of 1977 (as amended) is reproduced under Government Printer's Copyright Authority 10377 dated 19 May 1998.

The author offers all information and material VOETSTOOTS and makes no other representations or warranties of any kind concerning the information or material, express, implied, statutory or otherwise, including, without limitation, warranties of accuracy, content, completeness, reliability, or the presence or absence of errors, whether or not discoverable and if the information or material includes software, warranties of fitness for a particular purpose. Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so such exclusion may not apply to you.

In no event will the author be liable to you on any legal theory (including contract, delict including negligence or gross negligence, or statutory claims), for any special, incidental, consequential, punitive or exemplary damages / losses arising out of this license or the use of the information or material, even if the author has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

Should any omissions or inaccuracies be identified you are requested to notify the author thereof.

Po Box 160, Gillitts, 3603

email: info@arcdirectory.co.za

NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS AND BUILDING STANDARDS ACT NO. 103 OF 1977

[ASSENTED TO 22 JUNE 1977]

[DATE OF COMMENCEMENT: 1 SEPTEMBER 1985]

(English text signed by the State President)

as amended by

Standards Act 30 of 1982,
National Building Regulations and Building Standards Amendment Act 36 of 1984,
National Building Regulations and Building Standards Amendment Act 62 of 1989,
National Building Regulations and Building Standards Amendment Act 49 of 1995, and
Mine Health and Safety Act 29 of 1996

Regulations under this Act,
NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS

BUILDING STANDARDS ACT

To provide for the promotion of uniformity in the law relating to the erection of buildings in the areas of jurisdiction of local authorities; for the prescribing of building standards; and for matters connected therewith.

1. Definitions -

In this Act, unless the context otherwise indicates-

'application'

means an application referred to in [section 4\(2\)](#);

'architect'

means an architect as defined in section 1 of the Architects' Act, 1970 (Act 35 of 1970);

'architectural area'

means the sum of the areas of the several floors of a building, including basements, mezzanine and intermediate floor tiers and penthouses of headroom height, measured from the exterior faces of the exterior walls;

[Definition of 'architectural area' inserted by s. 1 (a) of Act 62 of 1989.]

'building'

includes-

(a) any other structure, whether of a temporary or permanent nature and irrespective of the materials used in the erection thereof, erected or used for or in connection with-

(i) the accommodation or convenience of human beings or animals;

(ii) the manufacture, processing, storage, display or sale of any goods;

[Sub-para (ii) substituted by s. 1 (b) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(iii) the rendering of any service;

(iv) the destruction or treatment of refuse or other waste materials;

(v) the cultivation or growing of any plant or crop;

- (b) any wall, swimming bath, swimming pool, reservoir or bridge or any other structure connected therewith;
- (c) any fuel pump or any tank used in connection therewith;
- (d) any part of a building, including a building as defined in paragraph (a), (b) or (c);
- (e) any facilities or system, or part or portion thereof, within or outside but incidental to a building, for the provision of a water supply, drainage, sewerage, stormwater disposal, electricity supply or other similar service in respect of the building;

[Para. (e) added by s. 1 (c) of Act 62 of 1989.]

'building control officer'

means any person appointed or deemed to be appointed as building control officer by a local authority in terms of [section 5](#);

'bureau'

means the bureau as defined in section 1 of the Standards Act;

'code of practice'

means code of practice as defined in section 1 of the Standards Act;

compulsory standard specification'

[Definition of 'compulsory standard specification' deleted by s. 1 (a) of Act 36 of 1984.]

'council'

means the council as defined in section 1 of the Standards Act;

'directive'

means a directive made in terms of [section 17\(4\)](#);

'erection',

in relation to a building, includes the alteration, conversion, extension, rebuilding, re-erection, subdivision of or addition to, or repair of any part of the structural system of, any building; and

'erect'

shall have a corresponding meaning;

[Definition of 'erection' substituted by s. 1 (e) of Act 62 of 1989.]

'land surveyor'

means a land surveyor as defined in section 49 of the Land Survey Act, 1927 (Act 9 of 1927);

'local authority'

means-

- (a) any institution, council or body contemplated in section 84(1)(f) of the Provincial Government Act, 1961 (Act 32 of 1961);
- (b)
- (c) any statutory body designated by the Minister, after consultation with the Administrator of the province in question, by notice in the Gazette as a local authority for the purposes of this Act or any provision thereof;

[Definition of 'local authority' substituted by s. 1 (f) of Act 62 of 1989.]

'Minister'

means the Minister of Economic Affairs and Technology;

[Definition of 'Minister' substituted by s. 1 (b) of Act 36 of 1984 and by s. 1 (d) of Act 62 of 1989.]

'national building regulations'

means the national building regulations made in terms of [section 17](#);

'owner',

in relation to a building or land, means the person in whose name the land on which such building was or is erected or such land, as the case may be, is registered in the deeds office in question:

Provided that if-

- (a) such person, in the case of a natural person, is deceased or was declared by any court to be incapable of managing his own affairs or a prodigal or is a patient as defined in section 1 of the Mental Health Act, 1973 (Act 18 of 1973), or if his estate has been sequestrated, the executor or curator concerned, as the case may be;
- (b) such person, in the case of a juristic person, has been liquidated or placed under judicial management, the liquidator or judicial manager concerned, as the case may be;
- (c) such person is absent from the Republic or if his whereabouts are unknown, any person who, as agent or otherwise, undertakes the management, maintenance or collection of rentals or other moneys in respect of such building or land or who is responsible therefor;
[Para. (c) substituted by s. 1 (c) of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (d) the local authority in question is unable to determine the identity of such person, any person who is entitled to the benefit of the use of such building or land or who enjoys such benefit,

shall be deemed to be the owner of such building or land;

'professional engineer'

[Definition of 'professional engineer' deleted by s. 1 (a) of Act 49 of 1995.]

'registered person'

means a person defined in section 1 of the Engineering Profession of South Africa Act, 1990 (Act 114 of 1990), as a certificated engineer, engineering technician, professional engineer or professional technologist (engineering);

[Definition of 'registered person' inserted by s. 1 (b) of Act 49 of 1995.]

'regulations'

means the regulations made in terms of [section 20](#);

'review board'

means the review board referred to in [section 9](#);

'specification'

means a specification as defined in section 1 of the Standards Act;

[Definition of 'specification' inserted by s. 1 (d) of Act 36 of 1984.]

'standard method'

means a standard method as defined in section 1 of the Standards Act;

'Standards Act'

means the Standards Act, 1982 (Act 30 of 1982);

[Definition of 'Standards Act' substituted by s. 1 (e) of Act 36 of 1984.]

'statutory body'

means any board, fund, institution, company, corporation or other organization established or constituted by or under any law;

'structural system',

in relation to a building, means the system of constructional elements and components of any building which is provided to resist the loads acting upon it and to transfer such loads to the ground upon which the foundation of the building rests;

[Definition of 'structural system' inserted by s. 1 (g) of Act 62 of 1989.]

'Territory'

[Definition of 'Territory' deleted by s. 1 (f) of Act 36 of 1984.]

'this Act'

includes the national building regulations made and directives issued in terms of it.

2 Application of Act

- (1) Subject to the provisions of any notice published in terms of [subsection \(2\)](#), the provisions of this Act shall apply in the area of jurisdiction of any local authority.
- (2)
 - (a) The Minister may, on such conditions as he may think fit and after consultation with the council and the Administrator of the province in question, of his own accord or at the request of a local authority or any other person, by notice in the Gazette exempt the area of jurisdiction, or any part thereof, of any local authority from the application of this Act, or of any provision or provisions thereof which are mentioned in the notice.
 [Para. (a) substituted by s. 2 (a) of Act 36 of 1984 and by s. 2 (a) of Act 62 of 1989.]
 - (b) Different notices may in terms of paragraph (a) be published in respect of different local authorities or different categories of local authorities.
- (3) Subject to the provisions of [subsection \(4\)](#) this Act shall not bind the State.
- (4) In respect of any building to be erected by or on behalf of the State, such plans, specifications and certificate as may be prescribed by national building regulation, shall before the commencement of such erection be lodged with the local authority in question for its information and comment: Provided that the Minister may-
 - (a) if he, with the concurrence of the Minister of Defence, the Minister of Law and Order and the Minister of Justice, is of the opinion that the erection or proposed erection of any building or class of buildings by or on behalf of the State is in the interest of or connected with the security of the Republic, exempt the State in relation to any such building or class of buildings;
 [Para. (a) substituted by s. 2 (b) of Act 36 of 1984 and by s. 2 (b) of Act 62 of 1989.]
 - (b) by virtue of economic considerations, necessity or expediency, exempt the State, either generally or in any particular case, after notice in writing to the local authority in question, from the provisions of this subsection.

[NB: In terms of s. 36 (2) of the Legal Succession to the South African Transport Services Act 9 of 1989, the references to 'the State' in subsections (3) and (4) above are to be construed as having included the Company (Transnet Limited) and the Corporation (the South African Rail Commuter Corporation Limited) during the period 1 April 1990 to 1 April 1992.]

- (5) Subject to the provisions of [subsections \(7\)](#) and [\(8\)](#), the Minister may, on such conditions as he may think fit and with the concurrence of the Minister of Defence, exempt the owner of-
 - (a) any place as defined in section 1 of the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980)-
 - (i) that has been declared a National Key Point in terms of section 2 of the said Act; or
 - (ii) in respect of which the Minister of Defence has certified that it will be declared a National Key Point under the said section 2 of that Act; or
 - (b) any prohibited place as defined in section 1(1) of the Protection of Information Act, 1982 (Act 84 of 1982), after notice in writing to the local authority in question from the provisions of this Act.
 [Sub-s. (5) added by s. 2 (c) of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (6) Subject to the provisions of [subsection \(7\)](#), the owner of any building which is or is to be erected on mining property and which is or is to be used exclusively for the operation of a mine or any works or machinery, as defined in the Mines and Works Act, 1956 (Act 27 of 1956), and which is in terms of section 2 of that Act subject to the supervision of the Chief Inspector as contemplated in the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996, shall be exempted from the provisions of this Act.
 [Sub-s. (6) added by s. 2 (c) of Act 62 of 1989 and amended by s. 99 of Act 29 of 1996.]

- (7) An owner shall in respect of the erection or proposed erection of a building with regard to which an exemption contemplated in [subsection \(4\)](#), [\(5\)](#) or [\(6\)](#) applies, and in connection with-
- (a) connections to electricity supply, water supply, sewer and stormwater drainage systems;
 - (b) provision on the relevant site for parking of more than 100 vehicles;
 - (c) service by the local authority's fire brigade in place of or in addition to any fire protection service provided by the owner, supply the local authority concerned with sufficient details to enable such local authority to-
 - (i) provide any connection, road traffic control and fire brigade service which may be required; or
 - (ii) give notice in writing to such owner that it cannot so provide any such service.
[Sub-s. (7) added by s. 2 (c) of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (8) The owner of a National Key Point in respect of which an exemption contemplated in [subsection \(5\)](#) applies, shall, if the provisions of the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980), cease to apply in respect of him, forthwith submit to the local authority concerned such plans, specifications and certificates as may be prescribed by the national building regulations, and shall comply with such requirements of this Act as should in the opinion of that local authority be complied with to ensure the safety and health of the occupants of any relevant building.
[Sub-s. (8) added by s. 2 (c) of Act 62 of 1989.]

3 Duties of Draftsmen of Plans, Specifications, Documents and Diagrams

Any person who prepared any plan, specification, document or diagram submitted in terms of this Act shall affix his name and address and, in the case of an architect, land surveyor or registered person, also his profession and registration number, if any, to such plan, specification, document or diagram.

[S. 3 substituted by s. 2 of Act 49 of 1995.]

4 Approval by Local Authorities of Applications in Respect of Erection of Buildings

- (1) No person shall without the prior approval in writing of the local authority in question, erect any building in respect of which plans and specifications are to be drawn and submitted in terms of this Act.
- (2) Any application for approval referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#) shall be in writing on a form made available for that purpose by the local authority in question.
- (3) Any application referred to in [subsection \(2\)](#) shall-
 - (a) contain the name and address of the applicant and, if the applicant is not the owner of the land on which the building in question is to be erected, of the owner of such land;
 - (b) be accompanied by such plans, specifications, documents and information as may be required by or under this Act, and by such particulars as may be required by the local authority in question for the carrying out of the objects and purposes of this Act.
- (4) Any person erecting any building in contravention of the provisions of [subsection \(1\)](#) shall be guilty of an offence and liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding R100 for each day on which he was engaged in so erecting such building.

5 Appointment of Building Control Officer by Local Authority

- (1) Subject to the provisions of [subsection \(3\)](#) a local authority shall appoint a person as building control officer in order to exercise and perform the powers, duties or activities granted or assigned to a building control officer by or under this Act.
- (2) Any person not having the qualifications prescribed by national building regulation in respect of a building control officer shall not without the approval in writing of the Minister be appointed as building control officer in terms of [subsection \(1\)](#).
- (3) [Subsection \(1\)](#) shall also be construed so as to enable-
 - (a) two or more than two local authorities to appoint, on such conditions as they may agree to, one person as building control officer for all such local authorities;
 - (b) a local authority from time to time to appoint a person temporarily as building control officer;
 - (c) a local authority, with the approval in writing of any other local authority and on such conditions as they may agree to, to make use of the services of any person appointed as building control officer by such other local authority.
- (4) Any person who-
 - (a) immediately before the date of commencement of this Act was employed by a local authority in order to perform as controlling officer any activities substantially the same as the activities referred to in [section 6\(1\)](#); and
 - (b) on such date is still so employed, shall be deemed to have been appointed in terms of this section as building control officer by such local authority.

6 Functions of Building Control Officers

(1) A building control officer shall-

- (a) make recommendations to the local authority in question, regarding any plans, specifications, documents and information submitted to such local authority in accordance with [section 4\(3\)](#);
- (b) ensure that any instruction given in terms of this Act by the local authority in question be carried out;
- (c) inspect the erection of a building, and any activities or matters connected therewith, in respect of which approval referred to in [section 4\(1\)](#) was granted;
- (d) report to the local authority in question, regarding non-compliance with any condition on which approval referred to in [section 4\(1\)](#) was granted.

(2) When a fire protection plan is required in terms of this Act by the local authority, the building control officer concerned shall incorporate in his recommendations referred to in [subsection \(1\)\(a\)](#) a report of the person designated as the chief fire officer by such local authority, or of any other person to whom such duty has been assigned by such chief fire officer, and if such building control officer has also been designated as the chief fire officer concerned, he himself shall so report in such recommendations.

[Sub-s. (2) substituted by s. 3 (a) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(3)

[Sub-s. (3) deleted by s. 3 (b) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(4) This section shall not be construed so as to prohibit a local authority from granting or entrusting to a building control officer any powers, duties or activities not connected with this Act or to prohibit any building control officer, with the approval of a local authority, from delegating to an officer under his control any power, duty or function granted or entrusted to building control officers in terms of this Act.

7 Approval by Local Authorities in Respect of Erection of Buildings

(1) If a local authority, having considered a recommendation referred to in [section 6\(1\)\(a\)](#)-

(a) is satisfied that the application in question complies with the requirements of this Act and any other applicable law, it shall grant its approval in respect thereof;

[Para. (a) substituted by s. 4 (a) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(b)

(i) is not so satisfied; or

(ii) is satisfied that the building to which the application in question relates-

(aa) is to be erected in such manner or will be of such nature or appearance that-

(aaa) the area in which it is to be erected will probably or in fact be disfigured thereby;

(bbb) it will probably or in fact be unsightly or objectionable;

(ccc) it will probably or in fact derogate from the value of adjoining or neighbouring properties;

(bb) will probably or in fact be dangerous to life or property,

such local authority shall refuse to grant its approval in respect thereof and give written reasons for such refusal:

[Para. (b) amended by s. 4 (b) of Act 62 of 1989.]

Provided that the local authority shall grant or refuse, as the case may be, its approval in respect of any application where the architectural area of the building to which the application relates is less than 500 square metres, within a period of 30 days after receipt of the application and, where the architectural area of such building is 500 square metres or larger, within a period of 60 days after receipt of the application.

[Sub-s. (1) amended by s. 4 (c) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(2)

[Sub-s. (2) deleted by s. 4 (d) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(3) When a local authority has granted its approval in accordance with [subsection \(1\)\(a\)](#) in respect of any application, such approval shall be endorsed on at least one of the copies of the plans, specifications and other documents in question returned to the applicant.

(4) Any approval granted by a local authority in accordance with [subsection \(1\)\(a\)](#) in respect of any application shall lapse after the expiry of a period of 12 months as from the date on which it was granted unless the erection of the building in question is commenced or proceeded with within the said period or unless such local authority extended the said period at the request in writing of the applicant concerned.

(5) Any application in respect of which a local authority refused in accordance with [subsection \(1\)\(b\)](#) to grant its approval, may, notwithstanding the provisions of [section 22](#), at no additional cost and subject to the provisions of subsection (1) be submitted anew to the local authority within a period not exceeding one year from the date of such refusal-

(a)

(i) if the plans, specifications and other documents have been amended in respect of

any aspect thereof which gave cause for the refusal; and

- (ii) if the plans, specifications and other documents in their amended form do not substantially differ from the plans, specifications or other documents which were originally submitted; or

(b) where an application is submitted under [section 18](#).

[Sub-s. (5) substituted by s. 4 (e) of Act 62 of 1989.]

- (6) The provisions of this section shall not be construed so as to prohibit a local authority, before granting or refusing its approval in accordance with [subsection \(1\)](#) in respect of an application, from granting at the written request of the applicant and on such conditions as the local authority may think fit, provisional authorization to an applicant to commence or proceed with the erection of a building to which such application relates.

[Sub-s. (6) substituted by s. 4 (f) of Act 62 of 1989.]

(7)

- (a) An application which is substantially the same as an application referred to in this Act and which before the date of commencement of this Act has been lodged with a local authority for its consideration and in respect of which such local authority on that date has not yet granted or refused its approval, shall be considered by such local authority as if this Act had not been passed.
- (b) Approval granted by a local authority before the date of commencement of this Act in respect of an application substantially the same as an application referred to in this Act, shall be deemed to have been granted in terms of this section if the erection of the building in question has not been commenced with before the said date.

8 Power of Court in Respect of Approval by Local Authority

- (1) If a local authority fails to grant or refuse timeously its approval in accordance with [section 7](#) in respect of an application, a court may on the application of the applicant concerned make an order directing such local authority to perform its duties and exercise its powers in accordance with that section within the period stated in such order, or make such other order as it may deem just.
- (2) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in any law relating to magistrates' courts, a magistrate shall have the jurisdiction to make any order referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#).

9 Appeal Against Decision of Local Authority

(1) Any person who-

- (a) feels aggrieved by the refusal of a local authority to grant approval referred to in [section 7](#) in respect of the erection of a building;
- (b) feels aggrieved by any notice of prohibition referred to in [section 10](#); or
- (c) disputes the interpretation or application by a local authority of any national building regulation or any other building regulation or by-law, may, within the period, in the manner and upon payment of the fees prescribed by regulation, appeal to a review board.
[Sub-s. (1) substituted by s. 5 of Act 62 of 1989.]

(2) The review board referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#) shall consist of-

- (a) a chairman designated by the Minister; and
- (b) two persons appointed for the purpose of any particular appeal by the said chairman from persons whose names are on a list compiled in the manner prescribed by regulation.

10 Erection of Buildings in Certain Circumstances Subject to Prohibition or Conditions

(1) If any building or earthwork-

- (a) in the opinion of the local authority in question is being or is to be erected in such manner that it-
 - (i) will not be in the interest of good health or hygiene;
 - (ii) will be unsightly or objectionable;
 - (iii) will probably or in fact be a nuisance to the occupiers of adjoining or neighbouring properties;
 - (iv) will probably or in fact derogate from the value of adjoining or neighbouring properties;
- (b) is being or is to be erected on a site which is subject to flooding or on a site which or any portion of which in the opinion of the local authority in question does not drain properly or is filled up or covered with refuse or material impregnated with matter liable to decomposition,

such local authority may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, prohibit the person erecting such building or earthwork or causing such building or earthwork to be erected from commencing or proceeding with the erection thereof or from so commencing or proceeding except on such conditions as such local authority may determine from time to time.

(2) Any person who fails to comply with any provision of a notice or condition referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#) shall be guilty of an offence and liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding R100 for each day on which he so failed.

11 Erection of Buildings Subject to Time Limit

- (1) If for a period exceeding 3 months the erection of a building is not proceeded with, the local authority in question may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, order the owner of such building to resume and to complete the erection of such building within the periods specified in such notice.
- (2) If the owner of a building on or to whom a notice referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#) was served or delivered, fails to resume or complete the erection of such building within the periods specified in such notice, the local authority in question may extend such periods from time to time if such owner satisfies it that such failure was due to circumstances beyond his control.
- (3) If the owner of a building on or to whom a notice referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#) was served or delivered, fails to resume or to complete the erection of such building within the periods specified in such notice or, when applicable, within such periods as extended in accordance with [subsection \(2\)](#), and the local authority in question is of the opinion that such building is unsightly or dangerous to life or property or derogates from the value of adjoining or neighbouring properties, such local authority may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, order such owner to demolish such building, to remove the material of which such building consisted and any other material or rubbish from the site in question, and to otherwise clean up such site within the period specified in the last mentioned notice.
- (4) If the owner of a building fails to comply with a notice served on or delivered to him in accordance with [subsection \(3\)](#) in respect of such building, the local authority in question may demolish such building, remove the material of which such building consisted and any other material or rubbish from the site in question and otherwise clean up such site, and may recover the costs thereof from such owner: Provided that such local authority may sell such material and may utilize the proceeds of such sale to defray the costs of such demolition, removal or clean-up and shall pay the balance, if any, of such proceeds to such owner.
- (5) Any approval granted by a local authority in accordance with [section 7\(1\)\(a\)](#) in respect of any application shall lapse as soon as a notice in terms of [subsection \(3\)](#) is served on or delivered to the owner of the building in question in respect of such building.

12 Demolition or Alteration of Certain Buildings

(1) If the local authority in question is of the opinion that-

- (a) any building is dilapidated or in a state of disrepair or shows signs thereof;
- (b) any building or the land on which a building was or is being or is to be erected or any earthwork is dangerous or is showing signs of becoming dangerous to life or property,

it may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, order the owner of such building, land or earthwork, within the period specified in such notice to demolish such building or to alter or secure it in such manner that it will no longer be dilapidated or in a state of disrepair or show signs thereof or be dangerous or show signs of becoming dangerous to life or property or to alter or secure such land or earthwork in such manner that it will no longer be dangerous or show signs of becoming dangerous to life or property: Provided that if such local authority is of the opinion that the condition of any building, land or earthwork is such that steps should forthwith be taken to protect life or property, it may take such steps without serving or delivering such notice on or to the owner of such building, land or earthwork and may recover the costs of such steps from such owner.

(2) If the condition of any building or the land on which a building was or is being or is to be erected or any earthwork is such that it is dangerous to life or property, the owner of such building, land or earthwork shall forthwith notify the local authority in question thereof.

(3)

(a) If the condition of any building or the land on which a building was or is being or is to be erected or any earthwork is such that it is dangerous or is showing signs of becoming dangerous to life or property, the local authority, irrespective of whether it was notified in terms of [subsection \(2\)](#), may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, order the owner of such building, land or earthwork to instruct at the cost of such owner an architect or a registered person to investigate such condition and to report to such local authority on the nature and extent of the steps to be taken, in the opinion of such architect or registered person, in order to render such building, land or earthwork safe.

[Para. (a) substituted by s. 3 (a) of Act 49 of 1995.]

(b) The local authority in question may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, order that any activities be stopped or prohibit the performance of any activities which may increase the danger or hinder or obstruct the architect or registered person referred to in paragraph (a) from properly carrying out the investigation referred to in that paragraph.

[Para. (b) substituted by s. 3 (a) of Act 49 of 1995.]

(c) If it is brought to the attention of a local authority or appears that an architect or registered person instructed in terms of paragraph (a) to perform certain duties is for any reason not competent to carry out the duties in question, the local authority may require such architect or registered person to submit evidence of his or her competence to carry out such duties.

[Para. (c) added by s. 3 (b) of Act 49 of 1995.]

(d) If the architect or registered person contemplated in paragraph (c) is unable to satisfy the local authority of his or her competence to carry out the duties in question, the local authority may order the owner of the building, land or earthwork in question to instruct another architect or registered person to carry out the duties.

[Para. (d) added by s. 3 (b) of Act 49 of 1995.]

(4) If the local authority in question deems it necessary for the safety of any person, it may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered-

- (a) order the owner of any building to remove, within the period specified in such notice, all persons occupying or working or being for any other purpose in such building therefrom,

and to take care that any person not authorized by such local authority does not enter such building;

- (b) order any person occupying or working or being for any other purpose in any building, to vacate such building immediately or within a period specified in such notice.
- (5) No person shall occupy or use or permit the occupation or use of any building in respect of which a notice was served or delivered in terms of this section or steps were taken by the local authority in question in terms of [subsection \(1\)](#), unless such local authority has granted permission in writing that such building may again be occupied or used.
- (6) Any person who contravenes or fails to comply with any provision of this section or any notice issued thereunder, shall be guilty of an offence and, in the case of a contravention of the provisions of [subsection \(5\)](#), liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding R100 for each day on which he so contravened.

13 Exemption of Buildings from National Building Regulations and Authorization for Erection Thereof

- (1) Any building control officer may in respect of the erection of a building defined in the national building regulations as a minor building work, in writing-
- (a) exempt the owner of such building from the obligation to submit a plan in terms of this Act to the local authority in question for approval;
 - (b) grant authorization for the erection of such building in accordance with the conditions and directions specified in such authorization.
- (2) Any authorization granted in terms of [subsection \(1\)\(b\)](#) shall lapse if after the expiry of a period of 6 months the erection of the building has not commenced, but the building control officer may from time to time extend such period at the written request of the owner of such building or any person having an interest therein if such building control officer is satisfied that there are sound reasons therefor.
- [Sub-s. (2) substituted by s. 6 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (3) If any building control officer refused to extend in terms of [subsection \(2\)](#) any period of 6 months referred to in that subsection, any person who feels aggrieved may in writing request the local authority in question to consider such refusal and thereupon such local authority may confirm such refusal or extend such period on such conditions as it may think fit.

14 Certificates of Occupancy in Respect of Buildings

- (1) A local authority shall within 14 days after the owner of a building of which the erection has been completed, or any person having an interest therein, has requested it in writing to issue a certificate of occupancy in respect of such building-
- (a) issue such certificate of occupancy if it is of the opinion that such building has been erected in accordance with the provisions of this Act and the conditions on which approval was granted in terms of [section 7](#), and if certificates issued in terms of the provisions of [subsection \(2\)](#) and, where applicable, [subsection \(2A\)](#), in respect of such building have been submitted to it;

[Para. (a) substituted by s. 7 (a) of Act 62 of 1989.]

- (b) in writing notify such owner or person that it refuses to issue such certificate of occupancy if it is not so satisfied or if a certificate has not been so issued and submitted to it.
- (1A) The local authority may, at the request of the owner of the building or any other person having an interest therein, grant permission in writing to use the building before the issue of the certificate of occupancy referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#), for such period and on such conditions as may be specified in such permission, which period and conditions may be extended or altered, as the case may be, by such local authority.

[Sub-s. (1A) inserted by s. 7 (b) of Act 62 of 1989.]

- (2) Any person licensed or authorized by a local authority to carry out the installation, alteration or repair of any electrical wiring connected or of which connection is desired with the electrical supply or distribution works of such local authority or any statutory body, shall, at the request of the owner of a building of which the erection has been completed or of any person having an interest therein or of the local authority, issue a certificate if he is satisfied that the electrical wiring and other electrical installations in such building are in accordance with the provisions of all applicable laws;

[Sub-s. (2) substituted by s. 4 (a) of Act 49 of 1995.]

- (2A) Upon completion of the erection or installation of-

- (a) the structural system; or
- (b) the fire protection system; or
- (c) the fire installation system,

of any building the person appointed to design such system and to inspect the erection or installation, shall submit a certificate to the local authority indicating that such system has been designed and erected or installed in accordance with the application in respect of which approval was granted in terms of [section 7](#).

[Sub-s. (2A) inserted by s. 7 (c) of Act 62 of 1989 and substituted by s. 4 (b) of Act 49 of 1995.]

- (3) Any person who for the purposes of [subsection \(1\)](#)-
- (a) submits a certificate contemplated in [subsection \(2\)](#) or [\(2A\)](#) which is substantially false or incorrect, knowing the same to be false or incorrect; or
- (b) in a fraudulent manner issues or obtains a certificate contemplated in [subsection \(2\)](#) or [\(2A\)](#),

shall be guilty of an offence.

[Sub-s. (3) substituted by s. 4 (c) of Act 49 of 1995.]

- (4) (a) The owner of any building or, any person having an interest therein, erected or being erected with the approval of a local authority, who occupies or uses such building or

permits the occupation or use of such building-

- (i) unless a certificate of occupancy has been issued in terms of [subsection \(1\)\(a\)](#) in respect of such building;
- (ii) except in so far as it is essential for the erection of such building;
- (iii) during any period not being the period in respect of which such local authority has granted permission in writing for the occupation or use of such building or in contravention of any condition on which such permission has been granted; or,
- (iv) otherwise than in such circumstances and on such conditions as may be prescribed by national building regulation, shall be guilty of an offence.

(b)

[Para. (b) deleted by s. 7 (d) of Act 62 of 1989.]

- (5) The Minister may, on such conditions and for such period as he may think fit, by notice in the Gazette suspend the application of this section in the area of jurisdiction of any local authority.

15 Entry by Building Control Officers and Certain Other Persons of Certain Buildings and Land

- (1) Any building control officer or any other person authorized thereto by the local authority may enter any building or land at any reasonable time with a view to inspection in connection with the consideration of any application submitted in terms of [section 4](#), or to determine whether the owner of the building or land complies with any provision of this Act or any condition imposed by the local authority in terms of this Act.

[Sub-s. (1) substituted by s. 8 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (2) Any person who hinders or obstructs any building control officer or person authorized by the local authority in question in the exercise of his powers in terms of [subsection \(1\)](#), shall be guilty of an offence.
- (3) Any building control officer shall, at the request of any person affected by the execution of any of his powers, duties or activities in terms of this Act, produce his certificate of appointment issued to him in the form prescribed by national building regulation.

16 Report on Adequacy of Certain Measures and on Certain Building Projects

- (1) The Minister, after consultation with the Administrator of a province in which the area of jurisdiction of a local authority is situated, may order such local authority to report to him on-
 - (a) the adequacy of measures in or in connection with buildings in its area of jurisdiction against fire, floods or other disasters and to make recommendations in order to remove any inadequacies in such measures;
 - (b) any particular building project which was or is being undertaken in its area of jurisdiction.
[Sub-s. (1) amended by s. 3 of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (2) If the Minister is satisfied that any local authority is unable to report as contemplated in [subsection \(1\)](#), he may order the bureau so to report.
- (3) For the purposes of this section the local authority concerned or the bureau, as the case may be, shall have such powers, duties and functions as may be prescribed by regulation.

17 National Building Regulations and Directives

- (1) The Minister may after consultation with the council make regulations, to be known as national building regulations-
- (a) regarding the preparation, submission and approval of plans and specifications of buildings, including the approval of amendments or alterations to plans and specifications of buildings during the erection thereof;
 - (b) to provide for inspections and tests in respect of buildings, whether before or during the erection or after the completion of the erection thereof, including the powers of building control officers in that regard, and the steps to be taken in order to prevent any nuisance which may occur before, during or after the completion thereof;
 - (c) regarding the nature and preparation of sites on which buildings are to be erected;
 - (d) regarding the strength and stability of buildings;
 - (e) to provide for the requirements with which buildings shall comply in so far as precautionary measures against fires or other emergencies are concerned, including the resistance of buildings against the outbreak and spreading of fires, the protection of the occupants or users of buildings or other persons against fires, the aids or other installations to be in buildings for the combating or prevention of fires and for the vacating of such buildings in cases of fires or other emergencies;
 - (f) regarding the resistance of buildings against floods, moisture, the transmission of heat, sound or other injurious factors, and infestation by insects, vermin or other pests;
 - (g) regarding the durability and other desirable properties of buildings;
 - (h) regarding the provision of water and of sewerage and drainage services in respect of buildings, including the compulsory connection with the supply, distribution or sewerage disposal works in question of local authorities;
 - (i) regarding the ventilation and the provision for daylight in respect of buildings, including the provision of open spaces in connection therewith;
 - (j) regarding the heating and artificial lighting of buildings;
 - (k) regarding the supply and installing in respect of buildings of gas or electrical equipment, installations or service, including the supply and manner of installing of gas or electrical equipment for purposes of cooking or heating, or preventing, controlling or restricting the emission of smoke or other offensive fumes;
 - (l) to regulate, restrict or prohibit the use to which any building or categories of buildings may be put;
 - (m) to regulate, restrict or prohibit access to buildings, irrespective of whether erection thereof is completed, or the sites on which buildings were or are being erected;
 - (n) regarding the prevention of dangers or obstructions during or in connection with the erection of buildings, including the prevention of danger on adjoining or neighbouring premises, pavements, streets and other public places;
 - (o) to regulate, restrict or prohibit the erection of temporary buildings and the occupation or use thereof or access thereto;
 - (p) regarding the protection of property, including public streets, places or open spaces, of

- local authorities or other persons during or in connection with the erection of buildings;
- (q) to regulate, restrict or prohibit the performance of certain activities or categories of activities in or in connection with the erection of buildings by or under the supervision of other persons than persons having specified qualifications, experience or training;
 - (r) subject to the provisions of the Housing Act, 1966 (Act 4 of 1966), regarding the demolition of buildings and matters connected therewith;
 - (s) regarding the powers, duties and functions of local authorities if buildings were or are being erected or used in contravention of the provisions of this Act or any other law in force immediately before the date of commencement of this Act or of any approval or authority granted in terms of this Act or the said other law or if no such approval or authority was granted for the erection of such buildings;
 - (t) regarding the general safety, health and convenience of the public in so far as they relate to the erection of buildings;
 - (u) regarding the safety, health and convenience of occupiers or users of buildings or of persons otherwise present in buildings or having access thereto, and the compulsory installing or supplying of equipment, installations or services in connection therewith;
 - (v) regarding any other matter which in terms of this Act is required or permitted to be prescribed by national building regulations;
 - (w) regarding, generally, any other matter deemed necessary or expedient by the council with the concurrence of the Minister in order to achieve the objects of this Act.
- (2) Different national building regulations may in terms of [subsection \(1\)](#) be made in respect of different buildings or categories of buildings, uses of buildings, areas or categories of areas, local authorities or categories of local authorities, or portions or categories of portions of the areas of jurisdiction of local authorities.
- (3)
- (a) When a national building regulation is published in the Gazette, the Minister shall publish together with it a notice calling upon all interested persons to lodge any objections which they have against such building regulation in writing with the council within the period specified in such notice.
 - (b) A national building regulation referred to in paragraph (a) shall come into operation on a date fixed by the Minister by notice in the Gazette with regard to the period referred to in the said paragraph: Provided that the Minister, with the concurrence of the council, may in such notice alter such national building regulation in accordance with any objection lodged in respect thereof in terms of paragraph (a) without complying with the provisions of the said paragraph in respect of the national building regulation so altered.
- (4) If the Minister after consultation with the council is satisfied that any of or all the applicable national building regulations are inadequate or do not make any provision in respect of any particular building or buildings and that for sound reasons it shall not be expedient to amend such national building regulations or make any further national building regulations, as the case may be, the Minister may, having in writing notified the local authority in question, by notice in the Gazette or by notice sent by post or delivered-
- (a) exempt the owner of the land on which any such building is being or is to be erected from the provisions of such applicable national building regulations; and
 - (b) allow such owner to erect such building or buildings or to proceed with or complete the erection thereof in accordance with the applicable national building regulations from which he was not so exempted, if any, and the directives specified in such notice: Provided that

no such directive may relate to any matter not specified in [subsection \(1\)](#).

- (5)
- (a) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in any law the Minister may, if he is of the opinion that it is necessary or expedient for the proper compliance with or operation of any of or all the national building regulations or directives that any servitude or restrictive condition or other provisions applicable in respect of any land by or under any law or registered in respect of any land in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), or otherwise applicable in respect of land, be removed or amended, after consultation with the Administrator of the province in which such land is situated and after compliance with the procedure prescribed by regulation, by notice in the Gazette remove or, to such extent as he may indicate, amend such servitude, condition or provision.
[Para. (a) substituted by s. 4 (a) of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (b) On the publication of a notice referred to in paragraph (a) the Registrar of Deeds concerned shall in respect of the removal or amendment of the servitude, condition or provision in question, make suitable entries in the registers in his office, and when the title deed of any land to which such notice relates is for any purpose submitted to such Registrar he shall endorse such removal or amendment on such title deed.
- (6) Any provision occurring in a specification, standard specification, code of practice or standard method may be incorporated in a directive by mere reference, and in regard to such an incorporation the provisions of section 33 of the Standards Act shall mutatis mutandis apply as if it were an incorporation in a law.
[Sub-s. (6) substituted by s. 4 of (b) of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (7) The national building regulations or any directive may provide that, without fully defining any particular materials or methods of erection, in so far as quality and standards are concerned the use or employment of any specified materials or methods of erection or compliance with any specified specification, standard specification, code of practice or standard method shall be deemed to comply with the quality and standard required by such national building regulations or directive.
[Sub-s. (7) substituted by s. 4 (c) of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (8) In the national building regulations provisions may be included which the Minister deems necessary to ensure, notwithstanding the provisions of any other applicable law or the issue of a certificate of occupancy in terms of [section 14](#), the essential maintenance or repair of any building or the efficient operation of any equipment or machinery installed therein.
[Sub-s. (8) added by s. 9 of Act 62 of 1989.]

18 Deviation and Exemption From National Building Regulations

- (1) A local authority may, at the request in writing of the owner of any building or any person having an interest therein, in respect of the erection of such building or the land on which it is being or is to be erected, in writing permit a deviation or grant an exemption from any applicable national building regulation except a national building regulation regarding the strength and stability of buildings.
- (2) The council may, at the request in writing of the owner of any building or any person having an interest therein and after consultation with the local authority in question, in respect of the erection of such building or the land on which it is being or is to be erected, in writing permit a deviation or grant an exemption from any applicable national building regulation relating to the strength and stability of buildings.

19 Prohibition on Use of Certain Methods or Materials

- (1) If the Minister, after consultation with the council and notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in any law, is satisfied that any method or material used or to be used in the erection of any building will not be in the public interest or will be dangerous to life or property, the Minister may, having in writing notified the local authority in question, by notice in the Gazette or by notice sent by post or delivered, prohibit the owner of the land on which such building is being or is to be erected from using such method or material in such erection.
- (2) Any person who contravenes or fails to comply with the provisions of a notice referred to in [subsection \(1\)](#) shall be guilty of an offence and liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding R100 for each day on which he so contravened or failed.

20 Regulations

- (1) The Minister may make regulations-
 - (a) regarding the procedure to be followed at the hearing of an appeal by a review board;
 - (b) regarding the powers, duties and functions of a review board, including the power to summon witnesses for the purposes of hearing an appeal and to administer an oath or to accept an affirmation from any witness;
 - (c) regarding the costs in connection with an appeal to a review board;
 - (d) to prescribe the further matters in respect of which an appeal may be lodged with a review board;
 - (e) in order, with the concurrence of the Minister of Finance, to prescribe the remuneration and travel and subsistence allowances payable to members, except members in the full-time employ of the State or the bureau, of a review board;
 - (f) regarding any other matter which in terms of this Act is required or permitted to be prescribed by regulation.
- (2) Any regulation made under this section may prescribe that any person who contravenes or fails to comply with such regulation shall be guilty of an offence and liable on conviction to a fine not exceeding R200 or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding 2 months.

21 Order in Respect of Erection and Demolition of Buildings

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in any law relating to magistrates' courts, a magistrate shall have jurisdiction, on the application of any local authority or the Minister, to make an order prohibiting any person from commencing or proceeding with the erection of any building or authorizing such local authority to demolish such building if such magistrate is satisfied that such erection is contrary to or does not comply with the provisions of this Act or any approval or authorization granted thereunder.

22 Power of Local Authorities Relating to Rates, Taxes, Fees and Other Moneys

The provisions of this Act shall not derogate from any power conferred by or under any other law upon any local authority to levy, receive or charge any rates, taxes, fees or other moneys in respect of any building or land or to levy, receive or charge moneys in connection with the examination of plans, specifications or information or the performance of any other duties in terms of this Act.

23 Exemption from Liability

No approval, permission, report, certificate or act granted, issued or performed in terms of this Act by or on behalf of any local authority or the council in connection with a building or the design, erection, demolition or alteration thereof, shall have the effect that-

- (a) such local authority or the council be liable to any person for any loss, damage, injury or death resulting from or arising out of or in any way connected with the manner in which such building was designed, erected, demolished or altered or the material used in the erection of such building or the quality of workmanship in the erection, demolition or alteration of such building;
- (b) the owner of such building be exempted from the duty to take care and to ensure that such building be designed, erected, completed, occupied and used or demolished or altered in accordance with the provisions of this Act and any other applicable law;
- (c) any person be exempted from the provisions of any other law applicable in the area of jurisdiction of such local authority.

[S. 23 substituted by s. 10 of Act 62 of 1989.]

24 General Penalty Clause

Any person convicted of an offence under this Act in respect of which a fine or imprisonment is not expressly provided for, shall be liable to a fine not exceeding R4000 or to imprisonment for a period not exceeding 12 months.

[S. 24 substituted by s. 11 of Act 62 of 1989.]

25 Presumption

If in any prosecution for an offence in terms of this Act it is necessary, in order to establish the charge against the accused, to prove that he failed to comply with the requirements of this Act relating to standard or quality of materials, design or workmanship, an allegation in the charge sheet that such accused so failed, shall be sufficient proof thereof unless the contrary is proved.

26 Payment of Certain Moneys to Local Authorities

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in any law all moneys recovered by way of fines or estreated bail in connection with any offence in terms of this Act, except an offence referred to in [section 20\(2\)](#), shall be paid to the local authority concerned.

27 Powers of Minister in Respect of Certain Local Authorities

- (1) If the Minister, after consultation with the council and the Administrator of the province in question, is satisfied that a local authority fails to apply any relevant provision of this Act properly in its area of jurisdiction, the Minister may by notice in writing, served by post or delivered, order such local authority to so apply such provision forthwith.

[Sub-s. (1) substituted by s. 5 (a) of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (2) If a local authority without reasonable cause fails to comply within a reasonable time with the provisions of any notice served on or delivered to it in terms of [subsection \(1\)](#), the Minister, after consultation with the council and the Administrator of the province in question, may by notice in the Gazette deprive such local authority of any power or exempt it from any duty conferred upon or entrusted to it by or in terms of this Act and confer such power or entrust such duty to any person, including such Administrator, mentioned in such notice, and thereupon such person shall for the purposes of such power or duty be deemed to be such local authority.

[Sub-s. (2) substituted by s. 5 (b) of Act 36 of 1984.]
- (3) Any notice published in the Gazette in terms of [subsection \(2\)](#) may be withdrawn in like manner.

28 Delegations of Powers

- (1) The Minister may on such conditions as he may think fit, in writing delegate any power conferred on him by or under this Act, other than a power referred to in [section 2\(2\)](#) or [\(4\)](#), [9\(2\)](#), [17](#), [19](#), [20](#), [27](#) or [29](#), to the director-general of the bureau, but the delegation of any such power shall not prevent the exercise thereof by the Minister himself.

[Sub-s. (1) substituted by s. 12 of Act 62 of 1989.]

- (2) The council may in writing delegate any power conferred upon it-
- (a) by or under this Act, other than a power referred to in [section 17](#) or [27](#), to the director-general of the bureau;
 - (b) in terms of [section 18\(2\)](#), on such conditions as it generally or in any particular case may think fit, to any local authority or category of local authorities,

but the delegation of any such power shall not prevent the exercise thereof by the council itself.

- (3) The director-general of the bureau may in writing delegate any power delegated to him in terms of [subsection \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#) to any person in the employ of the bureau, but the delegation of any such power shall not prevent the exercise thereof by the director-general himself.
- (4) Any local authority may in writing delegate any power conferred upon it by or under this Act, other than a power referred to in [section 5](#), to any committee appointed by it or to any person in its employ, but the delegation of any such power shall not prevent the exercise thereof by such local authority itself.

29 Repeal of Laws

- (1) Subject to the provisions of [section 31](#) the provisions of any law applicable to any local authority are hereby repealed in so far as they confer a power to make building regulations or by-laws regarding any matter provided for in this Act: Provided that such provisions shall be deemed not to have been repealed in respect of-
- (a) any such building regulation or by-law which has not been replaced by or which is not repugnant to any national building regulation;
 - (b) the area of jurisdiction, or any part thereof, of any local authority in so far as it has in terms of [section 2\(2\)](#) been exempted from the application of any national building regulation, irrespective of whether such area of jurisdiction or part was exempted after the commencement of such national building regulation.
- (2) A local authority shall within six months after the coming into operation of the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Amendment Act, 1989, submit any building regulation or by-law referred to in paragraph (a) of [subsection \(1\)](#), and any standard building regulation referred to in the proviso to [section 31](#), which is applied by the local authority by reason thereof that it is considered that the regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation, has not lapsed by virtue of [subsection \(1\)](#) or [section 31](#), as the case may be, in consolidated form in both official texts to the Minister.
- [Sub-s. (2) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (3) The Minister shall consider a regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation, referred to in [subsection \(2\)](#), in consultation with the council and taking into consideration any submissions submitted thereon by the local authority in question, in order to determine whether in his opinion and in the opinion of the council it has been replaced by or is repugnant to any national building regulation, and shall forthwith make known in writing the decision to which he and the council came to the local authority.
- [Sub-s. (3) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (4) With effect from the date of a written notification contemplated in [subsection \(3\)](#) of a decision that a relevant regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation, has been replaced by or is repugnant to any national building regulation, it shall-
- (a) for the purposes of [subsection \(1\)\(a\)](#) be deemed that the law under which the relevant building regulation or by-law was made, has been repealed in respect of a regulation or by-law to which the said decision relates; and
 - (b) for the purposes of [section 31](#) be deemed that section 14bis of the Standards Act, 1962 (Act 33 of 1962), under which the standard building regulation was framed and published, has been repealed in respect of a standard building regulation to which the said decision relates.
- [Sub-s. (4) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (5) A local authority shall, in the case of a notification to it in terms of [subsection \(3\)](#) of a decision that a relevant regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation, has not been replaced by or is not repugnant to any national building regulation, make known the decision within a period of three months from the date of the decision by notice in the Official Gazette concerned, mentioning the full text of the regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation, concerned, in consolidated form and the law under which it was made or framed.
- [Sub-s. (5) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (6) If a local authority fails to comply with a provision-
- (a) of [subsection \(2\)](#) within the period of six months contemplated therein; or

- (b) of [subsection \(5\)](#) within the period of three months contemplated therein, the provisions of paragraph (a) or (b), as the case may be, of [subsection \(4\)](#) shall with effect from the day immediately following on the last day of the period of six or three months mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b), respectively, mutatis mutandis apply in respect of the relevant regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation.
[Sub-s. (6) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (7)
- (a) The Minister may at any time, after written notice to the local authority concerned, and mutatis mutandis in accordance with the provisions of [subsection \(3\)](#), review any decision contemplated in [subsection \(5\)](#).
- (b) The provisions of [subsection \(4\)](#) shall mutatis mutandis apply in respect of a decision on review contemplated in paragraph (a), that a regulation or by-law, or standard building regulation, concerned has been replaced by or is repugnant to a national building regulation.
[Sub-s. (7) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]
- (8)
- (a) A local authority which intends to make any regulation or by-law which relates to the erection of a building, shall prior to the promulgation thereof submit a draft of the regulation or by-law in writing and by registered post to the Minister for approval.
- (b) A regulation or by-law referred to in paragraph (a) which is promulgated without the Minister previously having approved of it shall, notwithstanding the fact that the promulgation is effected in accordance with all other legal provisions relating to the making and promulgation of the regulation or by-law, be void.
[Sub-s. (8) added by s. 13 of Act 62 of 1989.]

30

[S. 30 repealed by s. 40 (1) of Act 30 of 1982.]

31 Repeal of Section 14bis of Act 33 of 1962, as inserted by section 4 of Act 72 of 1964

Section 14bis of the Standards Act is hereby repealed: Provided that that section shall be deemed not to have been repealed in respect of any standard building regulation which was framed and published in terms of that section and which has not been replaced by or is not repugnant to any national building regulation.

32

[S. 32 repealed by s. 40 (1) of Act 30 of 1982.]

33

[S. 33 repealed by s. 6 of Act 36 of 1984.]

34 Short Title and Commencement

This Act shall be called the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977, and shall come into operation on a date fixed by the State President by proclamation in the Gazette.

NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY

No. R. 2378

12 October 1990

REGULATIONS UNDER THE NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS AND BUILDING STANDARDS ACT, 1977
(ACT No. 103 OF 1977).

The Minister of Trade and Industry and Tourism has, after consultation with the council, under [section 17\(1\)](#) of the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977 (Act No. 103 of 1977), made the regulations in the Schedule.

No. R. 432

8 March 1991

THE NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS AND BUILDING STANDARDS ACT, 1977

COMMENCEMENT OF THE NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS

I, Kent Diederich Skelton Durr, Minister of Trade and Industry and Tourism, acting under [section 17\(3\)\(b\)](#) of the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977 (Act No. 103 of 1977), hereby fix 8 March 1991 as the date on which the National Building Regulations published under Government Notice No. R.2378 of 12 October 1990, and altered by me with the concurrence of the council as set out in Schedule hereto, shall come into operation.

KDS DURR

Minister of Trade and Industry and Tourism

DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY

No. R. 574

30 May 2008

NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS AND BUILDING STANDARDS ACT,1977 (ACT 103 OF 1977)

NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS

I, Mandisi Mphahwa, Minister of Trade and Industry, hereby under [section 17\(3\)](#) of the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act (Act No. 103 of 1977), and on the recommendation of the Council of the South African Bureau of Standards, declare the regulations, as set out in the Schedule, to come into operation on the 1 October 2008.

M Mphahwa
Minister of Trade and Industry

SCHEDULE

NATIONAL BUILDING REGULATIONS

CONTENTS

PART AZ COMING IN OPERATION, DEFINITIONS AND STANDARDS

- [AZ1](#) Coming In Operation
- [AZ2](#) Definitions
- [AZ3](#) Standards
- [AZ4](#) Complying with the requirements of the National Building Regulations

PART A ADMINISTRATION

- [A1](#) Application
- [A2](#) Plans And Particulars To Be Furnished
- [A3](#) Preliminary Plans And Enquiries
- [A4](#) Local Authority May Require Additional Documents And Information
- [A5](#) Application Forms And Materials, Scales And Sizes Of Plans
- [A6](#) Site Plans
- [A7](#) Layout Drawing
- [A8](#) Plumbing Installation Drawings And Particulars
- [A9](#) Fire Protection Plan
- [A10](#) Symbols On Fire Protection Plan
- [A11](#) Pointing Out Of Boundary Beacons
- [A12](#) Street Levels
- [A13](#) Building Materials And Tests
- [A14](#) Construction
- [A15](#) Maintenance And Operation
- [A16](#) Qualifications Of A Building Control Officer
- [A17](#) Certificate Of Identity Of A Building Control Officer
- [A18](#) Control Of Plumbers And Plumbing Work
- [A19](#) Appointment Of Persons Responsible For Design, Inspection And Assessment Duties
- [A20](#) Classification And Designation
- [A21](#) Population
- [A22](#) Notice Of Intention To Commence Erection Or Demolition Of A Building And Notices Of Inspection
- [A23](#) Temporary Buildings
- [A24](#) Standardization Of Interpretation
- [A25](#) General Enforcement

PART B STRUCTURAL DESIGN

- [B1](#) Design Requirement

PART C DIMENSIONS

- [C1](#) Rooms And Buildings

PART D PUBLIC SAFETY

- [D1](#) Change In Level
- [D2](#) Pedestrian Entrances To Parking Areas In Buildings
- [D3](#) Ramps
- [D4](#) Swimming Pools And Swimming Baths
- [D5](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

PART E DEMOLITION WORK

- [E1](#) Demolition Of A Building
- [E2](#) Safeguarding Of Basements
- [E3](#) Prohibition Of Dangerous Methods
- [E4](#) General Penalty

PART F SITE OPERATIONS

- [F1](#) Protection Of The Public
- [F2](#) Damage To Local Authorities Property
- [F3](#) Geotechnical Site And Environmental Conditions
- [F4](#) Preparation Of Site
- [F5](#) Soil Poisoning
- [F6](#) Control Of Unreasonable Levels Of Dust And Noise
- [F7](#) Cutting Into, Laying Open And Demolishing Certain Work
- [F8](#) Waste Material On Site
- [F9](#) Cleaning Of Site
- [F10](#) Builder's Shed
- [F11](#) Sanitary Facilities

PART G EXCAVATIONS

- [G1](#) General Stability Requirement
- [G2](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

PART H FOUNDATIONS

- [H1](#) General Requirements

PART J FLOORS

- [J1](#) General Requirements

PART K WALLS

- [K1](#) Structural Strength And Stability
- [K2](#) Water Penetration
- [K3](#) Roof Fixing
- [K4](#) Behavior In Fire
- [K5](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

PART L ROOFS

- [L1](#) General Requirements
- [L2](#) Fire Resistance And Combustibility
- [L3](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

PART M STAIRWAYS

- [M1](#) General Requirements
- [M2](#) Fire Requirement
- [M3](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

PART N GLAZING

- [N1](#) Type And Fixing Of Glazing

PART O LIGHTING AND VENTILATION

- [O1](#) Lighting And Ventilation Requirements
- [O2](#) Special Provisions Of Natural Lighting
- [O3](#) Approval Of Artificial Ventilation Systems
- [O4](#) Design Of Artificial Ventilation Systems
- [O5](#) Artificial Ventilation Plant
- [O6](#) Testing Of Artificial Ventilation Systems
- [O7](#) Fire Requirements

PART P DRAINAGE

- [P1](#) Compulsory Drainage Of Buildings
- [P2](#) Design Of Drainage Installations
- [P3](#) Control Of Objectionable Discharge
- [P4](#) Industrial Effluent
- [P5](#) Disconnections
- [P6](#) Unauthorised Drainage Work
- [P7](#) Inspection And Testing Of Drainage Installations

PART Q NON-WATER-BORNE MEANS OF SANITARY DISPOSAL

- [Q1](#) Means Of Disposal
- [Q2](#) Permission
- [Q3](#) Construction, Siting And Access

PART R STORMWATER DISPOSAL

- [R1](#) Stormwater Disposal Requirement
- [R2](#) Saving

PART S FACILITIES FOR PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES

- [S1](#) Application
- [S2](#) Facilities To Be Provided
- [S3](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

PART T FIRE PROTECTION

- [T1](#) General Requirements
- [T2](#) Offences

PART U REFUSE DISPOSAL

- [U1](#) Provision Of Areas
- [U2](#) Access To Areas
- [U3](#) Refuse Chutes

PART V SPACE HEATING

- [V1](#) Design, Construction And Installation

PART W WATER

- [W1](#) Fire Installations
- [W2](#) Supply Of Water
- [W3](#) Design Of Fire Installations
- [W4](#) Deemed-To-Satisfy Requirements

AZ1 Coming Into Operation

These amended regulations shall in terms of [section 17\(3\)](#) of the Act come into operation on 1 October 2008.

AZ2 Definitions

In these regulations any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the Act, shall bear that meaning and, unless the context indicates otherwise -

“acceptable”, “adequate” or “satisfactory”

means acceptable, adequate, or satisfactory –

- (a) in the opinion of any local authority; or
- (b) in relation to any document issued by the council, in the opinion of the council;

“action”

means an assembly of concentrated or distributed mechanical forces acting on a building or the cause of deformations imposed on the building or constrained in it;

“Agrément certificate”

means a certificate that confirms fitness-for-purpose of a non-standardised product, material or component or the acceptability of the related non-standardised design and the conditions pertaining thereto (or both) issued by the Board of Agrément South Africa;

“air duct”

means any pipe, tube, conduit or enclosed space used or to be used in any building for the transmission of air in an artificial ventilation system;

“applicant”

means any person who makes an application;

“application”

means an application contemplated in [section 4](#) of the Act;

“approval”

means -

- (a) approval by any local authority, including approval contemplated in [section 7\(7\)\(b\)](#) of the Act; or
- (b) approval by the review board on appeal to the review board in terms of the Act;

“approved”

means –

- (a) approved by any local authority; or
- (b) approved by the review board on appeal to the review board in terms of the Act;

“artificial ventilation system”

means a system in which air is caused to circulate through a room by means of a mechanical apparatus which forces air into or extracts air from such room;

“branch discharge pipe”

means a horizontal discharge pipe conveying the discharge from one or more sanitary fixtures to a discharge stack;

“Board of Agrément South Africa”

the body that operates under the delegation of authority of the Minister of Public Works;

"building line"

in relation to a site, means a line prescribed in any town planning scheme or any other law designating the boundaries of the area of the site outside of which the erection above ground of any building is prohibited;

"capacity"

of any storage tank means the volume of such tank between the operating level of the water contained in such tank and the invert of the outlet from the tank;

"carport"

means a building intended to provide shelter for a motor vehicle, caravan or boat and having a roof but having walls on not more than two sides;

"chemical closet"

means a closet with a fixed pan, the excreta from which pass into a tank where they are acted upon by chemicals which sterilize and break them down;

"chimney"

means that part of a building which forms part of a flue, but does not include a flue pipe;

"cleaning eye"

means any access opening to the interior of a discharge pipe or trap provided for the purposes of internal cleaning, and which remains permanently accessible after completion of the drainage installation;

"combustible"

means the opposite of non-combustible;

"common drain"

means that portion of a drain which conveys sewage other than or in addition to that sewage which emanates from the site through which such drain runs;

"communication pipe"

means any pipe in a water supply system to which any water installation is connected;

"competent person"

means a person who is qualified by virtue of his education, training, experience and contextual knowledge to make a determination regarding the performance of a building or part thereof in relation to a functional regulation or to undertake such duties as may be assigned to him in terms of these regulations;

"connecting sewer"

means a pipe vested in the local authority which connects a drain to a sewer;

"conservancy tank"

means a covered tank used for the reception and temporary retention of sewage and which requires emptying at intervals;

"contaminated land"

means any land that, due to substances contained within or under it, is in a condition that presents an unacceptable risk to the health and safety of occupants of buildings constructed on such land;

"deemed-to-satisfy provision"

means non-mandatory requirement, the compliance with which ensures compliance with a functional regulation;

"discharge pipe"

means a pipe which conveys the discharge from a sanitary fixture to a drain, and includes a soil pipe, a waste pipe, a discharge stack, a branch discharge pipe or a fixture discharge pipe;

"discharge stack"

means any vertical discharge pipe which conveys the discharge from two or more sanitary fixtures and which is connected directly to a drain;

"dolomite land"

means land underlain by dolomite or limestone rock directly or at a shallow depth less than:

- (a) 60m in areas underlain by limestone;
- (b) 60m in areas underlain by dolomite where no de-watering has taken place and the local authority has jurisdiction, is monitoring and has control over the groundwater levels over the areas under consideration; or
- (c) 100m in areas underlain by dolomite where de-watering has taken place or where the local authority has no jurisdiction or control over groundwater levels.

"drain"

means that part of any drainage installation outside a building and which is below ground level, but shall not include the following –

- (a) any discharge pipe;
- (b) that portion of a discharge stack which is below ground level;
- (c) the bend at the foot of a discharge stack;

"drainage installation"

means any installation vested in the owner of a site and which is situated on such site and is intended for the reception, conveyance, storage or treatment of sewage, and may include sanitary fixtures, traps, discharge pipes, drains, ventilating pipes, septic tanks, conservancy tanks, sewage treatment works, or mechanical appliances associated therewith;

"dwelling house"

means a single dwelling unit and any garage and other domestic outbuildings thereto, situated on its own site;

"dwelling unit"

means a unit containing one or more habitable rooms and provided with adequate sanitary and cooking facilities;

"emergency route"

means that part of an escape route which provides fire protection to the occupants of any building and which leads to an escape door;

"escape door"

means that door in an escape route which, at ground level, leads directly to a street or public place or to any approved open space which leads to a street or public place;

"escape route"

means the entire path of travel from the furthest point in any room in a building to the nearest escape door and may include an emergency route;

"exit door"

means any door that is a component of an escape route from any room;

"fire installation"

means any water installation which conveys water solely for the purpose of fire-fighting;

"fire resistance"

means the shortest period for which a building element or component will comply with the requirements for stability, integrity and insulation when tested in accordance with SANS 10177-2;

"fixture discharge pipe"

means a discharge pipe which conveys the discharge from a single sanitary fixture;

"flammable"

means having a closed cup flash point lower than 90degC;

"floor area",

in relation to a building or a storey thereof, means the total area enclosed within its external walls, exclusive of the area occupied by any lift shaft;

"flue"

means a passage which conveys the discharge of a heat generating appliance to the external air;

"flue pipe"

means a pipe forming a flue but does not include a pipe built as a lining into a chimney;

"foundation"

means that part of a building which is in direct contact with and is intended to transmit loads to the ground;

"foundation wall"

means that portion of a wall between the foundation and the lowest floor above such foundation;

"french drain"

means a trench filled with suitable material which is used for the disposal of liquid effluent from a septic tank or waste water;

"functional regulation"

means a regulation that sets out in qualitative terms what is required of a building or building element or building component in respect of a particular characteristic without specifying the method of construction, dimensions or material to be used;

"garage"

means an enclosed area which is used or intended to be used for the parking, storing, servicing or repairing of motor vehicles;

"geotechnical site investigation"

the process of evaluating the geotechnical character of a site in the context of existing or proposed works or land usage, which may include one or more of the following:

- (a) evaluation of the geology and hydrogeology of the site;
- (b) examination of existing geotechnical information pertaining to the site;
- (c) excavating or boring in soil or rock and the systematic description of the soil and rock profiles;
- (d) determining the depth of any fill that might be present;
- (e) in-situ assessment of geotechnical properties of materials;
- (f) recovery of samples of soil or rock for examination, identification, recording, testing or display;
- (g) testing of soil or rock samples to quantify properties relevant to the purpose of the investigation;

(h) evaluation of geotechnical properties of tested soils; and

(i) reporting the results;

"gully"

means a pipe fitting incorporating a trap into which waste water is discharged;

"habitable room"

means a room used or designed, erected, adapted or intended to be used by persons for sleeping in, living in, the preparation or consumption of food or drink, the transaction of business, the rendering of professional services, the manufacture, processing or sale of goods, the performance of work, the gathering together of persons or for recreational purposes;

"industrial effluent"

means any liquid whether or not containing matter in solution or suspension which is given off in the course of or as a result of any industrial, trade, manufacturing, mining or chemical process or any laboratory, research or agricultural activity, and includes any liquid other than soil water, waste water or stormwater;

"inspection"

means the general inspection by a competent person of a system or measure or installation of a building, or part thereof, at such intervals as might be necessary in accordance with accepted professional practice to enable such competent person to be satisfied that the design assumptions are valid, the design is being correctly interpreted and the work is being executed generally in accordance with the designs, appropriate construction techniques and good practice but shall exclude detailed supervision and day-to-day inspection;

"inspection chamber"

means a chamber not deeper than 750mm and of such dimension that access may be obtained to a drain without requiring a person to enter into such chamber;

"inspection eye"

means any access opening to the interior of any pipe or pipe fitting in a drainage installation provided solely for the purpose of inspection and testing, and to which permanent access after completion of the drainage installation need not be provided;

"load"

means the value of a force corresponding to an action;

"manhole"

means a chamber of a depth greater than 750mm and of such dimension that allows entry of a person into such chamber for the purpose of providing access to a drain;

"minor building work"

as contemplated in [section 13](#) of the Act means –

(a) the erection of any –

(i) poultry house not exceeding 10m² in area;

(ii) aviary not exceeding 20m² in area;

(iii) solid fuel store not exceeding 10m² in area and 2m in height;

(iv) tool shed not exceeding 10m² in area;

(v) child's playhouse not exceeding 5m² in area;

(vi) cycle shed not exceeding 5m² in area;

- (vii) greenhouse not exceeding 15m² in area;
- (viii) open-sided car, caravan or boat shelter or a carport where such shelter or carport does not exceed 40m² in area;
- (ix) any free-standing wall constructed of masonry, concrete, steel, aluminium or timber or any wire fence where such wall or fence does not exceed 1,8m in height at any point above ground level and does not retain soil;
- (x) any pergola;
- (xi) private swimming pool;
- (xii) change room, not exceeding 10m² in area, at a private swimming pool;
- (b) the replacement of a roof or part thereof with the same or similar material;
- (c) the conversion of a door into a window or a window into a door without increasing the width of the opening;
- (d) the making of an opening in a wall which does not affect the structural safety of the building concerned;
- (e) the partitioning or the enlarging of any room by the erection or demolition of an internal wall if such erection or demolition does not affect the structural safety of the building concerned;
- (f) the erection of any solar water heater not exceeding 6m² in area on any roof or 12m² when erected other than on any roof; and
- (g) the erection of any other building where the nature of the erection is such that in the opinion of the building control officer it is not necessary for the applicant to submit, with his application, plans prepared in full conformity with these regulations;

"natural ventilation"

means the movement of air through a building due to natural causes;

"non-combustible"

means classified as non-combustible when tested in accordance with code of practice SANS 10177-5;

"occupancy"

means the particular use or the type of use to which a building or portion thereof is normally put or intended to be put;

"persons with disabilities"

means those persons who have long-term physical, mental, intellectual or sensory impairments which in interaction with various barriers might hinder their full and effective participation in society on an equal basis with others;

"population"

means the population determined in accordance with [regulation A21](#);

"prescriptive regulation"

means a regulation which describes in some detail an operation to be performed, or the dimensions of a building, building element or building component and the materials and method of construction to be used in such building, building element or building component;

"public place"

means any square, park, recreation ground or open space which –

(a) is vested in the local authority; or

(b) the public has the right to use; or

(c) is shown on a general plan of a township filed in a deeds registry or a Surveyor-General's office and has been provided for or reserved for the use of the public or the owners of erven in such township;

"rational assessment"

means assessment by a competent person of the adequacy of the performance of a solution in relation to requirements including, as necessary, a process of reasoning, calculation and consideration of accepted analytical principles, based on a combination of deductions from available information, research and data, appropriate testing and service experience;

"rational design"

means any design by a competent person involving a process of reasoning and calculation and which may include a design based on a standard or other suitable document;

"rodding eye"

means an access opening in a drainage installation provided for the purposes of gaining full-bore access to the interior of a drain for internal cleaning, and which remains permanently accessible after completion of the installation, but does not include an inspection chamber or manhole;

"sanitary fixture"

means a receptacle to which water is permanently supplied, and from which waste water or soil water is discharged;

"sewage"

means waste water, soil water, industrial effluent and other liquid waste, either separately or in combination, but does not include stormwater;

"sewer"

means a pipe or conduit which is the property of or is vested in the local authority and which is used or intended to be used for the conveyance of sewage;

"site"

means any erf, lot, plot, stand or other piece of land on which a building has been, is being or is to be erected;

"soil fixture"

means a sanitary fixture which receives and discharges soil water;

"soil pipe"

means a discharge pipe which conveys soil water;

"soil water"

means liquid containing excreta;

"sprinkler system"

means an approved system of piping and sprinkler heads connected to a water supply which when actuated by the effect of fire automatically releases water;

"stairway"

means any part of a building which provides a route of travel between different levels in such building and is formed by a single flight or by a combination of two or more flights and one or more intervening landings;

"storage tank"

means any tank, other than any tank used for storage of hot water or any cistern serving a toilet pan or a urinal, which forms part of a water installation and is used for the storage of water;

"storey"

means that part of a building which is situated between the top of any floor and the top of the floor next above it, or if there is no floor above it that portion between such floor and the ceiling above it (any open work floor, catwalk or gallery being taken to be part of the storey in which it is situated), and in relation to a building –

- (a) the ground storey shall be taken as the storey in which there is situated an entrance to the building from the level of the adjoining ground or, if there is more than one such storey the lower or lowest of these;
- (b) a basement shall be taken to be any part of the building which is below the level of the ground storey;
- (c) an upper storey shall be taken to be any storey of the building which is above the level of the ground storey; and
- (d) the height expressed in storeys shall be taken to be that number of storeys which includes all storeys other than a basement;

"stormwater"

means water resulting from natural precipitation or accumulation and includes rainwater, surface water, subsoil water or spring water;

"stormwater drain"

means a pipe, conduit or surface channel situated on a site, which is used to convey stormwater to a suitable point of discharge;

"stormwater sewer"

means a pipe, conduit or channel, owned by or vested in the local authority, which is used for the conveyance of stormwater;

"street"

means any street, road, thoroughfare, lane, footpath, sidewalk, subway or bridge which –

- (a) is vested in the local authority; or
- (b) the public has the right to use; or
- (c) is shown on a general plan of a township filed in a deeds registry or a Surveyor-General's office and has been provided or reserved for use by the public or the owners of erven in such township;

"structural"

means relating to or forming part of any structural system;

"structural system",

in relation to a building, means the system of constructional elements and components of any building which is provided to resist the loads acting upon it and to transfer such loads to the ground upon which the foundation of the building rests;

"structural wall"

means a wall forming part of any structural system;

"suitable"

means capable of fulfilling or having fulfilled the intended function or fit for its intended purpose;

"temporary building"

means any building that is so declared by the owner and that is being used or is to be used for a specified purpose for a specified limited period of time, but does not include a builder's shed;

"the Act"

means the National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act, 1977 (Act No.103 of 1977);

"trained plumber"

means any person who in the trade of plumbing has, in terms of the Manpower Training Act, 1981 (Act No. 56 of 1981), passed a qualifying trade test or has been issued with a certificate of proficiency or has obtained a National Certificate in Construction Plumbing, National Qualification Framework level 3;

"trap"

means a pipe fitting or a part of a sanitary fixture which is designed to retain a water seal;

"ventilating pipe"

means a pipe which leads to the open air at its highest point and which provides ventilation throughout a drainage installation for the purpose of preventing the destruction of water seals, but does not include a discharge pipe;

"waste pipe"

means a discharge pipe which conveys waste water only;

"waste water"

means used water not contaminated by soil water or industrial effluent and shall not include stormwater;

"water fitting"

means any component, other than a pipe, of any water installation, through which water passes or in which it is stored;

"water installation"

means an installation used or intended to be used for the conveyance or storage of water in any building or on any site on which such building is situated and includes any pipe or any water fitting other than any water meter vested in the local authority;

"water seal"

means the water in a trap which acts as a barrier against the flow of any foul air or gas;

"water supply system"

means any system of structures, aqueducts, pipes, valves, pumps, meters or other appurtenances relating thereto which are vested in the local authority and are used or intended to be used by it in connection with the supply of water;

"wind load"

means the force exerted by the action of wind;

AZ3 Standards

Where in these regulations reference is made to a SANS number, such reference shall relate to the latest edition of the national standard having the number and title given in the following table:

1	2
SANS No.	Title
1125	Room air conditioners and heat pumps
10005	The preservative treatment of timber
10082	Timber frame buildings
10105	The use and control of fire fighting equipment
10124	The application of soil insecticides for the protection of buildings
10177	Fire testing of materials, components, and elements used in buildings Part 1 Part 2 Part 3 Part 4
10400	The application of the National Building Regulations

AZ4 Complying with the requirements of the National Building Regulations

- (1) The requirements of the National Building Regulations shall be complied with by:
- (a) adhering to the requirements of all the prescriptive regulations; and
 - (b) satisfying all functional regulations by:
 - (i) adopting building solutions that comply with the requirements of the relevant part of SANS 10400; or
 - (ii) reliably demonstrating, or predicting with certainty, to the satisfaction of the appropriate local authority, that an adopted building solution has an equivalent or superior performance to a solution that complies with the requirements of the relevant part of SANS 10400.
- (2) A competent person who is registered in an appropriate category of registration in terms of the Architectural Professions Act, 2000 (Act No. 44 of 2000), the Engineering Profession Act, 2000 (Act No. 46 of 2000), the Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act No. 27 of 2003) or any other relevant Act and, in accordance with the requirements of [regulation A19](#), shall prepare and submit to the local authority a rational design or rational assessment where compliance with the requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) is to be satisfied in terms of [sub-regulation\(1\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#).
- (3) An approved competent person who satisfies the requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) in terms of [sub-regulation \(1\)\(b\)\(ii\)](#) in respect of a system, measure, facility, parameter or installations shall inspect and certify upon completion, in accordance with the requirements of [regulation A19](#), the construction, erection or installation thereof.

PART A - ADMINISTRATION

A1 APPLICATION

- (1) The designing, planning and the supervision of the erection of any building or structure or the performance of any function in connection therewith in terms of these regulations is subject to the provisions of any law in terms of which the person undertaking such work or performing such function is required to be registered in terms of the Architectural Profession Act, 2000 (Act No. 44 of 2000), Engineering Profession Act, 2000 (Act No. 46 of 2000), Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act No. 27 of 2003), or Professional and Technical Surveyors' Act. 1984 (Act No. 40 of 1984), or any other relevant Act.
- (2) The plans and particulars in respect of any building to be erected by or on behalf of the State shall be accompanied by a certificate, signed by the head of the State Department concerned or an officer designated by him, setting out in full details as to the respect in which such erection will not comply with the requirements of these regulations.
- (3)
 - (a) No person shall erect any building which is to be structurally supported by an existing building or extend an existing building unless an approved competent person has judged the existing building to be capable of carrying any additional load arising from such erection or extension and has, in writing, so informed the local authority.
 - (b) Such notification shall accompany the application for approval of the erection of the building in terms of [section 4](#) of the Act.
 - (c) For the purposes of this regulation "existing building" shall include a partly erected building.
 - (d) Any structural support provided by the existing building shall be deemed to be part of the structural system of the building to be erected.
 - (e) The local authority may require that the above notification be accompanied by a documented rational assessment of the adequacy of the structural support.
- (4) No plans, particulars or approval shall be required for any repair which has become necessary as a result of ordinary wear and tear or which is undertaken in the normal course of maintenance or upkeep of any building: Provided that where such repair will affect the structural loading or is a repair of any part of the structural system the local authority may require drawings or specifications to be submitted.
- (5) An application shall be made to the building control office for authorization to erect any building defined as minor building work or to carry out any work falling within the ambit of such definition, and any such erection or work shall not be commenced before such authorization has been granted: Provided that such application and such authorization shall not be required for minor building work for which, in terms of the proviso to [regulation A2\(1\)](#), no plans are required.
- (6) Minor building work shall comply with any national building regulations specified as a condition of the authorization granted by the building control officer.
- (7)
 - (a) Where in any application the owner of any building has declared such building to be a temporary building, the local authority shall, before granting provisional authorization in terms of [regulation A23](#), assess such building in relation to –
 - (i) the intended use and life of the building;

- (ii) the area in which it is to be erected; and
 - (iii) the availability of suitable materials from which it may be constructed.
- (b) Any stall or other similar building to be erected as part of an exhibition shall be deemed to be a temporary building: Provided that where such stall is to be erected inside any exhibition hall the owner of such hall shall not be required to submit to the local authority any details of such stall: Provided further that such owner shall submit to the local authority a layout plan of all stalls within such hall, showing the location of each individual stall and all aisles, passage-ways, escape routes and fire fighting equipment.
- (c) Where any building contemplated in paragraph (a) is intended to be used for experimental, demonstration, testing or assessment purposes, the local authority -
- (i) shall grant authorization for a period of time sufficient for the erection of such building and for the performance of any experiment, or for the demonstration, testing or assessment of such building; and
 - (ii) shall grant authorization for the erection of such building where testing or assessment of the completed building is the only way to ascertain whether such building complies with the requirements of these regulations.
- (8) Where an application is made to make an alteration or addition to any building, approval for the erection of which was granted before the date of commencement of the Act -
- (a) such alteration shall comply with the requirements of the Act, but consequent changes to any other part of the building which would be necessary in order to make such other part comply with the requirements of the Act shall not be required unless in the opinion of the local authority such consequent changes are necessary to ensure the health or safety of persons using the building in the altered form;
 - (b) such addition shall comply with the requirements of the Act, but no changes to the original building shall be required unless the addition -
 - (i) will affect the structural strength or stability of the original building;
 - (ii) will render any existing escape route from the original building less effective; or
 - (iii) will affect the health of persons using the original building.
- (9) Where in terms of these regulations an obligation is imposed or may be imposed on the owner of any building or land to do or refrain from doing any particular act or thing, and -
- (a) such owner and some other person have lawfully agreed, in writing, that such other person shall accept such obligation on behalf of such owner; and
 - (b) such owner has, where required by the local authority, furnished the local authority with written proof of the fact contemplated in paragraph (a) and with the name and address of such other person,
- any reference in any such regulation to such owner shall be construed as a reference to such other person: Provided that such owner shall not be relieved of such obligation where such other person does not adhere to the agreement contemplated in paragraph (a).

A2 PLANS AND PARTICULARS TO BE FURNISHED

- (1) Any person intending to erect any building shall submit to the local authority the following plans and particulars, together with the application:
- (a) A site plan;
 - (b) layout drawings;
 - (c) a fire installation drawing;
 - (d) drainage installation drawing;
 - (e) particulars of any existing building which is to be demolished and details of the method of demolition to be used;
 - (f) such plans and particulars as may be required by the local authority in respect of –
 - (i) general structural arrangements, subject to any requirement contained in these regulations with regard to design of the structural system;
 - (ii) general arrangement of artificial ventilation;
 - (iii) a fire protection plan;
 - (iv) any certificate contemplated in these regulations, including any applicable Agrément Certificate;
 - (v) particulars required in terms of any applicable legislation, by-laws, or part of SANS 10400.
 - (g) a declaration by a person registered in a professional category of registration in terms of the one of the councils for the professions identified in the Council for the Built Environment Act, 2000 (Act No. 43 of 2000) in the relevant portion of Form1 contained in SANS10400-A as to how the applicable functional regulations shall be satisfied;

Provided that –

- (aa) such plans and particulars shall not be submitted where –
 - (i) as a result of any exemption contemplated in paragraph (a) or (b) of the proviso to [section 2\(4\)](#) of the Act, it is not necessary to do so;
 - (ii) an exemption has been granted by a building control officer in terms of [section 13](#) of the Act; or
 - (iii) any minor building work is a building having an area of not more than 5 m² or is a pergola, wire fence or an open-sided fabric covered shelter for a car, caravan or boat;
 - (bb) in the case of any temporary building, only such plans and particulars as are contemplated in [regulation A23](#) shall be submitted.
- (2) The owner of a building shall appoint and retain the services of the person responsible for submitting the declaration required in [sub-regulation \(1\)\(g\)](#) and shall advise such person after such declaration has been submitted to the local authority of any changes made in the manner in which any functional regulation shall be satisfied or if the services of the competent person is for whatever reason terminated prior to the conclusion of his obligations in terms of these regulations, or the appointment of any other competent person. Such person

shall within one month of being notified by the owner or becoming aware of any change submit an amended declaration to the local authority.

- (3) Where it is not possible for the person appointed by the owner of a building in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) to fulfil his or her duties, the owner of such building shall appoint and retain another suitably qualified person to take over and perform the duties and responsibilities assigned to such person in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#).
- (4) The names of all approved competent persons shall be entered into the appropriate schedule of Form1 contained in SANS10400-A before local authority approval may be granted.
- (5) A certified copy of approved plans and particulars contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be available at the site where any building is being erected until a certificate of occupancy has been issued by the local authority.
- (6)
 - (a) Where design work for the proposed erection of any building was commenced before the date of coming into effect of any amendment to these regulations or within 6 months of the publication of an edition of any part of SANS 10400 or a by-law and an application in respect of such erection has not been made prior to such date, the owner of the building, or a person authorized by the owner, may notify the local authority that such design work was so commenced and has so progressed.
 - (b) Subject to the provisions of this sub-regulation, an application in respect of an erection which has been the subject of a notification contemplated in paragraph (a) shall if so requested by the owner be dealt with by the local authority in accordance with the provisions of the building regulations, by-laws or edition of SANS 10400 in force immediately before such date.
 - (c) Any notification contemplated in paragraph (a) shall -
 - (i) be submitted by registered post within 6 months of the coming into effect of any new regulation, by-law or publication of a new edition of any part of SANS10400; and
 - (ii) contain the name and address of the owner, the address of the site of the building concerned, the date of commencement of such design work and a description of the proposed erection and its intended use.
 - (d) The local authority shall, in writing, inform the owner concerned of acceptance of such notification.
 - (e) The provisions of paragraph (b) shall not apply in respect of any application which is made to the local authority more than 12 months after the date that the local authority informs the owner that it is so satisfied: Provided that the local authority may extend such period if it thinks it reasonable or necessary.
 - (f) Any person who gives false or misleading information in a notification in terms of this sub-regulation shall be guilty of an offence and such notification is null and void.

A3 PRELIMINARY PLANS AND ENQUIRIES

- (1) Any person who intends to erect a building may, before submitting an application in accordance with the Act, request the local authority –
 - (a) to examine any preliminary sketch plans of the building proposed to be erected and to furnish, in writing, its comments on such plans or on any particular features thereof specified by such person; or
 - (b) to furnish, in writing, its opinion as to whether any material or method or form of construction intended to be used in the erection of such building will comply with these regulations.
- (2) Where the local authority is unable to comply with any request contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) it shall furnish, in writing, its reasons for its inability to do so.

A4 LOCAL AUTHORITY MAY REQUIRE ADDITIONAL DOCUMENTS AND INFORMATION

- (1) Where the local authority requires the applicant in terms of [regulation A2\(1\)\(f\)\(i\)](#) or [\(ii\)](#) to submit structural details or artificial ventilation details such applicant shall, to the extent required by the local authority -
- (a) furnish the local authority with a structural arrangement drawing which shall show the position, level and size of every structural member;
 - (b) furnish the local authority with such structural drawings and artificial ventilation details as required in terms of [sub-regulations \(2\), \(3\), \(4\), \(5\), \(6\), \(7\) and \(8\)](#): Provided that where the structural system or artificial ventilation system, as the case may be, is designed by an approved competent person –
 - (i) the local authority shall permit the applicant to omit from his application any or all of the details required in [sub-regulations \(2\), \(3\), \(4\), \(5\), \(6\), \(7\) and \(8\)](#) on condition that the required details shall be submitted to the local authority at least three days, exclusive of a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday, prior to the commencement of the erection of the structural system of the building or the artificial ventilation system, as the case may be; and
 - (ii) such details shall thereafter form part of the relevant application for approval;
 - (c) show on structural drawings the imposed floor loads which such building has been designed to withstand;
 - (d) furnish for inspection the calculations employed in the design of the building proposed to be erected;
 - (e) furnish adequate information regarding the subsoil of the site on which the building is proposed to be erected;
 - (f) show the fire resistance ratings of the various structural members of the building and, where special protection for such members is necessary, details relating to such protection;
 - (g) furnish information regarding structural materials to be used in the construction of the proposed building, including the grade, strength, classification, temper or treatment;
 - (h) if the design or part thereof has been carried out in accordance with any standard contemplated in these regulations, furnish the name and number of such standard;
 - (i) if the design or part thereof has been carried out in accordance with a document other than a standard contemplated in these regulations, furnish identification of such document together with the reasons for utilizing such document in preference to such standard;
 - (j) if the design or part thereof has not been carried out in accordance with any standard or document contemplated in paragraph (h) or (i), furnish the basis and method on which such design was prepared and any further evidence of the adequacy of such basis and method; and
 - (k) if the structural design or part thereof has been carried out in accordance with any standard, document or other method contemplated in paragraph (h), (i) or (j), furnish, in addition to the loads contemplated in paragraph (c), details of other loads which such building has been designed to withstand.
- (2) The documentation for the structural concrete used in a building shall, to the extent required by the local authority, show –
- (a) the reinforcement in each member;
 - (b) the various grades of concrete to be used;

- (c) the type of reinforcement or pre-stressing tendon;
 - (d) the amount of concrete cover to be provided to the reinforcement;
 - (e) the details of all joints between members; and
 - (f) the details of anchorage of pre-stressing steel.
- (3) The documentation for structural steelwork shall, to the extent required by the local authority, show -
- (a) the grades of steel of all members;
 - (b) details of connections between members; and
 - (c) details of corrosion protection to be provided to the steel structure.
- (4) The documentation for structural timber shall, to the extent required by the local authority, show -
- (a) the grade and type of timber to be used in such construction;
 - (b) whether the sizes of timber members are nominal or finished sizes;
 - (c) the method of connection of all timber members and the connection of any timber members to a foundation or other parts of the building not constructed of timber;
 - (d) in the case of any roof construction, the details of the method of bracing to resist wind actions and other lateral actions, member spacing and sizes and details of connections;
 - (e) details of treatment applied or to be applied in terms of these regulations, to the structural timber members; and
 - (f) details of drainage for condensation or wind driven water from any cavity and the details of any ventilation openings provided to such cavity.
- (5) The documentation for structural masonry shall, to the extent required by the local authority, show
- (a) the class of mortar to be used, together with the strength of the masonry units;
 - (b) the details of all joints in masonry and between masonry and other members, including dimensions and materials from which bearing pads and load spreading devices are made; and
 - (c) details of all reinforcement, wall ties and anchors.
- (6) The documentation for foundations shall, to the extent required by the local authority, show -
- (a) the type and condition of the soil; and
 - (b) the design loads to be applied to the foundations, except where such foundation is constructed in accordance with any relevant empirical rule and such construction is deemed to satisfy these regulations.
- (7) The documentation for other structural materials shall, to the extent required by the local authority, show -
- (a) the overall size of every structural member together with its location;

- (b) the grade of material of all members;
- (c) the details of all connections between members;
- (d) the details of the corrosion protection to be provided; and
- (e) the details of reinforcement provided, including its strength and composition.

(8)

- (a) Where the local authority requires any particulars with regard to the artificial ventilation of any building by a mechanical apparatus not being a room air conditioner contemplated in SANS 1125, or any portable electric fan, the following information shall, to the extent required by the local authority and subject to the requirement of paragraph (b), be submitted:
 - (i) The location and size of any plant room;
 - (ii) the location and size of principal air ducts, plenums, inlets and outlets;
 - (iii) the proposed rates of air supply or extraction; and
 - (iv) details of any water recirculation system, cooling tower and storage tank.
- (b) Any documentation contemplated in paragraph (a) shall be accompanied by a certificate signed by a an approved competent person in which he shall certify that any apparatus to be installed has been designed to provide a standard of ventilation which complies with these regulations.

(9)

- (a) Where a local authority is not satisfied as to the adequacy or safety in use of any construction system, method, material, article or product which is proposed to be used in the erection of any building the local authority may require a test report or evaluation certificate in respect thereof.
- (b) On submission to such local authority of -
 - (i) an applicable report issued by the council or the CSIR; or
 - (ii) any current Agrément certificate,the adequacy or safety of such system, method, material, article or product covered by such report certificate shall be deemed to satisfy any relevant requirement for adequacy or safety prescribed in these regulations, to the extent and under the conditions set out in such report or certificate.
- (c) A report or certificate contemplated in paragraph (a), issued on or after the date of coming into operation of these regulations, shall contain the number of the regulation which prescribes such requirement.

A5 APPLICATION FORMS AND MATERIALS, SCALES AND SIZES OF PLANS

- (1) Any application form shall be dated and signed in black ink by the owner.
- (2) Any application shall be accompanied by at least one set of plans, drawings and diagrams which shall -
- (a) be clear and legible;
 - (b) be drawn on any suitable material or be provided in a medium acceptable to the local authority;
 - (c) contain the name of the owner of the site concerned; and
 - (d) be dated and signed in black ink by the owner; and every subsequent alteration shall be likewise dated and signed.
- (3) Any application shall be accompanied by as many additional *paper* copies of every plan, drawing or diagram as required by the local authority.
- (4) Such plans, drawing, diagrams, and any copies thereof, shall be on sheets of the A series of sizes or multiples of A4.
- (5) (a) Plans, drawings and diagrams shall be drawn to a suitable scale selected from one of the following scales:
- (i) *Site plans:*
1:1 000, 1:500, 1:250, 1:200 or 1:100.
 - (ii) *Plumbing installation drawings:*
1:200, 1:100 or 1:50.
 - (iii) *Layout drawings:*
1:100, 1:50 or 1:20: Provided that in the case of elevations 1:200 may be used.
 - (iv) *General structural arrangement drawings and structural details:*
1:100, 1:50, 1:20, 1:10, 1:5, 1:2 or 1:1.
 - (v) *Fire protection plans:*
1:200, 1:100, 1:50 or 1:20.
- (b) The local authority may accept a scale not provided for in this sub-regulation.
- (6) One copy of the plans and drawings contemplated in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) shall, for the convenience of the local authority, identify in a suitable manner or colour the following as indicated below:
- | (a) MATERIAL | COLOUR (in plan or section) |
|---|--|
| (i) New Masonry | Red |
| (ii) New concrete | Green |
| (iii) New iron or steel | Blue |
| (iv) New wood | Yellow |
| (v) New glass | Black |
| (vi) Existing materials (all materials) | Grey |
| (vii) All other new materials | To be clearly indicated in colours other than the above. |

(b) SITE PLAN	COLOUR
(i) Proposed work	Red
(ii) Existing work	Not coloured
(iii) Work to be demolished	Drawn with black dotted lines

(c) DRAINAGE INSTALLATION CONTEMPLATED in regulation A2(1)(d)	COLOUR
(i) Drains and soil pipes	Brown
(ii) Waste pipes	Green
(iii) Soil and combined vents	Red
(iv) Waste vents	Blue
(v) Pipes for the conveyance of industrial effluent	Orange
(vi) Existing drains	Black
(vii) Stormwater drains	Not coloured

- (7) The escape route drawn on any fire protection plan shall be coloured green and the direction of travel to a safe area shall be indicated by arrows drawn at short intervals along the plan route.
- (8) In all cases the scales employed shall be stated on the plans and drawings, and the letters and symbols used on such plans and drawings shall be not less than 2,5mm in size in the case of upper case letters.

A6 SITE PLANS

Any site plan contemplated in [regulation A2\(1\)\(a\)](#) shall fully and clearly contain the following information, where applicable:

- (a)
 - (i) The dimensions of the site on which the building is to be erected;
 - (ii) the boundaries of such site;
 - (iii) the dimensioned position of any building line; and
 - (iv) the position and width of any servitude or right of way to which such site is subject;
- (b) the registered number or other designation of such site;
- (c) the direction of true north, and if required by the local authority, the natural ground contours at suitable vertical intervals or spot levels at each corner of such site;
- (d) the name of the street upon which such site abuts;
- (e) the location of -
 - (i) any municipal service and any connection point thereto; and
 - (ii) any drain, stormwater drain, or surface channel existing upon such site;
- (f) the location of -
 - (i) the proposed building;
 - (ii) any existing building; and
 - (iii) any building proposed to be demolished;
- (g)
 - (i) any existing and intended point of access from any public street; and
 - (ii) the location of any street tree, street furniture, apparatus or equipment relative to such access.

A7 LAYOUT DRAWING

Any layout drawing contemplated in [regulation A2\(1\)\(b\)](#) shall indicate the occupancy classification, and shall consist of as many plans, sections, elevations and such other details as may be necessary to show.

- (a) foundations, floors, walls, fixed and openable windows, fanlights, louvres and other ventilating devices, artificial ventilation systems including any cooling tower or plantroom, doors, stairs, roofs and chimneys;
- (b) sanitary fixtures;
- (c) structural members required in terms of [regulation A4\(1\)\(a\)](#);
- (d) the intended use and horizontal and vertical dimensions of rooms or other spaces;
- (e) all details relating to the facilities provided for persons with disabilities;
- (f) where fixed seating is provided -
 - (i) the layout of all rows, seats and aisles;
 - (ii) the position of all exit doors; and
 - (iii) the total number of seats;
- (g) details of the position, dimensions and materials of damp-proofing;
- (h) the location, levels and size of any paved areas adjacent to the building;
- (i) where required by the local authority, contours of the site and the levels of any adjoining verge of any roadway, together with a section along the length of any vehicle driveway, which shall show the relative levels and gradients;
- (j) where required by the local authority, the levels of the floors relative to one another and to -
 - (i) the existing ground surface;
 - (ii) the proposed finished ground surface;
 - (iii) the surface of any public place or public street at the boundary of the site; and
 - (iv) all street levels supplied in terms of [regulation A12](#);
- (k) stormwater drainage on the site, where such drainage is required by the local authority; and
- (l) details of any special provisions, required in terms of these regulations, for disabled persons.

A8 PLUMBING INSTALLATION DRAWINGS AND PARTICULARS

- (1)
- (a) The provisions of [regulation A2\(1\)\(c\)](#) and [A2\(1\)\(d\)](#) shall not be construed as preventing the details contemplated in [sub-regulations \(2\), \(3\), \(4\) and \(5\)](#) being clearly indicated on any layout drawing required in terms of [regulation A2\(1\)\(b\)](#).
 - (b) Where such details on more than one floor of any building are identical they may be indicated on the drawings of one such floor only: Provided that where such details are so indicated the drawings of other floors concerned shall be suitably annotated to indicate where such details may be found.
- (2) Any drawing of a fire installation as contemplated in [regulation A2\(1\)\(c\)](#) shall contain as many plans, sections and elevations as may be necessary to show, where relevant, the following:
- (a) The location and size of any existing or proposed communication pipe serving or intended to serve any building or site;
 - (b) the location of any pipe, the size of such pipe and the material of which it is manufactured;
 - (c) the location and capacity of any storage tank;
 - (d) the location of any overflow;
 - (e) the location of any pump; and
 - (f) the pressure for which the installation has been designed.
- (3) Any drawing of a drainage installation as contemplated in [regulation A2\(1\)\(d\)](#) shall contain as many plans, sections and elevations as may be necessary to show, where relevant, the following:
- (a) The location, size and gradient of any drain and any connecting point to such drain, in relation to a datum established on the site and the level of the ground relative thereto:
 - (b) the location of any point of access to the interior of any drain;
 - (c) the location of any trapped gully;
 - (d) the location and details of any septic tank, conservancy tank, private sewage treatment plant or sewage pump;
 - (e) the location of any percolation test hole excavated on the site and of any french drain;
 - (f) the location and arrangement of any sanitary fixture served by the drainage installation;
 - (g) the location and size of any soil pipe, waste pipe and ventilating pipe or device;
 - (h) the location of all openings in the building such as chimneys, skylights, doors, windows, ventilation openings and air intakes which could permit the entry of foul air or gas into such building from any ventilating pipe or device; and
 - (i) the location of any well, borehole or watercourse on the site.
- (4) The local authority may require the owner to submit -

- (a) drainage design calculations which shall clearly indicate the basis for such design;
 - (b) an estimate of the composition and quantity of any industrial effluent proposed to be discharged into any sewer; and
 - (c) where approval has been given in terms of the local authority's industrial effluent bylaws or regulations for the discharge into a sewer of industrial effluent from the site, plans and particulars of any drainage works and installations required by the local authority in terms of its conditions of approval for such discharge.
- (5) Where symbols are used to signify details on drainage installation drawings they shall be as indicated in the following list: Provided that where there may be a possibility of misunderstanding, the description shall be written in full:

Access opening	AO
Bath	B
Bidet	BT
Cast iron	CI
Cleaning eye	CE
Concrete	CONC
Copper	COP
Cover level	CL
Fibre cement	FC
Galvanized mild steel	GMS
Grease trap	GT
Ground level	GL
Gully	G
Inspection chamber	IC
Inspection eye	IE
Invert level	IL
Manhole	MH
Pitch-impregnated fibre	PF
Rainwater pipe	RWP
Reinforced concrete	RC
Rodding eye	RE
Shower	SW
Sink	S
Slop hopper	SH
Soil pipe	SP
Stainless steel	SS
Stormwater channel	SC
Stormwater pipe	SWP
Two Way Vent Valve	2WVV
Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride	UPVC
Urinal	U
Vent or ventilating pipe	VP
Vitrified clay	VC
Wash-basin	WB
Wash-trough	WT
Waste pipe	WP
Toilet pan	WC

A9 FIRE PROTECTION PLAN

- (1) Where so required by the local authority, any application in respect of the erection of any building not being a dwelling house, shall be accompanied by a protection fire plan which shall clearly show any fire protection measures provided in terms of these regulations.
- (2) The provisions of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall not be construed as preventing details of such fire protection measures being clearly indicated on a layout drawing required in terms of [regulation A2\(1\)\(b\)](#).

A10 SYMBOLS ON FIRE PROTECTION PLANS

- (1) Where symbols are used to signify details on fire protection plans they shall be as indicated in the following list:
Provided that where the possibility of a misunderstanding exists, the description shall be written in full:

Escape door	ED
Escape route	ER
Feeder route	FR
Fire extinguisher	FE
Fire hydrant	FH
Foam inlet	FI
Fire main	FM
Fire pump connection	FPC
Fire stopping	FS
Heat detectors	HD
Hose reel	HR
Rising main	RM
Reflux valve	RV
Smoke detectors	SD
Sprinkler system	SS
Smoke extractor	SX
Valve	V

A11 POINTING OUT OF BOUNDARY BEACONS

- (1) Where, in the opinion of the local authority, the location of any boundary of a site has not been accurately determined such local authority may, require the owner, at his own cost, to engage a professional land surveyor and to submit to the local authority a certificate, in an approved form and signed by such professional land surveyor -
 - (a) identifying the boundary pegs or beacons of such site; and
 - (b) stating the name of the nearest cross street and the approximate distance of the nearest boundary of the site from such street.
- (2) Where such owner fails to engage a professional land surveyor as contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) the local authority may engage a professional land surveyor to establish and point out the location of such pegs or beacons, and the local authority may recover the costs of such establishing and pointing out from such owner.

A12 STREET LEVELS

- (1) Where any building is to be erected on a site abutting a constructed street the owner of such building shall, subject to the requirements of [sub-regulation \(3\)](#), erect such building in accordance with the levels of such street.
- (2)
 - (a) Where any portion of any street abutting the site on which any building is to be erected has not been constructed the owner of such building shall request, in writing, from the local authority the levels at which such portion of the street is intended to be constructed.
 - (b) The local authority shall, where in its opinion it is practicable for it so to do and within 21 days after receipt of a request contemplated in paragraph (a), supply the required levels.
 - (c) If the local authority is unable to comply with the provisions of paragraph (b) it shall notify such owner, in writing, to that effect.
- (3) Where any street has been constructed, but in the opinion of the local authority is likely to be reconstructed at levels different from its existing levels, the local authority shall give notice of such fact to such owner, and in such notice it shall, if possible, supply the levels at which such portion of such street will be reconstructed.

A13 BUILDING MATERIALS AND TESTS

- (1) (a) Material used in the erection of a building shall be suitable for the purpose for which it is to be used.
 - (b) All timber used in the erection of a building shall be treated against termite and wood borer attack and fungal decay in accordance with the requirements of SANS 10005 and shall bear the product certification mark of a body certified by the South African National Accreditation Systems.
 - (c) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)\(a\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied if such material complies with and is incorporated into buildings in accordance with the requirements of SANS 10400.
- (2) The local authority may test or cause to be tested any material or component used or to be used in the erection of any building in order to determine whether such material or component complies with the requirements of these regulations, and any officer of such local authority duly authorized for that purpose may, at any time after consultation with the person erecting such building, remove from the building site concerned so much of such material or component as is reasonably necessary to serve as a sample for the purpose of such test: Provided that the authorized officer may not exercise his powers in such a way that work of such erection is stopped when such material or component is being so removed and tested.
- (3) If any material or component tested in terms of [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) does not comply with these regulations the local authority may serve a notice on such person, stating the respects in which such material or component does not comply and prohibiting such person from making further use of such material or component for the purpose for which it was or is to be used in the erection of such building.
- (4) Except in the case where in such notice the local authority permits the use of such material or component in the erection of such building for some different purpose permitted in terms of these regulations, such person shall forthwith on receipt of such notice remove such material or component from such building or building site or from both, as the case may be.
- (5) If any material or component contemplated in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) is tested and has failed to comply with these regulations the local authority may recover the cost of such test from the owner of the building concerned.
- (6) Where the owner of any building desires to use for a particular purpose any material or component which is not permitted or prescribed by these regulations to be used for that purpose, and he satisfies the local authority that such material or component is at least as suitable for that purpose as the material or component permitted or prescribed to be used by these regulations, then the local authority shall permit the use of such material or component for the purpose concerned.

A14 CONSTRUCTION

- (1)
- (a) The construction of any building or element shall be such that the building or element as constructed does not compromise the design intent of any design solution that satisfies the requirements of a functional regulation.
 - (b) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)\(a\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied if such construction satisfies the requirements of SANS 10400.
- (2) Precautions shall be taken during all stages of construction of any building to ensure that the structural system is not damaged or distorted during the course of erection of such building.

A15 MAINTENANCE AND OPERATION

- (1)
- (a) The owner of any building shall ensure that any mechanical equipment, facility or any service installation provided in or in connection with such building, pursuant to these regulations or pursuant to any building by-law which was in operation prior to the coming into operation of the Act, shall be maintained in a safe and functional condition.
 - (b) Such owner or any person appointed by such owner to be in control of such building shall ensure that where such equipment, facility or installation is designed to be kept operating during the times of normal occupancy of the building, it is kept operating in such a manner as to attain any standard of performance prescribed in these regulations or in any by-law for such equipment or installation.
- (2) The owner of any building shall ensure that pursuant to these regulations or pursuant to any building by-law that was in operation prior to the coming into operation of the Act, the following is maintained in accordance with the requirements of the relevant functional regulations contained in Regulations B, H, J, K and L:
- (a) the structural safety performance (behaviour of buildings under all actions that can be reasonably expected to occur);
 - (b) the measures taken to resist the penetration of rain water and the passage of moisture into the interior of a building.
- (3) The local authority may serve a notice on such owner or person requiring him to comply with [sub regulation \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#) within the time specified in such notice.
- (4) The local authority may, by notice, in writing to the owner, order the evacuation of such building where the state of such building, equipment, installation or facility will cause conditions which in the opinion of the local authority may be detrimental to the safety or health of the occupiers or users of such building.
- (5) Any owner or person who contravenes the requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#) or fails to comply with any notice served in terms of [sub-regulation \(3\)](#) or [\(4\)](#) shall be guilty of an offence.

A16 QUALIFICATIONS OF A BUILDING CONTROL OFFICER

The minimum qualification of any building control officer appointed in terms of [section 5](#) of the Act shall be of a standard equivalent to a senior certificate plus three years tertiary education, at an accredited educational institution, in one of the following building disciplines:

- (a) Civil engineering;
- (b) structural engineering;
- (c) architecture;
- (d) building management;
- (e) building science;
- (f) building surveying; or
- (g) quantity surveying

A17 CERTIFICATE OF IDENTITY OF A BUILDING CONTROL OFFICER

- (1) Any building control officer or any officer contemplated in [section 6\(4\)](#) of the Act shall, when so requested, produce his certificate of identity, which shall contain the following information.
 - (a) The number of the Act in terms of which the certificate is issued;
 - (b) the name of the local authority in question;
 - (c) the name of the officer;
 - (d) the signature of the officer;
 - (e) the signature of the municipal manager of the local authority concerned;
 - (f) the date of issue; and
 - (g) a photograph of the officer.
- (2) [Sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the certificate is in accordance with that provided in SANS10400-A
- (3) The certificate contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be valid only during the period that the officer so identified occupies the post of building control officer or during the period for which any power of a building control officer is delegated to him, as the case may be, and it may at any time be withdrawn by the local authority.
- (4) Any person who produces a certificate of identity which has not been lawfully issued to him or which has been lawfully withdrawn, shall be guilty of an offence.

A18 CONTROL OF PLUMBERS AND PLUMBING WORK

- (1) No person shall perform the trade of plumbing as contemplated in Government Notice No. R. 1875 of 31 August 1979 unless he is a trained plumber or works under the adequate control of a trained plumber or approved competent person.
- (2) Where any person who is not a trained plumber has been practising the trade of plumbing and was required in terms of any local authority bylaw to register with it before so practising in its area of jurisdiction, he may, if he is so registered, continue to practise in such area or the area of any other local authority if such registration is acceptable to such other local authority.
- (3) No local authority shall, for the purposes of these regulations, register any person to practise the trade of plumbing after the coming into operation of the Act.
- (4) Any person not being a trained plumber or not being a person contemplated in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#), who practices the trade of plumbing shall be guilty of an offence.
- (5) Any trained plumber who causes or permits any person who is not a trained plumber or is not a person contemplated in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#), to practise the trade of plumbing without adequately controlling the work done by such person, shall be guilty of an offence.

A19 APPOINTMENT OF PERSONS RESPONSIBLE FOR DESIGN, INSPECTION AND ASSESSMENT DUTIES

(1) Wherein terms of these regulations and in respect of the erection of any building:

(a) a rational design or rational assessment, is required in terms of:

(i) [Regulations Z4\(1\)\(b\)\(ii\), A1\(3\), A23\(4\), G1\(3\), O4, P2\(2\), Q3, R\(3\), T1\(2\), W4](#) in respect of a system, measure, facility, parameter, or installation, as relevant, or

(ii) a part of SANS 10400; or

(b) a geotechnical investigation is required in terms of [regulation F3](#).

the owner of the building shall subject to the provisions of [sub-regulations \(4\)](#) and [\(5\)](#) appoint and retain one or more approved competent persons to undertake responsibility for the work associated with such regulations including any inspections and certifications that maybe required.

(2) Where it is not possible for such person to fulfil his or her duties as contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#), the owner of such building shall appoint and retain another approved competent person to take over and fulfil such duties and responsibilities both in respect of the work already designed or erected or installed and in respect of the balance of such work still to be undertaken to complete the project.

(3) The local authority may exempt from the requirements of this regulation any building classified in these regulations as minor building work or foundations to an addition or extension to a single storey building where the applicant has satisfied himself that the existing foundations are in accordance with the rules contained in SANS10400-H and any local damage (including cracking) and deformation in the existing building are within tolerable limits.

(4) The owner of any building who is required by these regulations to appoint an approved competent person shall state in the terms of the appointment for the competent person that such person undertake all duties and responsibilities required by these regulations. Such persons shall declare his or her acceptance of such responsibilities in the relevant portion of Form 2 contained in SANS 10400-A.

(5) Notwithstanding the provisions of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#), a person may be appointed to undertake the relevant responsibilities and duties in respect of more than one of the systems, measures, facilities, parameters or installations provided for in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) if the local authority accepts in terms of these regulations that he or she is competent to do so.

(6)

(a) Where any building to be extended, the local authority may on receipt of the application for such extension and before granting approval require that the approved competent persons who have accepted responsibility for such work to timeously prepare and submit rational assessments as to the adequacy of the existing systems and installations in combination with the contemplated extensions to comply with the relevant requirements of these regulations for the whole building including the extensions.

(b) If the local authority is satisfied that any such rational assessment meets the requirement of these regulations and in particular of [sub-regulation 6\(a\)](#) it shall accept such assessment which shall be deemed to be part of the application submitted.

(c) If the local authority is not so satisfied it may after first consulting with the competent person who has submitted such assessment and subject to appeal to the Review Board decline to accept the assessment for reasons which it shall furnish in writing to such competent person and require him or her to submit a revised assessment to the satisfaction of the local authority.

- (7) Where in a building any element of the structural, fire protection, artificial ventilation, stormwater disposal or non-water borne sanitary disposal, fire installation or drainage installation system as provided for in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) is or is required to be the subject of a rational design or rational assessment, the person appointed as an approved competent person shall assume responsibility for satisfying the functional regulation relating to that particular system in its entirety.
- (8)
- (a) Where an approved competent person is required in terms of [sub-regulation \(7\)](#) to assume responsibility for the system in its entirety and where parts of the system are to be undertaken by other competent persons, the approved competent person shall assume overall responsibility for the design of such system and shall ensure that:
- (i) the component designs are generally in accordance with the approved application and in accordance with the requirements of these regulations.
 - (ii) the component designs will achieve the necessary co-ordination and interaction of the different elements so as to achieve the objectives of the systems.
 - (iii) in the case of the structural system, the interaction of the various component elements will be such that the structural adequacy of all the parts of the building and the overall stability of the building is assured, but in all cases excluding responsibility for the detailed design of elements carried out by the other competent persons, provided that such exclusion shall not preclude the approved competent person from taking any action which he or she considers necessary in terms of [sub-regulation \(8\)\(b\)](#).
- (b)
- (i) For the purpose of satisfying him or herself of the adequacy of any design or designs contemplated in [sub-regulation \(8\)\(a\)](#) and of their compatibility with any system, measure or installation in its entirety, the approved competent person may at any time after his or her appointment, require the designer or designers of the different elements of the system referred to in [sub-regulation \(8\)\(a\)](#) to complete Form 3 contained in SANS 10400-A as he or she may deem necessary, and return it timeously, or in any event before building construction or installation proceeds. Each such designer shall, when called upon so to do, provide the information and documents concerned in respect of the work he or she has designed.
 - (ii) The person appointed as approved competent person may further require, after consultation with the designer concerned, modifications to the relevant designs, plans and specifications, if in his or her opinion they do not comply with the provisions of these regulations.
 - (iii) Copies of designs, plans and specifications accepted by the approved competent person shall be submitted if so required to the local authority counter-signed by the approved competent person.
 - (iv) Each designer of a part of a system shall on completion of the erection or installation thereof, if called upon to do so by the approved competent person, complete and submit the section of Form 3 relating to inspection contained in SANS 10400-A.
- (c) The provisions of [sub-regulation \(8\)\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) for designs shall also apply in the case of any applicable rational assessments.
- (9)
- (a) Any person appointed by the owner in terms of [sub-regulations \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#), shall apply to the local authority for acceptance as an approved competent person and shall:
- (i) make application, and
 - (ii) declare his or her competence to undertake the relevant duties in the manner prescribed in the

Regulations

on Form 2 contained in SANS 10400-A and shall complete all applicable sections of such form.

- (b) The owner shall also complete the applicable section of Form 2 contained in SANS 10400-A
- (c) The local authority may, subject to appeal to the Review Board, decline to accept the appointment of any person who:
- (i) in completing any portion of Form 2 provides incorrect or incomplete information which in the opinion of the local authority is material to the determination of such applicant's competence;
 - (ii) is not an employee of the owner of the building and is not in possession of professional indemnity insurance cover;
 - (iii) is not professionally registered in terms of the Engineering Professions Act, 2000 (Act No. 46 of 2000), the Architectural Professions Act (Act No. 44 of 2000) or the National Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act No. 27 of 2003);
 - (iv) is in the opinion of the local authority inadequately qualified or has insufficient experience or contextual knowledge to make the determinations that are required in terms of these regulations, provided however that any person that satisfies the relevant definition for a competent person provided in a part of SANS 10400 in relation to the duties contemplated in this sub-regulation, is deemed to satisfy this sub-regulation; and
 - (v) is under investigation by a disciplinary tribunal of the Engineering Council of South Africa, the South African Council for the Architectural Profession or the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions and the chief executive officer of such a Council has expressed an opinion in writing that the applications made by such persons should not be approved in the public interest.

(10)

- (a) Where in respect of any building the local authority, after consideration of:
- (i) the details of registration in respect of category, date and discipline in which the applicant is registered, qualifications, experience, training and contextual knowledge provided in terms of this regulation by any person seeking acceptance of his or her appointment as a competent person, and
 - (ii) the declaration of competence provided by such person in terms of [sub-regulation \(9\)](#),

considers that such person does not possess the degree of competence necessary to undertake the relevant duties, it may decline to accept the appointment of such person, who may appeal to the Review Board.

- (b) If the appeal is upheld, the local authority shall accept the appointment of the appellant as a person competent to under take such duties or any part thereof in respect of such building as the Review Board may decide.

(11) Where the local authority is satisfied with an application in respect of the matters specified in [sub-regulations \(10\)\(a\)\(i\)](#) and [\(ii\)](#) it shall indicate acceptance of the application in the manner specified in Form 2 as contained in SANS 10400-A.

(12)

- (a) On completion of the structural, fire protection or fire installation system for which an approved competent person has been appointed in terms of [sub-regulations \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#), such competent person shall complete and submit to the local authority a fully completed Form 4 as contained in SANS 10400-A in respect of each

such system for which such person has accepted responsibility in terms of [section 14\(2A\)](#) of the Act 103.

- (b) The local authority may require from the owner that an approved competent person submit a copy of the certification of the specific work, other than the structural, fire protection or fire installation, for which he has been appointed on completion of the building.
- (13) Where any person provides any information or certificate required in terms of this regulation or which he or she knows to be incomplete or false, such person shall be guilty of an offence.

A20 CLASSIFICATION AND DESIGNATION OF OCCUPANCIES

- (1) The occupancy of any building shall be classified and designated according to the appropriate occupancy class given in column 1 of [Table 1](#) and such classification shall reflect the primary function of such building: Provided that, in any building divided into two or more areas not having the same primary function, the occupancy of each such area shall be separately classified.
- (2) Notwithstanding the requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#), any area in any building which is used for any purpose ancillary to that of any occupancy classification contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall, subject to adequate facilities and safety measures being provided, not be classified as a separate occupancy.
- (3) Any room or space used for the storage or processing of flammable liquids shall not be deemed to be a [J1](#) occupancy as herein defined if -
 - (a) such liquid is stored in the fuel tank of any engine, motor vehicle, boat or lawnmower;
 - (b) the quantity of liquid to be stored or handled in such room does not exceed 40 litres; or
 - (c) the quantity contemplated in paragraph (b) exceeds 40 litres but does not exceed 200 litres and the closed cup flash point of such liquid is above 40°C.

TABLE 1 - OCCUPANCY OR BUILDING CLASSIFICATION

1	2
Class of occupancy of building	Occupancy
A1	Entertainment and public assembly Occupancy where persons gather to eat, drink, dance or participate in other recreation.
A2	Theatrical and indoor sport Occupancy where persons gather for the viewing of theatrical, operatic, orchestral, choral, cinematographical or sport performances.
A3	Places of instruction Occupancy where school children, students or other persons assemble for the purpose of tuition or learning.
A4	Worship Occupancy where persons assemble for the purpose of worshipping.
A5	Outdoor sport Occupancy where persons view outdoor sport events.
B1	High risk commercial service Occupancy where a non-industrial process is carried out and where either the material handled or the process carried out is liable, in the event of fire, to cause combustion with extreme rapidity or give rise to poisonous fumes, or cause explosions.
B2	Moderate risk commercial service Occupancy where a non-industrial process is carried out and where either the material handled or the process carried out is liable, in the event of fire, to cause combustion with moderate rapidity but is not likely to give rise to poisonous fumes, or cause explosions.
B3	Low risk commercial service Occupancy where a non-industrial process is carried out and where neither the material handled nor the process carried out falls into the high or moderate risk category.
C1	Exhibition hall Occupancy where goods are displayed primarily for viewing by the public.
C2	Museum Occupancy comprising a museum, art gallery or library.
D1	High risk industrial Occupancy where an industrial process is carried out and where either the material handled or the process carried out is liable, in the event of fire, to cause combustion with extreme rapidity or give rise to poisonous fumes, or cause explosions.
D2	Moderate risk industrial Occupancy where an industrial process is carried out and where either the material handled or the process carried out is liable, in the event of fire, to cause combustion with moderate rapidity but is not likely to give rise to poisonous fumes, or cause explosions.
D3	Low risk industrial Occupancy comprising usually unattended mechanical or electrical services

	necessary for the running of a building.
D4	Plant room Occupancy comprising usually unattended mechanical or electrical services necessary for the running of a building.
E1	Place of detention Occupancy where people are detained for punitive or corrective reasons or because of their mental condition.
E2	Hospital Occupancy where people are cared for or treated because of physical or mental disabilities and where they are generally bed-ridden.
E3	Other institutional (residential) Occupancy where groups of people who either are not fully fit, or who are restricted in their movements or their ability to make decisions, reside and are cared for
E4	Health care Occupancy which is a common place of long term or transient living for a number of unrelated persons consisting of a single unit on its own site who, due to varying degrees of incapacity, are provided with personal care services or are undergoing medical treatment.
F1	Large shop Occupancy where merchandise is displayed and offered for sale to the public and the floor area exceeds 250 m ² .
F2	Small shop Occupancy where merchandise is displayed and offered for sale to the public and the floor area does not exceed 250 m ² .
F3	Wholesaler's store Occupancy where goods are displayed and stored and where only a limited selected group of persons is present at any one time.
G1	Offices Occupancy comprising offices, banks, consulting rooms and other similar usage.
H1	Hotel Occupancy where persons rent furnished rooms, not being dwelling units.
H2	Dormitory Occupancy where groups of people are accommodated in one room
H3	Domestic residence Occupancy consisting of two or more dwelling units on a single site.
H4	Dwelling house Occupancy consisting of a dwelling unit on its own site, including a garage and other domestic outbuilding, if any.
H5	Hospitality Occupancy where unrelated persons rent furnished rooms on a transient basis within a dwelling house or domestic residence with sleeping accommodation for not more than 16 persons within a dwelling unit
J1	High risk storage Occupancy where material is stored and where the stored material is liable, in the event of fire, to cause combustion with extreme rapidity or give rise to poisonous fumes, or cause explosions.
J2	Moderate risk storage Occupancy where material is stored and where the stored material is liable, in the

	event of fire, to cause combustion with moderate rapidity but is not likely to give rise to poisonous fumes, or cause explosions.
J3	Low risk storage Occupancy where the material stored does not fall into the high or moderate risk category.
J4	Parking garage Occupancy used for storing or parking of more than 10 motor vehicles.

A21 POPULATION

- (1) The population of any room or storey or portion thereof shall be taken as the actual population of such room, storey or portion thereof where such population is known or, where such population is not known, the population shall be calculated from the criteria given in [Table 2](#).
- (2) In the case of any occupancy classified as [E1](#), where the total floor area is more than 500 m², that portion of the floor area that is in excess of 500 m² shall, for the purposes of calculation of the population be reduced by an amount of 20%.

TABLE 2 - DESIGN POPULATION

1	2
Class of occupancy of room or storey or portion thereof	Population
A1 , A2 , A4 , A5	Number of fixed seats or 1 person per m ² if there are no fixed seats
E1 , E3 , H1 , H3 , H4	2 persons per bedroom
E4	16 persons provided that the total number of persons per room is not more than 4
H5	16 persons per dwelling unit provided that the total number of persons per room is not more than 4
G1	1 person per 15 m ²
J1 , J2 , J3 , J4	1 person per 50 m ²
C1 , E2 , F1 , F2	1 person per 10 m ²
B1 , B2 , B3 , D1 , D2 , D3	1 person per 15 m ²
C2 , F3	1 person per 20 m ²
A3 , H2	1 person per 5 m ²

A22 NOTICE OF INTENTION TO COMMENCE ERECTION OR DEMOLITION OF A BUILDING, AND NOTICES OF INSPECTION

- (1)
- (a) No work in connection with the erection or demolition of any building shall be commenced on the site unless notice, in the form required by the local authority, has been given to such local authority by the owner of such building, stating the date on which such erection or demolition will commence.
 - (b) Such notice shall in the case of the erection of a building be given at least four days, exclusive of a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday, and in the case of the demolition of a building, at least 10 days, exclusive of a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday, before such work commences.
- (2) Notice in the form required by the local authority shall be given by the owner to such local authority of a date which shall be at least two working days from the date of receipt by it of such notice on which, as the case may be -
- (a) any fire installation will be connected to any communication pipe;
 - (b) trenches or excavations will be ready for inspection prior to the placing of concrete for any foundation; or
 - (c) any drainage installation will be ready for inspection and testing.
 - (d) the building will be completed.
- (3) No owner shall construct any foundation until the trenches or excavations have been inspected and approved by the local authority, and such owner shall not backfill or enclose a drainage installation until such installation has been inspected, tested and approved by the local authority: Provided that this requirement shall not apply if such inspection and testing has not been carried out by the end of the working day which has the first date mentioned in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#).
- (4) Any owner who fails to comply with the requirements of this regulation shall be guilty of an offence.

A23 TEMPORARY BUILDINGS

- (1) On receipt of any application to erect a building which the applicant has declared to be a temporary building, the local authority may, subject to the provisions of [sub-regulations \(2\), \(3\) and \(4\)](#), grant provisional authorization to the applicant to proceed with the erection of such building in accordance with any conditions or directions specified in such authorization.
- (2) Before granting such authorisation the local authority may require the submission of -
 - (a) a statement of the period for which authorization is required;
 - (b) a site plan;
 - (c) layout drawings in sufficient detail to enable the local authority to determine the general size, form, materials of construction and use of the proposed building; and
 - (d) any structural detail required by the local authority to determine the structural safety of the proposed building.
- (3) The local authority shall grant the authorization contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) for a limited period, to be determined with regard to the period specified by the applicant.
- (4) The local authority may at the request of the owner grant approval for one or more extensions of the period contemplated in [sub-regulation \(3\)](#): Provided that where it is intended that the public should have access to such building each such request shall be accompanied by a certificate signed by an approved competent person, indicating that the condition of the structural system is satisfactory.
- (5) The owner of such building may, not later than the last day of the period contemplated in [sub-regulation \(3\)](#), submit to the local authority such additional plans and details as required by the local authority in order to consider an application in terms of [section 4](#) of the Act.
- (6) Where such local authority has granted approval in respect of an application contemplated in [sub-regulation \(5\)](#) the owner shall submit to the local authority an affidavit stating that any part of such building erected in terms of the provisional authorization has been erected in accordance with the plans and details contemplated in [sub-regulation \(5\)](#).
- (7) If any plans and details contemplated in [sub-regulation \(5\)](#) have not been submitted to such local authority or if such local authority has refused to grant approval in respect thereof, the owner shall forthwith remove or demolish such building.

A24 STANDARDIZATION OF INTERPRETATION

- (1) Where so requested, in writing, by any local authority, the owner of any building or any person with an interest in such building, the council may examine the plans, specifications or other documents which accompanied or which are intended to accompany any application to the local authority in question, perform any tests that it considers necessary and inspect the site on which such building is to be erected, and issue a report in connection therewith.
- (2) Where the council finds that the proposed building complies with all the relevant requirements of these regulations it shall report accordingly, and any application for approval to erect such building, where accompanied by such report shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of the Act: Provided that such report shall clearly identify any plans, specifications or other documents which have been examined by the council.

A25 GENERAL ENFORCEMENT

- (1) No person shall use any building or cause or permit any building to be used for a purpose other than the purpose shown on the approved plans of such building, or for a purpose which causes a change in the class of occupancy as contemplated in these regulations, whether such plans were approved in terms of the Act or in terms of any law in force at any time before the date of commencement of the Act, unless such building is suitable, having regard to the requirements of these regulations, for such first-mentioned purpose or for such changed class of occupancy.
- (2) Any person who contravenes a provision of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be guilty of an offence, and the local authority may serve a notice on such person calling upon him forthwith to cease such contravention.
- (3) Where the erection of any building was completed before the date of commencement of the Act and such erection was in contravention of the provisions of any law in force before such date, the local authority may take any action it may have been competent to take in terms of such law.
- (4) Where any building was being erected before the date of commencement of the Act in contravention of the provisions of any law in force before such date and the erection of such building is continued on or after such date in contravention of such provisions or of the provisions of the Act, the person who continues so to erect such building shall be guilty of an offence.
- (5) Any person who, having obtained approval in terms of the Act for the erection of any building, deviates to any material degree from any plan, drawing or particulars approved by the local authority shall, except where such deviation has been approved, be guilty of an offence.
- (6) The local authority may serve a notice on any person contemplated in [section 4\(4\)](#) of the Act or [sub-regulation \(4\)](#) or [\(5\)](#), ordering such person forthwith to stop the erection of the building concerned or to comply with such approval, as the case may be: Provided that where any deviation is found to be necessary during the course of construction of such building, the local authority may authorize the work to continue but shall require that an amended plan, drawing or particulars to cover such deviation is submitted and approved before a certificate of occupancy is issued.
- (7) Whether or not a notice contemplated in [sub-regulation \(6\)](#) has been served, the local authority may serve a notice on the owner of any building contemplated in [sub-regulation \(4\)](#) or [\(5\)](#), ordering such owner to rectify or demolish the building in question by a date specified in such notice.
- (8) If, before the date specified for the rectification or demolition contemplated in [sub-regulation \(7\)](#), the owner satisfies the local authority that he has complied with the requirements contained in these regulations, the notice contemplated in [sub-regulation \(7\)](#) shall be deemed to have been withdrawn.
- (9) Where any building is being or has been erected and any contravention of these regulations other than those relating to matters referred to in [sub-regulation \(4\)](#) or [\(5\)](#) has been committed, the local authority shall serve a notice on the owner of such building and in such notice shall specify a date by which such owner shall have complied with the regulations, cite the regulations contravened and specify the steps to be taken in order to comply with such regulations.
- (10) Where any building, excluding a temporary building, is being or has been erected without the prior approval contemplated in [section 4\(1\)](#) of the Act, the local authority shall serve a notice on the owner of such building, calling upon him to obtain the approval, in writing, as required by the Act, by a date specified in such notice.
- (11) Any person who fails to comply with any notice contemplated in this regulation shall be guilty of an offence.

PART B - STRUCTURAL DESIGN

B1 DESIGN REQUIREMENT

- (1) Any building and any structural element or component thereof shall be designed to provide strength, stability, serviceability and durability under all actions which can reasonably be expected to occur in accordance with accepted principles of structural design, and so that it will not impair the integrity of any other building or property.
- (2) Any such building shall be so designed that in the event of accidental overloading the structural system will not suffer disastrous or progressive collapse which is disproportionate to the original cause.
- (3) The requirements of [sub-regulations \(1\)](#) and [\(2\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where such building is designed in accordance with SANS 10400-B.

PART C - DIMENSIONS

C1 ROOMS AND BUILDINGS

- (1) Any room or space shall have dimensions that will ensure that such room or space is fit for the purpose for which it is intended.
- (2) The floor area of any dwelling unit shall not be less than that necessary to provide one habitable room and a separate room containing toilet facilities.
- (3) The requirements of [sub-regulations \(1\)](#) and [\(2\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the area and plan dimensions of any room or space, the room heights and, in the case of any dwelling house, the floor area comply with SANS 10400-C.

PART D - PUBLIC SAFETY

D1 CHANGE IN LEVEL

The protection of the edge of any balcony, bridge, flat roof of similar place shall be designed to prevent any person from falling from such balcony, bridge, flat roof or similar place.

D2 PEDESTRIAN ENTRANCES TO PARKING AREAS IN BUILDINGS

Where any pedestrian entrance is provided to a vehicle parking area in any building, such entrance shall be so positioned, marked or protected that no pedestrian can unintentionally walk into the path of any moving vehicle: Provided that this requirement shall not apply in respect of any building classified as [H4](#) in terms of [regulation A20](#).

D3 RAMPS

Any ramp or driveway shall be so designed that it is safe when used and is fit for the purpose for which it is intended.

D4 SWIMMING POOLS AND SWIMMING BATHS

- (1) The owner of any site which contains a swimming pool shall ensure that access to such swimming pool is controlled.
- (2) Any owner who fails to comply with the requirement of [sub-regulation 1](#) shall be guilty of an offence.

D5 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulations D1](#), [D3](#) and [D4](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where change in level, the design of ramps and driveways, or access to swimming pools, as the case may be, complies with SANS 10400-D.

PART E - DEMOLITION WORK

E1 DEMOLITION OF ANY BUILDING

- (1) No owner of any site shall demolish or cause or permit to be demolished any building without the prior written permission of the local authority.
- (2) The local authority may, in granting such permission, impose any condition or requirements contemplated in [sub-regulations F1\(4\)](#) and [\(5\)](#) and [regulation F2](#) for the safety, health and convenience of the public, and for the safety of any other building or installation which in its opinion may be affected by such demolition.
- (3) No person shall at any time during the course of or after the demolition of a building leave it in a condition dangerous to the public or any adjoining property.
- (4) Where a condition contemplated in [sub-regulation \(3\)](#) arises the local authority may serve a notice on such person requiring him to make the site safe, and if he fails so to do, the local authority may itself carry out the necessary work and recover the cost thereof from such person.

E2 SAFEGUARDING OF BASEMENTS

Where any building is demolished to the level of the ground and such building contained a basement, the owner of such building shall provide or cause to be provided safe lateral support to the sides of such basement.

E3 PROHIBITION OF DANGEROUS METHODS

The local authority may prohibit the use of any method to be applied in the demolition of any building where in its opinion such method will create or cause to be created any danger to any person or other building or property, and where it so prohibits it shall, on the request of the owner of such building, give its reasons, in writing, for such prohibition.

E4 GENERAL PENALTY

Any person who contravenes any requirement of the regulations of this Part or fails to comply with any notice, condition or order issued thereunder, shall be guilty of an offence.

PART F - SITE OPERATIONS

F1 PROTECTION OF THE PUBLIC

- (1) In cases where danger or serious inconvenience to the public may ensue from the demolition or erection of a building on any site, the local authority may require that the owner of such site, before such work is commenced, shall erect a fence, hoarding or barricade to prevent the public from entering such site and to protect them from the activities on such site.
- (2) Such fence, hoarding or barricade shall for as long as is necessary be retained and maintained by such owner in a safe condition, and any access to such site, and the means thereof, shall be subject to approval.
- (3) No part of such fence, hoarding or barricade shall be removed without the permission, in writing, of the local authority until the work has been completed.
- (4) Any person undertaking any work of erection or demolition on any site shall confine all operations in connection with such work within the boundaries of such site and shall not encroach upon or over any street or public place abutting such site, except with the prior written approval of the local authority, and subject to the conditions contained in such approval with regard to the safety and convenience of persons using such street or public place.
- (5) The local authority may, before or during the erection or demolition of any building, impose any reasonable conditions in addition to the conditions and requirements contemplated in this regulation, for the purpose of safeguarding the interests of the general public, and every condition so imposed shall be observed by the owner.
- (6) Any owner who contravenes or causes or permits any other person to contravene a requirement of this regulation or fails to comply with any notice served on him by the local authority ordering compliance with this regulation, or contravenes any condition contained in any approval, shall be guilty of an offence.

F2 DAMAGE TO LOCAL AUTHORITY'S PROPERTY

- (1) Where any work connected with the demolition or erection of any building may, in the opinion of the local authority, cause or have any detrimental effect on the strength, standard, safety, quality or position of any property belonging to or vested in such local authority, the local authority may require the owner of such building to pay to the local authority such deposit or give such security, as it may require to cover the costs of the repair of any damage which may be caused by such work.
- (2) In the event of damage to the local authority's property being so caused the local authority may appropriate the amount of the deposit or security contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) towards the costs of repairing such damage: Provided that if the amount of the deposit or security exceeds such costs, the balance shall be refunded to the owner: Provided further that if such costs exceed the amount of the deposit or security, such owner shall be liable to the local authority for the deficit.
- (3) Where any deposit contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) has not been lodged with the local authority, the owner of such building shall pay the cost of such repair to the local authority on demand, failing which the local authority may recover such cost from the owner in a court of competent jurisdiction.

F3 GEOTECHNICAL SITE AND ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- (1) Where the local authority has reason to believe that a site upon which a building is to be erected:
 - (a) is situated on contaminated land;

- (b) is situated on potentially unstable land to the extent, insofar as risk can reasonably be foreseen, that ground movements caused by land-slip, slope stability or subsidence may impair the stability of the building or part thereof or pose a threat to the safety of occupants; or
- (c) is underlain by subsoils which have the potential to cause foundation movements caused by swelling, consolidation, shrinkage or settlements and as a result may impair the stability of the building or part thereof;

it shall on receipt of an application for the erection of the building inform the applicant accordingly.

- (2) On receipt of any such notification or where the applicant is aware of such conditions or they are evident, such applicant shall appoint an approved competent person to undertake an appropriate geotechnical site investigation.
- (3) Such approved competent person shall, as appropriate, determine in accordance with accepted principles, methods and technical considerations, as relevant:
 - (a) whether or not the erection of a building on the site under [\(1\)\(a\)](#) or [\(1\)\(b\)](#) above should be permitted, and if so under what conditions, providing full details of the measures which need to be effected to fulfil such conditions and
 - (b) the magnitude of any potential total and differential movements to which the building or part thereof may be subjected to,

and shall report to the owner and the local authority such findings.

- (4) Geotechnical investigations conducted in accordance with the requirements of SANS 10400-B in the case of dolomite lands and SANS 10400-H in the case of foundations for buildings shall in terms of [F3\(2\)](#) be deemed to be appropriate investigations.
- (5) The measures contemplated in [sub-regulations \(3\)\(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) shall be applied in the erection of the building and the site works

F4 PREPARATION OF SITE

- (1) Before any foundation is laid the area to be covered by any building shall be properly cleared of vegetable matter, tree stumps, timber and other cellulose material, debris or refuse and any material contaminated with faecal matter.
- (2) Where any site upon which any building is to be erected is waterlogged, seasonally waterlogged or saturated, or where any building is to be so situated that water will drain naturally towards it, drainage shall be provided to direct such water away from such site or building to a stormwater drain or to dispose of it in some other safe approved manner.

F5 SOIL POISONING

Where so required by the local authority, the soil in all areas within the site as defined in code of practice SANS 10124 shall be treated in accordance with the recommendations of SANS 10124.

- (1) Buildings shall, where so required by the local authority or in areas of high termite infestation, be protected from subterranean termite activity.
- (2) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the means of termite protection complies with SANS 10400-F.

F6 CONTROL OF UNREASONABLE LEVELS OF DUST AND NOISE

- (1) The owner of any land on which excavation work is in progress or on which any building is being erected or demolished shall take precautions in the working area and on surrounding roads and footways to limit to a reasonable level the amount of dust arising from the work or surroundings thereof.
- (2)
- (a) No person shall during the course of any building, demolition or excavation work use any machine, machinery, engine, apparatus, tool or contrivance, which in the opinion of the local authority may unreasonably disturb or interfere with the amenity of the neighbourhood:
- (i) on a public holiday or Sunday
 - (ii) before 06:00 or after 17:00 on any Saturday; and
 - (iii) before 06:00 or after 18:00 on any day other than those days contemplated in subparagraphs (i) and (ii)
- (b) The prohibition in paragraph (a) shall not apply in any circumstances in which the use of such machine, machinery, engine, apparatus, tool or contrivance -
- (i) is urgently necessary in order to preserve the life, safety or health of any person;
 - (ii) is urgently necessary to preserve property;
 - (iii) has been authorized by the local authority; or
 - (iv) is necessary for the execution of work being carried out on behalf of any public authority.
- (3) Any owner or person who contravenes a provision of this regulation shall be guilty of an offence.

F7 CUTTING INTO, LAYING OPEN AND DEMOLISHING CERTAIN WORK

- (1) Where the local authority on reasonable grounds, believes that any work carried out in connection with the erection of any building is not in accordance with the provisions of these regulations or any approval or authority granted thereunder, such local authority may, in order to establish whether such work is in accordance with such provision, approval or authority, by notice in writing, order the owner of such building -
- (a) to supply satisfactory proof that such work is in accordance with such provision, approval or authority; or
 - (b) to cause such work to be cut into, laid open or demolished to the extent required by the local authority; or
 - (c) to cause a test of such work to be carried out within such time and to such extent and by such person as it specified in such notice.
- (2) (a) Where such local authority orders the owner to cause a test to be carried out as contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)\(c\)](#), a written report in regard to such test shall be submitted by the owner to the local authority, which report shall be signed by the person who carried out the test and which shall contain details in regard to the testing apparatus, methods and materials used in the test, the conditions under which such test was carried out and the results obtained during the test and at the conclusion thereof.
- (b) Where as a result of a report contemplated in paragraph (a) the local authority is not satisfied that the work concerned is in compliance with the requirements referred to in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#), the local authority may, by notice served on the owner, order the owner to take such steps as it deems necessary, and within such period as is stated in such notice, to ensure that there is such compliance, or the local authority may in such

notice order the owner to cause such work to be cut into, laid open or demolished as contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)\(b\)](#).

- (3)
- (a) Any owner having been ordered to cause any work to be cut into, laid open, demolished or tested in terms of this regulation shall not continue with such work or with any other work affected thereby unless the local authority has authorized him, in writing, to continue.
 - (b) Where the local authority is satisfied that work on the affected part of the building may proceed, it shall forthwith give authorization to so proceed.
- (4) Where such cutting into, laying open, demolishing or testing reveals that a contravention of the requirements of these regulations, or of any approval or authority granted by the local authority, has taken place, or if the necessity for such cutting into, laying open, demolishing or testing is attributable wholly or partly to any contravention of the proviso to [sub-regulation A4\(1\)\(b\)](#) or the requirements of regulation [A22](#) or [A25](#), the cost of such work and any making good subsequent thereto shall be borne by the owner, and in any other case by such local authority.
- (5) Any owner who contravenes any provision of this regulation or who fails to comply with any notice served on him in terms thereof, shall be guilty of an offence.

F8 WASTE MATERIAL ON SITE

- (1) Where in the opinion of the local authority, excessive rubble, rubbish, other debris or combustible waste material is allowed to accumulate on a site before or during building operations, it may, by written notice, order the owner of such site to have such rubble, rubbish, other debris or combustible waste material removed within the period specified in such notice.
- (2) Any owner who fails to comply with such notice shall be guilty of an offence and the local authority may remove the said rubble, rubbish, other debris or combustible waste material from such site and may recover the costs of such removal from the owner.

F9 CLEANING OF SITE

- (1) Any owner or person erecting or demolishing any building shall remove any surplus material and matter arising from such erection or demolition from the site and from any other land or public street or public place affected by such material or matter during or after the completion of such erection or demolition, failing which the local authority may, by written notice, order the owner of such building to have such surplus material and matter removed within a period specified in such notice.
- (2) Any owner or person who fails to comply with a provision of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or a notice served on him in terms thereof, shall be guilty of an offence.

F10 BUILDER'S SHEDS

- (1) Any owner or person carrying out or performing work in connection with the erection or the demolition of any building, may erect on the site of such work such temporary builder's sheds as may be necessary.
- (2) The construction and location of such sheds shall be to the satisfaction of the local authority and such sheds shall be maintained in good order.
- (3) Subject to the provisions of [sub-regulation \(6\)](#) such sheds shall only be used for a purpose connected with the carrying out or the performance of the work referred to in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#).
- (4) Where such sheds are not constructed, located or maintained in terms of this regulation, the local authority may

serve a notice on such owner or person to move, reconstruct or repair or improve the condition of such sheds within a time specified in such notice, or if use thereof is being made other than that permitted in terms of this regulation, to cease such unpermitted use.

- (5) On completion or cessation of the work referred to in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or where such sheds are no longer necessary for the purpose for which they were erected, they shall be removed from the site by the owner.
- (6) Security personnel employed in connection with a building which is being or which is to be erected or demolished may be accommodated in builder's sheds, subject to such requirements and conditions as may be necessary for the safeguarding of public health and the health of such personnel and for avoiding nuisance or inconvenience to persons in the vicinity of such building.
- (7) Any owner or person who fails to comply with any provision of this regulation or any notice served on him in terms thereof, shall be guilty of an offence.

F11 SANITARY FACILITIES

- (1) No owner or person shall commence or continue the erection or demolition of any building unless approved sanitary facilities for all personnel employed on or in connection with such work have been provided or are available on the site or, with the permission of the local authority, at some other place. Provided that where such facilities have not been so provided the local authority may order the cessation of such work until the required facilities have been provided, and, should such order not be complied with, the local authority may install such facilities and recover the costs of such installation from the owner of the site.
- (2) Any owner or person who contravenes any provision of this regulation, or fails to comply with an order served on him in terms thereof, shall be guilty of an offence.
- (3) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the provision of sanitary facilities complies with SANS 10400-F.

PART G - EXCAVATIONS

G1 GENERAL STABILITY REQUIREMENT

- (1) Where any excavation related to a building is carried out or is to be carried out on any site and such excavation may impair the safety or stability of any property or service, the owner of such site shall take adequate precautionary measures to ensure that the safety and stability of such property or service is maintained.
- (2) While any such excavation remains open, and during the placing of any foundation within it, such excavation shall be maintained in a safe condition by the owner or person carrying out such excavation.
- (3) Where the safety or stability of any property or service is likely to be impaired by such excavation, or where the depth, at any point, of such excavation is likely to be more than 3m, the owner of the site shall -
 - (a) obtain the prior written authorization of the local authority for such excavation; and
 - (b) take the precautionary measures specified by the local authority or an approved competent person in such authorization.
- (4) The owner of any site shall, at least seven days prior to the commencement of any excavation contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#), notify the local authority in writing of his intention to excavate.
- (5) Any owner or person who fails to comply with any requirement of this regulation, shall be guilty of an offence.

G2 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulation G1\(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the excavation complies with SANS 10400-G.

PART H - FOUNDATIONS

H1 GENERAL REQUIREMENT

- (1) The foundation of any building shall be designed and constructed to safely transmit all the actions which can reasonably be expected to occur from such building to the ground and in such a manner that any local damage (including cracking), deformation or vibration do not compromise the efficient use of a building or the functioning of any element of a building or equipment within a building
- (2) The requirement of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design and construction of such foundation complies with SANS 10400-H.

PART J - FLOORS

J1 GENERAL REQUIREMENT

- (1) Any floor of any building shall -
 - (a) be designed and constructed to safely support its own weight and any actions which can reasonably be expected to occur and in such a manner that any local damage (including cracking), deformation or vibration do not compromise the efficient use of the building or the functioning of equipment supported by such floor; and
 - (b) have a fire resistance appropriate to its use and where required, be non-combustible.
- (2) The floor of any laundry, kitchen, shower-room, bathroom or room containing a toilet pan or urinal shall be water-resistant.
- (3) Any suspended timber floor in a building shall be provided with adequate under-floor ventilation.
- (4) Where any concrete floor slab is supported on ground or filling, such floor shall be so constructed that any moisture present in such ground or filling is prevented from penetrating such concrete floor slab.
- (5) The requirements of [sub-regulations \(1\), \(2\), \(3\) and \(4\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design and construction of any floor complies with SANS 10400-J: Provided that where the local authority deems it necessary in order to satisfy the requirements of [sub-regulation \(4\)](#), such local authority may require that the entire area within the foundation walls of any building be covered by a suitable damp-proof membrane, and in the case of the floor of a basement or semi-basement where the highest known level of the extreme watertable is higher than the floor level of the basement to such an extent that uplift of the floor might occur, the local authority may require that adequate sub-soil drains under the floor be provided together with means of removing the water so drained.

PART K - WALLS

K1 STRUCTURAL STRENGTH AND STABILITY

Any wall shall be designed and constructed to safely sustain any actions which can reasonably be expected to occur and in such a manner that any local damage (including cracking) or deformation do not compromise the opening and closing of doors and windows or the weather tightness of the wall and in the case of any structural wall, be capable of safely transferring such actions to the foundations supporting such wall.

K2 WATER PENETRATION

- (1) Any wall shall be so constructed that it will adequately resist the penetration of water into any part of the building where it would be detrimental to the health of occupants or to the durability of such building.
- (2) Where a building includes a basement or semi-basement, the local authority may, if it considers that conditions on the site on which the building is to be erected necessitate integrated designs for the penetration of water into such basement or semi-basement applicable to all construction elements or components thereof, require the submission of such designs for approval. Construction shall be in accordance with the requirements of the approved design.

K3 ROOF FIXING

Where any roof truss, rafter or beam is supported by any wall provision shall be made to fix such truss, rafter or beam to such wall in a secure manner that will ensure that any actions to which the roof may normally be subjected will be transmitted to such wall.

K4 BEHAVIOUR IN FIRE

Any wall shall have combustibility and fire resistance characteristics appropriate to the location and use of such wall.

K5 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulations K1](#), [K2](#), [K3](#) and [K4](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the structural strength and stability of any wall, the prevention of water penetration into or through such wall, the fixing of any roof to such wall and the behaviour in a fire of such wall, as the case may be, comply with SANS 10400-K.

PART L - ROOFS

L1 GENERAL REQUIREMENT

The roof of any building shall be so designed and constructed that it -

- (a) safely sustains any actions which can reasonably be expected to occur and in such a manner that any local damage (including cracking) or deformation do not compromise its functioning;
- (b) is adequately anchored against wind uplift;
- (c) is durable and does not allow the penetration of rainwater or any other surface water to its interior;
- (d) does not allow the accumulation of any water upon its surface; and
- (e) as part of a roof and ceiling assembly, provides adequate height in any room immediately below such assembly.

L2 FIRE RESISTANCE AND COMBUSTIBILITY

The fire resistance of any roof or roof and ceiling assembly complete with light fittings or any other component which penetrates the ceiling, shall be appropriate to its use and where necessary such roof or roof and ceiling assembly shall be non-combustible.

L3 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulations L1](#) and [L2](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where any roof or roof and ceiling assembly, as the case may be, complies with SANS 10400-L.

PART M - STAIRWAYS

M1 GENERAL REQUIREMENT

Any stairway, including any wall, screen, railing or balustrade to such stairway, shall:

- (a) be capable of safely sustaining any actions which can reasonably be expected to occur and in such a manner that any local damage (including cracking) or deformation do not compromise its functioning;
- (b) permit safe movement of persons from floor to floor;and
- (c) have dimensions appropriate to its use.

M2 FIRE REQUIREMENT

A stairway contemplated in [regulation M1](#) shall comply with the relevant requirements in [Part T](#) of these regulations.

M3 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulations M1](#) and [M2](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design of any stairway complies with SANS 10400-M.

PART N - GLAZING

N1 TYPE AND FIXING OF GLAZING

- (1) Any material used in the glazing of any building shall be of a secure and durable type and shall be fixed in an manner and position that will ensure that it will -
 - (a) safely sustain any wind actions which can reasonably be expected;
 - (b) not allow penetration of water to the interior of the building; and
 - (c) be apparent, in the case of clear glazing, to any person approaching such glazing.
- (2) Class, plastics and organic coated glass shall be selected in order to provide, in the case of human impact, a degree of safety appropriate in relation to -
 - (a) the position of the glazed area; and
 - (b) the number and likely behaviour pattern of persons expected to be in close proximity to such glazed area.
- (3) The requirements of [sub-regulations \(1\)](#) and [\(2\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the glazing material is selected, fixed and marked in accordance with SANS 10400-N.

PART O - LIGHTING AND VENTILATION

O1 LIGHTING AND VENTILATION REQUIREMENT

- (1) Any habitable room, bathroom, shower-room and room containing a toilet pan or urinal, or any room which is a parking garage shall be provided with a means of lighting and ventilation which will enable such room to be used, without detriment to health or safety or causing any nuisance, for the purpose for which it is designed.
- (2) The requirement of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the lighting and ventilation are in accordance with SANS 10400-O.
- (3)
 - (a) Notwithstanding the provision of any openings for natural light in accordance with [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) any room contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or any corridor, lobby or staircase serving such room shall be provided with a means of artificial lighting -
 - (i) for periods when natural lighting is inadequate; or
 - (ii) where the size or shape of any such room, or the glazing material used in any such opening, will not permit sufficient natural light effectively to illuminate all parts of such room.
 - (b) Notwithstanding the provision of openings for natural ventilation in accordance with [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) any room subject to the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993), shall in terms of the said Act be provided with artificial ventilation as prescribed by such Act; and any room contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) which is -
 - (i) a room which, due to conditions of high temperature, may be dangerous to safety or health;
 - (ii) a room where there will be dust, gas, vapour or volatile matter and hazardous biological agents which might be dangerous to safety or health; or
 - (iii) used for any purpose for which natural ventilation is not suitable,shall be provided with a means of artificial ventilation.

O2 SPECIAL PROVISION OF NATURAL LIGHTING

Any habitable room in any dwelling house or dwelling unit, or any bedroom in any building used for residential or institutional occupancy shall, notwithstanding the provision of artificial lighting, be provided with at least one opening for natural light in accordance with [sub-regulation O1\(1\)](#).

O3 APPROVAL OF ARTIFICIAL VENTILATION SYSTEMS

No person shall without the prior written approval of the local authority install any artificial ventilation system in any building: provided that this prohibition shall not apply in the case of room air conditioners or other individual appliances installed for comfort.

O4 DESIGN OF ARTIFICIAL VENTILATION SYSTEMS

Any rational design of an artificial ventilation system shall be carried out by or under the supervision of an approved competent person who shall certify in accordance with the requirements of Regulation A19 that the system has been designed to comply with [regulation O1](#).

O5 ARTIFICIAL VENTILATION PLANT

- (1) Any plant forming part of an artificial ventilation system shall be so designed, located and protected that -
- (a) any condensate from such plant cannot be the cause of danger or nuisance to the public;
 - (b) inspection and servicing can be undertaken; and
 - (c) unauthorized persons cannot tamper with such plant.
- (2) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design, location and protection of such plant comply with SANS 10400-O.

O6 TESTING OF ARTIFICIAL VENTILATION SYSTEMS

- (1) The owner shall at acceptable intervals of time submit to the local authority test reports indicating that any artificial ventilation system installed in terms of these regulations is operating in the designed manner,
- (2) Records and log books shall be kept of the commissioning information, operational management, monitoring and maintenance and repair of all ventilation plant, including individual ventilation fans.
- (3) Where specialist ventilation plants are provided as part of the protection measures against hazardous substances, and for the protection of occupants and to ensure safe procedures, such as in hospital theatres, such plant shall be inspected and validated at least every 12 months by an independent competent person.

O7 FIRE REQUIREMENTS

In addition to the requirements of this Part, lighting and ventilation shall be provided to comply with [Part T](#) of these regulations.

PART P - DRAINAGE

P1 COMPULSORY DRAINAGE OF BUILDINGS

- (1)
- (a) Where in respect of any building a suitable means of disposal of water-borne sewage is available the owner of such building shall provide a drainage installation.
 - (b) Where there is no such means of disposal, sewage shall be disposed of in accordance with [Part Q](#) of these regulations.
- (2)
- (a) Where a sewer is or becomes available for the drainage of such building the owner of such building shall, at his own cost, lay, alter or extend any drain serving such building to terminate at a location and level as prescribed by the local authority for the connection to such sewer.
 - (b) In the case of any existing building the local authority shall serve a notice, in writing, upon the owner stating the period within which the connection contemplated in paragraph (a) shall be made.
- (3) Where a connecting sewer has been provided to any site the owner of such site shall cause all sewage discharged from any building on such site to be conveyed by a drain to such connecting sewer.
- (4) Where the owner of such building fails to lay, alter or extend any drain in terms of [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) the local authority may lay, alter or extend such drain and recover the costs thereof from the owner: Provided that the local authority shall, before carrying out such work give not less than 14 days notice to such owner of its intention to carry out such work.
- (5) Any owner who fails to comply with any requirement of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#), shall be guilty of an offence.

P2 DESIGN OF DRAINAGE INSTALLATIONS

- (1) Any drainage installation in any building shall be so designed and constructed that -
- (a) an adequate number of sanitary fixtures is provided in relation to the population and class of occupancy of such building;
 - (b) such installation is capable of carrying the design hydraulic load;
 - (c) such installation is capable of discharging into any common drain, connecting sewer or sewer provided to accept such discharge;
 - (d) all components and materials used in such installation are watertight;
 - (e) no nuisance or danger to health will be caused as a result of the operation of any such installation;
 - (f) any drain in such system is of such strength, having regard to the manner in which it is bedded or supported, that it is capable of sustaining the actions to which it may normally be subjected and that it is, where necessary, protected against any drainage;
 - (g) all sanitary fixtures are so located that they are easily accessible to those persons they are intended to serve;
 - (h) any necessary inspection, cleaning and maintenance required, may be performed through the means of access provided.

- (2) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where such installation complies with SANS 10400-P: Provided that where a local authority is of the opinion that the size or complexity of the drainage installation in any building renders it essential for such installation to be the subject of an approved rational design prepared by an approved competent person, such local authority shall, in writing, notify the owner of such building of its reasons for the necessity for such design and may require such owner to submit for approval plans and particulars of a complete drainage installation based on such design.

P3 CONTROL OF OBJECTIONABLE DISCHARGE

- (1) No person shall cause or permit sewage discharged from any sanitary fixture to enter
- (a) any stormwater drain, stormwater sewer or excavated or constructed watercourse;
 - (b) subject to the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998), any river, stream or natural watercourse whether ordinarily dry or otherwise; or
 - (c) any street or other site.
- (2) No person shall cause or permit stormwater to enter any drainage installation on any site.
- (3) The local authority may by notice in writing order the owner of any site to execute, at his own cost, any precautionary measures required by the local authority to prevent such entry contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) or [\(2\)](#), as the case may be.
- (4) No person shall, without the written permission of the local authority, discharge or cause the discharge of any water from a swimming pool, fountain or reservoir, either directly or indirectly, onto any public street or public place, or onto any site other than onto the site upon which such swimming pool, fountain or reservoir is situated.
- (5) Any person who contravenes or permits the contravention of any requirement of this regulation or fails to comply with a notice served on him in terms of [sub-regulation \(3\)](#), shall be guilty of an offence.

P4 INDUSTRIAL EFFLUENT

- (1)
- (a) Where any person has obtained approval to discharge into any drain any liquid or solid matter, other than soil water or waste water, and where any additional drainage and other installations including storage, pre-treatment and metering installations are required by the local authority as a condition of such approval, such person shall submit any plans and other details of such installations required by the local authority.
 - (b) The installations contemplated in paragraph (a) shall be constructed in accordance with the relevant requirements of these regulations and shall be maintained in good working order.
- (2) Any person who constructs an installation contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) other than in accordance with such approval, shall be guilty of an offence.

P5 DISCONNECTIONS

- (1) Where any soil fixture is permanently disconnected from any soil pipe, or where any soil pipe is permanently disconnected from any drain, the owner shall seal the opening to such pipe or drain in such a manner that such disconnection will not be a danger to health.
- (2) Where any drain is permanently disconnected any remaining part shall be sealed by the owner of such drain.
- (3) When any drainage installation is disconnected from a connecting sewer the local authority shall be notified, in

writing, by the owner thereof within 30 days from the date of such disconnection.

(4) Any person who contravenes any requirement of this regulation, shall be guilty of an offence.

P6 UNAUTHORIZED DRAINAGE WORK

(1) Unless authorized by the local authority -

(a) no person shall in any manner interfere with any sewer or connecting sewer;

(b) no person shall break into or interfere with any part of a drainage installation other than for the purpose of repair and maintenance.

(2) Any person who carries out or permits the carrying of any unauthorized work contemplated in this regulation, shall be guilty of an offence.

P7 INSPECTION AND TESTING OF DRAINAGE INSTALLATIONS

(1) Any drain, discharge pipe or ventilating pipe shall be so installed as to be capable of withstanding the test pressures contemplated in rule PP26 or PP27, as the case may be, contained in SANS 10400-P and such tests shall be carried out in the presence of the building control officer of, or other officer duly authorized by, the local authority.

(2) Any equipment, material or labour required for any inspection or any testing contemplated in [Part P](#) of these regulations shall be made available by the person installing such pipe or drain.

(3) No person shall put into use any drainage installation before such installation has been inspected, tested and passed by the local authority as complying with these regulations.

(4) Any person who contravenes the requirement of [sub-regulation \(3\)](#), shall be guilty of an offence.

PART Q - NON-WATER-BORNE MEANS OF SANITARY DISPOSAL

Q1 MEANS OF DISPOSAL

Where water-borne sewage disposal is not available other means of sewage disposal shall be permitted by the local authority: Provided that:

- (a) it stores, conveys, processes and disposes of human body wastes and wastewater in such away that the pathogens, pollutants and contaminants associated therewith do not compromise the health and safety of the original user or others; and
- (b) in the case of chemical or toilet a satisfactory means is available for the removal and disposal of sewage from such closets;

Q2 PERMISSION

No person shall construct any pit toilet without the permission of the local authority.

Q3 CONSTRUCTION, SITING AND ACCESS

- (1) Any such other means of sewage disposal shall be so constructed, sited and provided with access that the health and convenience of persons using such means shall not be adversely affected.
- (2) The number of sanitary receptacles shall be adequate for the population of the building served by such receptacles.
- (3)
 - (a) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design and construction, siting of, and access to such other means of sewage disposal complies with SANS 10400-Q; Provided however that where a local authority is of the opinion that the nature of the means of sanitary disposal is such that it is essential for such installation to be the subject of an approved rational design prepared by an approved competent person, such local authority shall, in writing, notify the owner of such building of its reasons for the necessity for such design and may require such owner to submit for approval plans and particulars of a complete installation based on such design.
 - (b) The requirements contained in [sub-regulation \(2\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the number of receptacles is in accordance with the requirements for the provision of sanitary fixtures contained in [regulation F11](#) or [P2](#), as the case may be.

PART R - STORMWATER DISPOSAL

R1 STORMWATER DISPOSAL REQUIREMENT

- (1) The owner of any site shall provide suitable means for the control and disposal of accumulated stormwater which may run off from any earthworks, building or paving.
- (2) Such means of stormwater disposal may be in addition to or in combination with any drainage works required in terms of [regulation F4\(2\)](#).
- (3) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where such means of stormwater disposal is provided in accordance with SANS 10400-R: Provided that where a local authority is of the opinion that the conditions on any site render it essential for stormwater disposal to be the subject of an acceptable rational design prepared by an approved competent person, such local authority shall, in writing, notify the owner of such site of its reasons for the necessity for such design, and may require such owner to submit for approval plans and particulars of a complete stormwater control and disposal installation for such site and for any building erected thereon, based on such design.

R2 SAVING

- (1) These regulations shall not be construed as requiring the installation in any building of any roof gutter or downpipe where other suitable means has been provided to ensure the disposal or dispersal away from such building of rainwater from the roof of such building.
- (2) The regulations in this Part shall not apply to any site used exclusively for the erection of any dwelling house or any building appurtenant thereto: Provided that where, due to special site features, the discharge of stormwater from such site may cause significant damage, the local authority may require compliance with [regulation R1](#).

PART S - FACILITIES FOR PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES

S1 APPLICATION

- (1) Facilities that accommodate persons with disabilities shall be provided in any building except the following:
- (a) any building of which the whole of the ground storey comprises one or more occupancies classified in terms of [regulation A20](#) as [B1](#), [B2](#), [D4](#), [H4](#), [J1](#) or [J2](#);
 - (b) any building classified as [H1](#) in terms of [regulation A20](#) where such building has less than 25 bedrooms and it can be reasonably proven that it is not possible to include wheelchair access in certain aspects of the design; and
 - (c) any storey above ground floor level of a building classified as [H3](#) in terms of [regulation A20](#) and not provided with a lift.

S2 FACILITIES TO BE PROVIDED

- (1) In any building contemplated in [regulation S1](#) requiring facilities for persons with disabilities:
- (a) persons with disabilities shall be able to safely enter the building, use all the facilities subject to the provisions of [sub-regulation \(3\)](#) within it and leave it;
 - (b) there shall be a means of access suitable for use by persons with disabilities, from the main and ancillary approaches of the building to the ground storey; via the main entrance, and any secondary entrance;
 - (c) there shall be a means of egress suitable for use by persons with disabilities from any point in a building to a place of safety in the event of an emergency;
 - (d) any lift installation that is provided shall be capable of serving the needs of persons with disabilities who are likely to be using the building; and
 - (e) any commonly used path of travel shall be free of obstacles which limit, restrict or endanger the travel of persons with disabilities, or which prevent persons with disabilities from accessing the facilities provided in the building and the presence of such obstruction shall be made evident in a suitable manner to persons with impaired vision; and
 - (f) a suitable means of access shall be provided to any auditorium or hall situated in any building and such auditorium or hall shall, in relation to its seating capacity, be provided with sufficient open space to accommodate a reasonable number of people who use wheelchairs or other assistive devices.
- (2) Where parking for more than 50 motor vehicles is provided in or in connection with any building having a means of access contemplated in [sub-regulation \(1\)](#), adequate parking space shall be provided for the parking of motor vehicles used by persons with disabilities and a suitable means of access shall be provided from the parking area, whether such parking area be inside or outside such building, to the ground storey of such building
- (3) Where, in terms of [regulation P1](#), toilet facilities are required and the building is one requiring facilities for persons with disabilities in terms of [regulation S1](#), an adequate number of such facilities shall be suitable for use by persons with disabilities: Provided that toilet facilities shall not be required in any such building classified as [H3](#) in terms of [regulation A20](#).

S3 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulation S2](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where:

- (a) the facilities provided are in accordance with SANS 10400-S;
- (b) the egress from the building in the event of fire is in accordance with SANS 10400-T.

PART T - FIRE PROTECTION

T1 GENERAL REQUIREMENT

- (1) Any building shall be so designed, constructed and equipped that in case of fire -
 - (a) the protection of occupants or users, including persons with disabilities, therein is ensured and that provision is made for the safe evacuation of such occupants or users;
 - (b) the spread and intensity of such fire within such building and the spread of fire to any other building will be minimized;
 - (c) sufficient stability will be retained to ensure that such building will not endanger any other building: Provided that in the case of any multi-storey building no major failure of the structural system shall occur;
 - (d) the generation and spread of smoke will be minimized or controlled to the greatest extent reasonably practicable; and
 - (e) adequate means of access, and equipment for detecting, fighting, controlling and extinguishing such fire, is provided.
- (2) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design, construction and equipment of any building complies with SANS 10400-T: Provided that where any local authority is of the opinion that such compliance would not comply with all the requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#), such local authority shall, in writing, notify the owner of the building of its reasons for its opinion and may require the owner to submit for approval a rational design prepared by an approved competent person.

T2 OFFENCES

- (1) Any owner of any building who fails to -
 - (a) provide sufficient fire extinguishers to satisfy the requirements of [sub-regulation T1\(1\)\(e\)](#), or who installs fire extinguishers that do not comply with the relevant South African national standard, or who fails to ensure that such fire extinguishers are installed, maintained and serviced in accordance with SANS 10105; or
 - (b) maintain any other provision made to satisfy the requirements of [sub-regulation T1\(1\)\(e\)](#), shall be guilty of an offence.
- (2) Any person who causes or permits any escape route to be rendered less effective or to be obstructed in any way which may hinder or prevent the escape of any person from a building in the case of fire or any other emergency shall be guilty of an offence.

PART U - REFUSE DISPOSAL

U1 PROVISION OF STORAGE AREAS

Any building, excluding a dwelling house, in which refuse is or will be generated shall be provided with an adequate storage area for refuse containers.

U2 ACCESS TO STORAGE AREAS

The location of any area contemplated in [regulation U1](#) shall be such that access thereto from any street for the purpose of removing the refuse, is to the satisfaction of the local authority.

U3 REFUSE CHUTES

Where any refuse container receives refuse from any chute such chute shall be designed and erected so as to be safe in operation.

PART V - SPACE HEATING

V1 DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION

- (1) Any system of space heating in any building shall be so designed, constructed and installed as to operate safely and any flue, flue pipe or chimney used in such system shall be so designed as to safely remove any smoke or noxious gases produced by such system.
- (2) The requirements of [sub-regulation \(1\)](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where the design and construction of any flue pipe, chimney, hearth or fireplace complies with SANS 10400-V.

PART W - FIRE INSTALLATION

W1 FIRE INSTALLATIONS

All approved fire installations shall be connected to a communication pipe supplied by the local authority: Provided that such local authority may, subject to any conditions it may consider necessary, allow such fire installation to be connected to -

- (a) any approved alternative source of supply; or
- (b) any source of non-potable water where such water is not to be used for domestic or any other purpose which, in the opinion of such local authority, might give rise to a health hazard.

W2 SUPPLY OF WATER

Water shall not be taken from a supply system for use in any fire installation, unless -

- (a) an application has been made to the local authority for the supply of such water and such application has been granted; and
- (b) the use of such water and such fire installation complies with any conditions imposed by the local authority.

W3 DESIGN OF FIRE INSTALLATIONS

In any fire installation -

- (a) adequate and suitable connection and means of measuring water pressure shall be provided;
- (b) so many isolating valves shall be provided to control the flow of water to the installation, and to such points within the installation, as the local authority may require; and
- (c) the quantity, pressure and rate of flow of water shall be adequate for the supply of any hose reel, hydrant or sprinkler system connected thereto.

W4 DEEMED-TO-SATISFY REQUIREMENTS

The requirements of [regulation W3](#) shall be deemed to be satisfied where any fire installation complies with SANS 10400-W: Provided that where a local authority is of the opinion that it essential for the fire installation to be the subject of an acceptable rational design prepared by an approved competent person, such local authority shall, in writing, notify the owner of such site of its reasons for the necessity for such design, and may require such owner to submit for approval plans and particulars of a complete fire installation, based on such design.

X - REPEAL OF REGULATIONS

The National Building Regulations published under Government Notice No. R. 1081 of 10 June 1988, as amended by Government Notice No. R. 1726 of 26 August 1988 are repealed from the date of the coming into operation of these regulations.

Appendix K:

Details of EAP and expertise

Appendix K1:

EAP CV

Qualifications And Experience In The Field Of Environmental Planning And Management (Lizelle Gregory (Member Bokamoso)):

Qualifications:

- Qualified as **Landscape Architect** at UP 1991;
- Qualified as **Professional Landscape Architect in 1997**;
- A Registered Member at The **South African Council for the Landscape Architect Profession (SACLAP)** with Practise Number: **PrLArch97078**;
- A Registered Member at the **International Association for Impact Assessment Practitioners (IAIA)**;
- Qualified as an **Environmental Auditor in July 2008** and also became a Member of the International Environmental Management Association (IEMAS) in 2008.

Working Experience:

- Worked part time at Eco-Consult – 1988-1990;
- Worked part time at **Plan Associates as Landscape Architect in training** – 1990-1991;
- Worked as Landscape Architect at **Environmental Design Partnership (EDP)** from 1992 - 1994
- Practised under **Lizelle Gregory Landscape Architects** from 1994 until 1999;
- Lectured** at Part-Time at **UP** (1999) – Landscape Architecture and **TUT** (1998- 1999)- Environmental Planning and Plant Material Studies;
- Worked as **part time Landscape Architect and Environmental Consultant at Plan Associates** and **managed their environmental division for more than 10 years** – 1993 – 2008 (assisted the **PWV Consortium** with various road planning matters which amongst others included environmental Scans, EIA's, Scoping reports etc.)
- Renamed business as **Bokamoso in 2000** and is the only member of Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC;
- More than 25 years experience in the compilation of Environmental Reports**, which amongst others included the compilation of various **DFA Regulation 31 Scoping Reports**, EIA's for EIA applications in terms of the applicable environmental legislation, Environmental Management Plans, Inputs for Spatial Development Frameworks, DP's, EMF's etc. Also included EIA Application on and adjacent to mining land and slimes dams (i.e. Brahm Fisherville, Doornkop)

Qualifications And Experience In The Field Of Landscape Architecture (Lizelle Gregory (Member Bokamoso)):

Landscape Architecture:

-Compiled landscape and rehabilitation plans for more than 22 years.

The most significant landscaping projects are as follows:

-Designed the Gardens of the Witbank Technicon (a branch of TUT). Also supervised the implementation of the campus gardens (2004);

-Lizelle Gregory was the Landscape Architect responsible for the paving and landscape design at the UNISA Sunnyside Campus and received a Corobrick Golden Award for the paving design at the campus (1998-2004);

-Bokamoso assisted with the design and implementation of a park for the City of Johannesburg in Tembisa (2010);

-The design and implementation of the landscape gardens (indigenous garden) at the new Coca-Cola Valpre Plant (2012-2013);

-Responsible for the rehabilitation and landscaping of Juksei River area at the Norwood Shopping Mall (Johannesburg) (2012-2013);

-Designed and implemented a garden of more than 3,5ha in Randburg (Mc Arthurpark). Bokamoso also seeded the lawn for the project (more than 2,5 ha of lawn successfully seeded) (1999);

-Bokamoso designed and implemented more than 800 townhouse complex gardens and submitted more than 500 Landscape Development Plans to CTMM for approval (1995 – 2013);

-Assisted with Landscape Designs and the Masterplan at Eco-Park (M&T Developments) (2005-2011);

-Bokamoso designed and implemented an indigenous garden at an office park adjacent to the Bronberg. In this garden it was also necessary to establish a special garden for the Juliana Golden Mole. During a recent site visit it was established that the moles are thriving in this garden. Special sandy soils had to be imported and special indigenous plants had to be established in the natural section of the garden.

-Lizelle Gregory also owns her own landscape contracting business. **For the past 20 years she trained more than 40 PDI jobless people (sourced from a church in Mamelodi)** to become landscape contracting workers. All the workers are (on a continuous basis) placed out to work at nurseries and other associated industries;

-Over the past 20 years the Bokamoso team compiled more than 800 landscape development plans and also implemented most of the gardens. Bokamoso also designed and implemented the irrigation for the gardens (in cases where irrigation was required). Lizelle regarded it as important to also obtain practical experience in the field of landscape implementation.

Appendix K2:

Company Profile

BOKAMOSO

Landscape Architects & Environmental Consultants CC



BOKAMOSO

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECTS & ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS CC

- 
1. Executive Summary
 2. Vision, Mission & Values
 3. Human Resources
 4. Services
 5. Landscape Projects
 6. Indicative Clients
 7. Environmental Projects
 8. Corporate Highlights
 9. Landscape Projects

1. Executive Summary

Bokamoso specializes in the fields of Landscape Architecture and all aspects of Environmental Management and Planning. Bokamoso was founded in 1992 and has shown growth by continually meeting the needs of our clients. Our area of expertise stretches throughout the whole of South Africa. Our projects reflect the competence of our well compiled team. The diversity of our members enables us to tend to a variety of needs. Our integrated approach establishes a basis for outstanding quality. We are well known to clients in the private, commercial as well as government sector.

At Bokamoso we stand on a firm basis of environmental investigation in order to find unique solutions to the requirements of our clients and add value to their operations.

2. Vision, Mission & Values

Vision:

At Bokamoso we strive to find the best planning solutions by taking into account the functions of a healthy ecosystem. Man and nature should be in balance with each other.

Mission:

We design according to our ethical responsibility, take responsibility for successful completion of projects and constitute a landscape that contributes to a sustainable environment. We add value to the operations of our clients and build long term relationships that are mutually beneficial.

Values:

Bokamoso stands on the basis of fairness. This include respect within our multi-cultural team and equal opportunities in terms of gender, nationality and race.

We have a wide variety of projects to tend to, from complicated reports to landscape installation. This wide range of projects enables us to combine a variety of professionals and skilled employees in our team.

Bokamoso further aids in the development of proficiency within the working environment.

3. Human Resources

Lizelle Gregory - Owner

Lizelle Gregory obtained a degree in Landscape Architecture from the University of Pretoria in 1992 and passed her board exam in 1995. Her professional practice number is PrLArch 97078.

Ms. Gregory has been a member of both the Institute for Landscape Architecture in South Africa (ILASA) and South African Council for the Landscape Architecture Profession (SACLAP), since 1995.



Ms. Gregory has been registered as a member of IAIA in 2007.

Ms. Gregory attended and passed an International Environmental Auditing course in 2008. She is a registered member of the International Environmental Management and Assessment Council (IEMA).

She has lectured at the Tshwane University of Technology (TUT) and the University of Pretoria (UP). The lecturing included fields of Landscape Architecture and Environmental Management. Ms. Gregory has more than 25 years' experience in the compilation of Environmental Evaluation Reports:

- Environmental Management Programmes (EMPr);
- Strategic Environmental Assessments;
- All stages of Environmental input;
- EIA under ECA and the new and amended NEMA EIA regulations; and
- various other Environmental reports and documents.

Ms. Gregory has compiled and submitted more than 600 Impact Assessments within the last eight years.

Furthermore, Ms. L. Gregory is also familiar with all the GDARD/Provincial Environmental policies and guidelines. She assisted and supplied GAUTRANS/former PWV Consortium with Environmental input and reports regarding road network plans, road determinations, preliminary and detailed designs over a period of 12 years.

3. Human Resources

Environmental Impact Assessments

Adèle Drake – HR & Systems Manager and Senior EAP

BA (Geography and History) (UP).

NQF Level 7 Air Quality Management (UJ).

Qualified SHEQ Auditor.

Project Management (UP)

18 years' experience in the field of Environmental Management within Mining, Forestry and Renewable Energy Industries, and Environmental Consulting Field. Responsible for compiling EIAs, WULAs, AELs and conducting SHE legal compliance audits.

Mary-Lee Van Zyl – QC Manager and Senior EAP

MSc Plant Science (UP).

BSc (Hons) Plant Science (UP) BSc Ecology (UP).

Seven years' experience in the Environmental field. Specialises in NEMA Application Forms, BARs, EIA and Scoping Reports, Appeals, S24G Applications, EMPRs, Amendment Applications, NEMA queries, WULAs and GEMF Registrations.

Bianca Cronjé - Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP)

Certificate in Life and Environmental Sciences (UNISA).

SAMTRAC (NOSA).

Six years' experience in the field of Environmental Management as EAP. Specialises in NEMA Application Forms, BARs, EIA and Scoping Reports, Appeals, S24G Applications, EMPRs, Amendment Applications, NEMA queries, WULAs and GEMF Registrations.

Water Use Licensing

Dashantha Moodley – WULA Practitioner and EAP

BA Honours Degree in Environmental Management (UNISA).

Bachelor Social Science in Geography and Environmental Management (UKZN)

More than nine years' experience in WUL Application and Integrated Environmental Management within water resource management. Senior Environmental Practitioner and Water Use Licences Consultant. Specialises in Water Use Licences.

Suné – ECO, Water Sampling Assistant, E-WULAAS Assistant and Bio-monitoring Specialist

SASS5 Course Certificate of attendance.

Two years' experience in the environmental field. Responsible for the E-WULAAS, conducting ECO inspections, maintaining the water quality database, conducting Bio-monitoring Assessments and compiling Water Use Licence Applications.

3. Human Resources

Environmental Compliance Officer

Trevor Botham – Landscape Specialist and ECO

Introduction to Horticulture.

Introduction to Garden Design.

Radio telephone Operators Certificate.

2 and 3D Surface and Underground CAD and GIS Modelling.

18 years' experience in the mining, engineering and landscaping sectors and specialises in AutoCAD and GIS.

Dwayne Miller –Environmental Control Officer Manager

B.Sc. Biological and Environmental Sciences (NWU – Potchefstroom Campus).

Advanced Wetland Course (UP) (2016).

Five years of working experience in the environmental field. ECO, ground & surface water sampling and monitoring.

In-House Specialists

Lizette Delport – Wetland Specialist and Water Monitoring Supervisor and EAP

MSc Aquatic Health (UJ).

BSc. Hons. Environmental Management (Cum Laude) (UNISA).

BSc Agric. Animal Science (UFS).

Registered with the South African Wetland Society (SAWS) and SACNASP.

More than six years' experience as a wetland specialist. Experienced in compiling various environmental reports (EIA's, BAR's). Environmental Assessment Practitioner and Wetland Specialist.

Nkoliso Magona – Ecologist

MSc Botany (SU).

More than three years' experience in the Environmental Field. Specialises in Fauna and Flora reports.

Landscape Design

Louis van Wyk – Candidate Landscape Technologist

BSc. Landscape Architecture (UP)

2 years' experience in landscape design, 1 years' experience in graphic design and 4 months' experience in Landscape rehabilitation.

3. Human Resources

Geographical Information Systems

Alfred Thomas – GIS Specialist

CorelDraw, Adobe Creative Suite, Open source like Inkscape, Gimp and Blender 3D.

ESri Products -ArcGis /ArcMap.

Microimages -TNT Mips / Global Mapper and QGis

Certified Internet Web Foundations (IT Academy).

CIW Foundation & Internet Marketing Graphic Design (IT Academy).

Webdesign and Management – Joomla/Wordpress/Html 5.

More than 18 years GIS experience and various Multimedia Software

Administration

Juanita de Beer – PA to Owner and Public Participation Officer

Conference, Exhibition and Events Management (Damelin).

Personal Assistant (PA) to the Owner. Specializes in public relations and Public Participation Processes with eight years' experience in the field.

Elsa Swart – Receptionist and Debtors/Creditors Administration

Secretarial Skills (ARMSCOR).

Time Management (ARMSCOR).

Secretarial (Centurion Collage).

47 years' experience in admin and secretarial duties. Responsible for debtors/creditors and reception.

Merriam Mogalaki – Cleaner and Admin Assistant

Cleaner and general office administration assistance. Responsible for office library and archive. 15 years' experience in office administration.

Elias Maloka – Driver and Public Participation Assistant and Landscaping Supervisor

18 Years' experience in landscape contracting.

Site supervisor overseeing landscape installations. Irrigation design and implementation. Assists during Public Participation with distribution of Notices. Courier responsible for collecting and delivering reports to relevant competent authorities.

4. Services

- Basic Assessment Reports
- EIA & Scoping Reports
- Environmental Management Programmes
- Environmental Scans
- Strategic Environmental Assessments
- EMPrs
- Environmental Input and Evaluation of Spatial Development Frameworks
- State of Environmental Reports
- Compilation of Environmental Legislation and Policy Documents
- Environmental Auditing and Monitoring
- Environmental Control Officer (ECO) inspections
- Visual Impact Assessments
- Specialist Assistance with Environmental Legislation Issues and Appeals
- Development Process Management
- Water Use Licence Applications
- Waste Licence Applications
- Ecological Assessments
- Heritage Impact Assessments
- Wetland Delineation and Risk Assessments
- Water sampling and analysis
- Public Participation
- SHE Audits
- Due Diligence
- Landscaping design and implementation

5. Landscaping Architecture and Contracting

5.1 Landscaping Architecture

- Master Planning
- Sketch Plans
- Planting Plans
- Working Drawings
- Detail Design
- Landscape Development Frameworks
- Landscape Development Plans
- Contract and Tender Documents
- Landscape Rehabilitation Works
- Rehabilitation Plans

5.2 Landscaping Contracting

Implementation of landscaping plans for:

- Office parks;
- Commercial/Retail/Recreational Developments;
- Residential complexes;
- Private Residential Gardens; and
- Implementation of irrigation systems.

6. Indicative Clients

Attacq
Balwin Properties Limited
Billion Property Group
Century Properties Group
Chieftain
Coca-Cola
Dovetail Properties
Fontis
GDRT
Golder
Key Spirit Developments
Moolman Group
Napaj
Petroland Developments
Sable Place Properties
Sky Village
Twin City Developments
Urban Dynamics
Velmore

7. Environmental Projects

Environmental Impact Assessments/S24G Reports	
Chamdor X4 Mixed Use Development	Wheatlands Urban Solar Farm
Dalpark X32 Mixed Use Development	Peach Tree X23 Light Industrial Township
Dennehof Filling Station	Glencoe Dundee Abattoir
Fairlands Interchange	Riverwalk External Services
Greenstone Filling Station	Standerton X9 Shopping Centre
Hazeldean Boulevard Road	K56 Road
Kleinfontein Settlement – Residential S24G	Clubview Mixed Use Development EMF
Leeupoort South Mixed Use Development	Pikitup Garden Waste
Lesotho water treatment - Pharmaceuticals	Peach Tree X20 Residential Development
Nkosi City Integrated Human Settlement	Peach Tree X24 Light Industrial Township
Parkdene X7 Mixed Use Development	Riverwalk Electrical Line
PWV 17 Road	Chantelle X48 - Hartebeeshoek Filling Station & Place of refreshment
PWV18 Road construction Environmental Scan	Hennopsriver Prospecting Right BAR
Reiger Park X19 Residential Development	N4 Salomon Mahlangu Interchange
Rietvlei X10, X11 & X15 - Residential	Peach Tree X21 & X22 - Industrial Township
Rietvlei X6-9 - Residential	Kudube Unit 9 Sewerage pump station
Secunda Shell Filling Station	Peach Tree X25 Industrial Township
Selby Filling Station EMF	Ormonde South Residential
Triple C Dam	Roohuiskraal X29
Trompsburg Mixed Use Development	Greengate X77 Commercial
Varsity College Expansion	Bosbokrand Shopping Centre
Ventersburg Filling Station	Chantelle X49 - Hartebeeshoek - Mixed Use Development
Winterveld X5 Mixed Use Development	La Montagne Reservoirs

7. Environmental Projects

Water Use Licence Applications	
Waterfall Mixed Use Development - Jukskei View X118	Kikuyu-Jukskei View X128 -Emergency storm water dam repairs
Land Parcel 3 Commercial development	Riverwalk Electrical Line
Jukskei View X 128 Residential Development	Kikuyu Water Pipeline
Farm Mushroom to be known as Kyalami Gardens X27	Rondebult Road Section 1 Upgrade
Kameeldriftvoere	Linksveld Mixed Use
Peach Tree X21-25 WWTW	Fairlands Interchange
Teak Place	Farm Waterval 5 IR
Waterfall Bulk Water Pipeline	Grobbersdal Shopping Centre
R104 Culvert Extension	Waterfall Electrical Line
Riverwalk Development and External Services	Q4 City Filling Stations
Winterveld Ext 5 Northern Outfall Sewer	Waterfall Fields Emergency Work
Winterveld Ext 5 Southern Outfall Sewer	Rooihuiskraal X 29
Waterfall Fields Electrical Sleeves	Riverwalk Crystal Lagoon & Conversion application
Farm Waterval 5 IR	Farm Leeuwfontein
Western Cape Farm	Rietvlei Farm Village WULA
Hazeldean Boulevard Road GA amendment application	Kudube Unit 9 Sewerage pump station
Grobbersdal Shopping Centre Conversion application	Nkosi City Mixed Use
Eikestad Mall Stellenbosch	

Environmental Compliance Officer	
Tonga Mall	Peach Tree Extension X23
Lufhereng mixed use development	Olympus X72 Residential
Soshanguve Bridge	Waveside Bottle Water Plant
Kikuyu Residential	Peach Tree X21 and X22, X23, X25
Waterfall Fields Mixed Use	Peach Tree X24
Riverwalk Road	Fleurhof Filling Station
Riverwalk Development	Beyerspark Filling Station
Kameeldrift voere Pty Ltd	Peach Tree Extension X23
Ashlea Gardens Residential	Olympus X72 Residential
Waveside Bottle Water Plant	

7. Environmental Projects

Heritage Assessments	
Cayman Academy	Nkosi City
Chamdor X4	Parkdene X 7 Memorialisation and Destruction
Clubview	Pretoria Gardens
Dalpark X32 (Carnival City)	PWV 18 Scan
Ga-Rankuwa (TUT)	Parkdene X 7 Memorialisation and Destruction
Glencoe Exemption Letter	Reiger Park X 19 Memorialisation and Destruction
Hennops River	Selby Exemption Letter
Industria	Secunda Exemption Letter
Krugersdorp	UNISA Education Campus
Knopjeslaagte	Waterfall Ridge
La Montagne	Nkosi City
Modderfontein (M & T)	

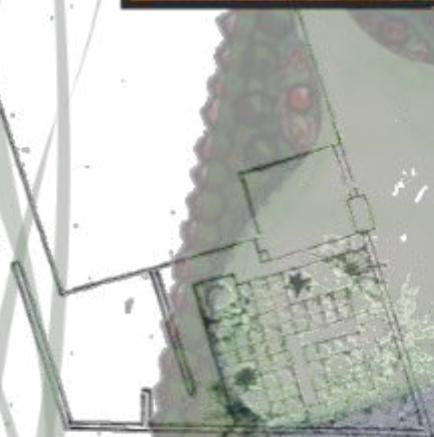
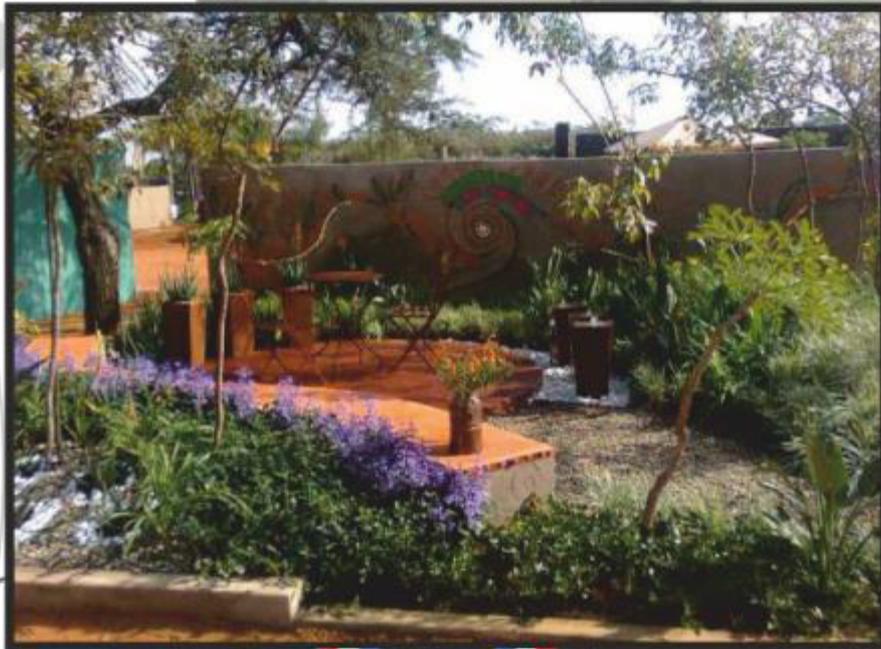
Wetland Assessments	
Ormonde	Reiger Park X19
Wheatlands	Parkdene X7
Riverwalk Electrical	Winterveld North
Thula Mall	Winterveld South
Hartebeeshoek	Winterveld X5
Kameeldrift Voere	Kikuyu pipeline
Mooibosch	Waterfall Fields
Mthatha Bedford City	Mogale City X5
Kudube Sewer	Ga-Rankuwa
Slovo Park	Peach Tree X25
Glen Vista	Corobrick Rietvlei WUL
Nkosi City	Equestria
Hazeldean Rd	Faerie Glen
Leeuwpoort South	Knopjeslaagte X19
Varisty College	Ga-Rankuwa
Farm Waterval rehabilitation	Peach Tree X25
Eagles Creek Rehabilitation	Corobrick Rietvlei WUL
Carnival City	Myoli Beach
Waterfall Ridge	PWV18
Skymall	

7. Environmental Projects

Fauna & Flora Assessments	
Klaserie Private Game Reserve	Equestria Holding 180
Vleikop Abattoir	Grobblersdal Filling Station
Greengate X77 Commercial	Lydenburg Siding
Hennopsriver Prospecting Right	Cayman Academy
Triple C Dam	Hazeldean Road
AFT Feedlot	Faerie Glen Development
Drafstap Boerdery WULA	Secunda Filling Station Opinion
Robbertze Boerdery WULA	Mooibosch
Carnival City	Peach Tree X25 identification
Chamdor X4 SCAN	Chamdor X4
Glenvista	Kameeldrift Voere
Chantelle X48 and X49	PWV18
Hazeldean Road	TUT Ga-Runkuwa
Kudube	Olympus AH 72
Mogale X14	Berea site visit
Mooibosch	Parkdene Leeuwoort
Mthatha	Transnet siding objection
Nkosi City	Knopjeslaagte Ext 19
Peachtree X25	Ventersburg Filling Station
Reigerpark X9	Olympus Filling Station
Riverwalk Reservoir	Greenstone Filling Station
Riverwalk	Carnival City
Rooihuiskraal	Cavalier New Parking
Slovopark	Lotus Garden
Thula Mall - relocation	Hidden Hills
Waterfall Ridge	Majesty Oils Mills
Wheatlands	Malekane Mall
Glenvista Update	Munyaka Crystal Lagoon
La Montagne Update	Kroon Chickens Hatchery Farm
N4 and Solomon Mahlangu Interchange	Mooikloof Retail Park
Peach Tree X 21- X25	Garsfontein Filling Station
Rietvlei Filling Station	Secunda Filling Station
Rietvlei Waste Water Treatment Works	Standerton X10 Mixed Use Development
Sunderland Ridge	Mooiplaats Educational Facility
Thulamahashe B Sewer	Mnandi Filling Station
Waterfall Estate	Onderstepoort Wholesale Diesel Storage
Hazyview X44	

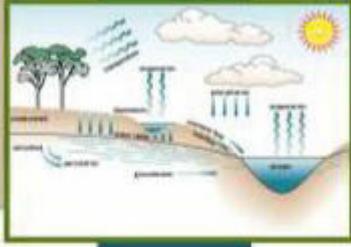
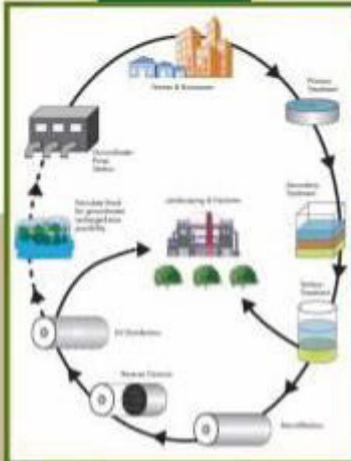
8. Corporate Highlights

Unisa Sunnyside Campus, Pretoria - Best commercial paving plan in Gauteng, 1997
Safari Garden Expo Silver Certificate, 2010



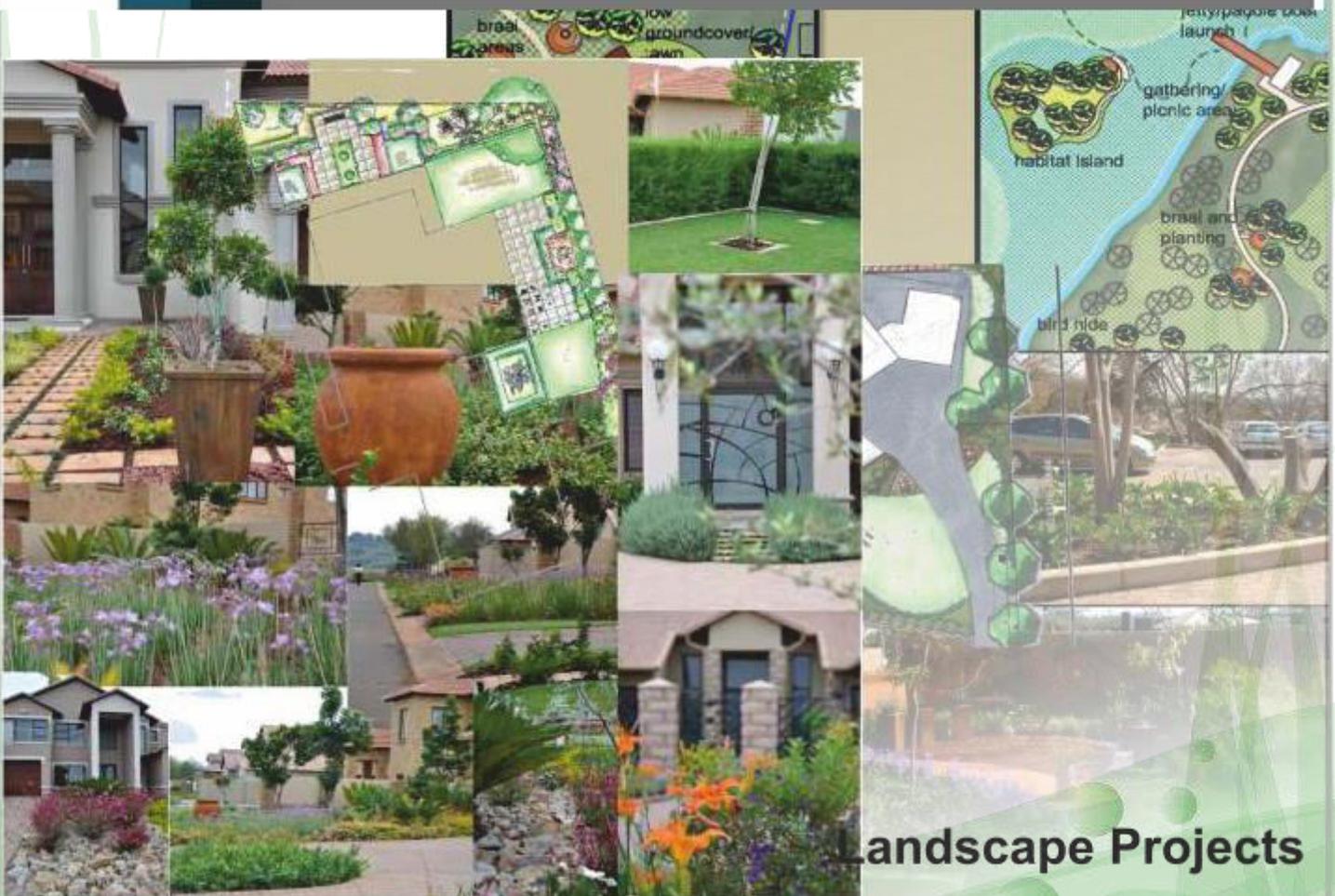
existing house

9. Landscape Projects



project

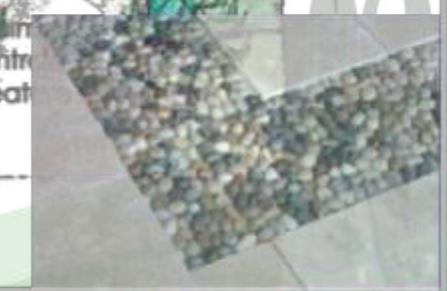
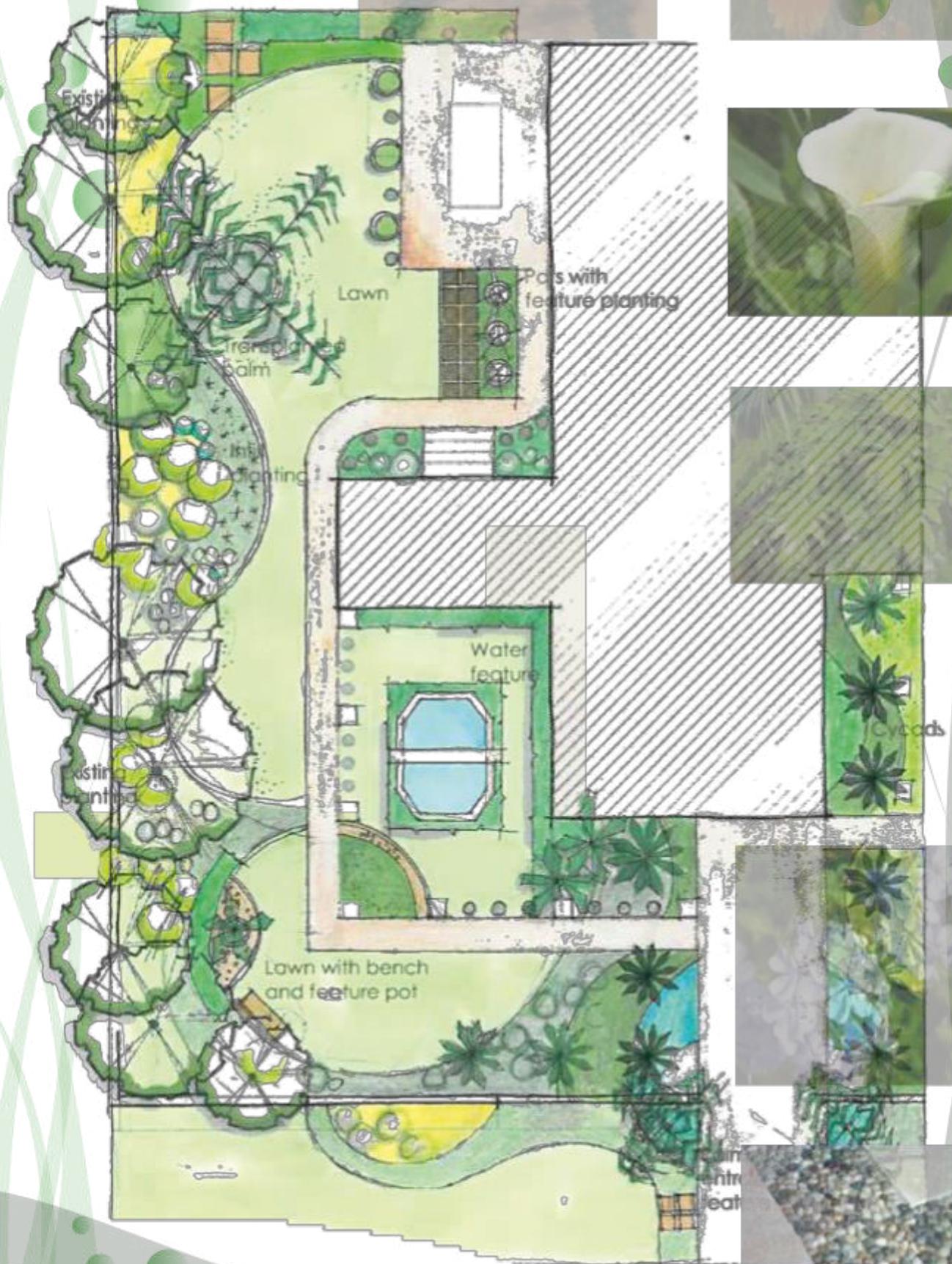
shelter- mosaic detail



Landscape Projects

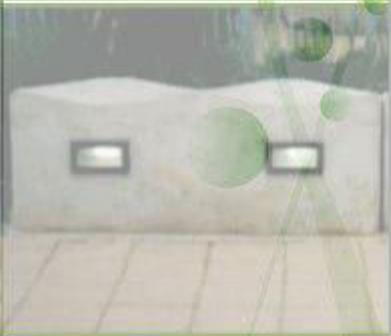
9. Landscape Projects

Ishmail Dawson Offices, Pretoria



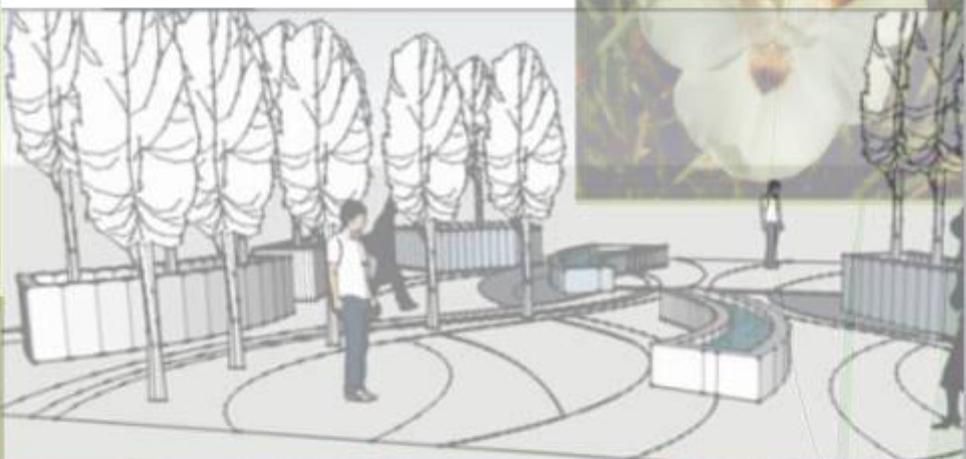
9. Landscape Projects

concept plan Valpre Bottling Plant, Heidelberg

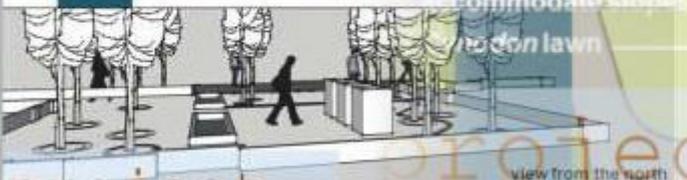
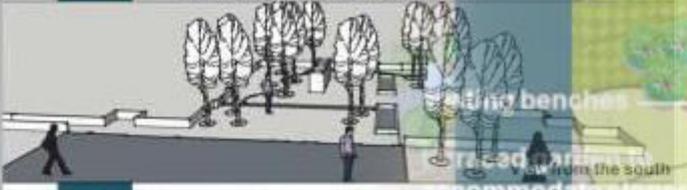


project

gatehouse



3D representations



project

offices /

RAW MATERIAL DELIVERY

front garden

9. Landscape Projects

The Wilds, Pretoria



Appendix K3:

EAP Declaration



dedect

Department:
Economic Development, Environment, Conservation and Tourism
North West Provincial Government
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA



AgriCentre Building
Cnr. Dr. James Moroka &
Stadium Rd
Private Bag X2039
MMABATHO 2735
www.nwpg.gov.za

CHIEF DIRECTORATE: ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES
DIRECTORATE: ENVIRONMENTAL QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Enquiries: Ouma Skosana
Tel: +27 (18) 389 5156
Email: oskosana@nwpg.gov.za
Fax: +27(18) 384 0104

DETAILS OF EAP AND DECLARATION OF INTEREST

(For official use only)

File Reference Number:

NEAS Reference Number:

Date Received:

Application for authorisation in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), as amended and the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014

PROJECT TITLE

Kroon's Chickens Hatchery.

1. Details of EAP

Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP):¹

Contact person:

Postal address:

Postal code:

Telephone:

E-mail:

Professional affiliation(s) (if any)

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC

Lizelle Gregory

PO Box 11375, Maroelana

0161

Cell:

083 255 8384

012 346 3810

Fax:

086 570 5659

lizelle@bokamoso.net

The South African Council of the Landscape Architects Profession (SACLAP); Institute for Landscape Architects in South Africa (ILASA); and Institute for Environmental Management and Assessment (IEMAS), Member of the Institute of Impact Assessment Practitioners (IAIA).

Project Consultant:

Contact person:

Postal address:

Postal code:

Telephone:

E-mail:

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC

Lizelle Gregory

PO Box 11375, Maroelana

0161

Cell:

083 255 8384

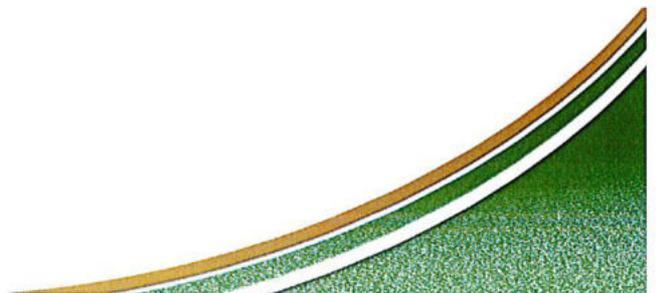
012 346 3810

Fax:

086 570 5659



Together we move North West forward.



1. Declaration by Environmental Assessment Practitioner

I, **Lizelle Gregory** (Name of person representing EAP) of **Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC** (name of company) declare that;

- I act as the independent environmental practitioner in this application
- I will perform the work relating to the application in an objective manner, even if this results in views and findings that are not favourable to the applicant
- I declare that there are no circumstances that may compromise my objectivity in performing such work;
- I have expertise in conducting environmental impact assessments, including knowledge of the Act, regulations and any guidelines that have relevance to the proposed activity;
- I will comply with the Act, Regulations and all other applicable legislation;
- I will take into account, to the extent possible, the matters listed in Regulation 18 of the regulations when preparing the application and any report relating to the application;
- I have no, and will not engage in, conflicting interests in the undertaking of the activity;
- I undertake to disclose to the applicant and the competent authority all material information in my possession that reasonably has or may have the potential of influencing - any decision to be taken with respect to the application by the competent authority; and - the objectivity of any report, plan or document to be prepared by myself for submission to the competent authority;
- I will ensure that information containing all relevant facts in respect of the application is distributed or made available to interested and affected parties and the public and that participation by interested and affected parties is facilitated in such a manner that all interested and affected parties will be provided with a reasonable opportunity to participate and to provide comments on documents that are produced to support the application;
- I will ensure that the comments of all interested and affected parties are considered and recorded in reports that are submitted to the competent authority in respect of the application, provided that comments that are made by interested and affected parties in respect of a final report that will be submitted to the competent authority may be attached to the report without further amendment to the report;
- I will keep a register of all interested and affected parties that participated in a public participation process; and
- I will provide the competent authority with access to all information at my disposal regarding the application, whether such information is favourable to the applicant or not
- all the particulars furnished by me in this form are true and correct;
- *will perform all other obligations as expected from an environmental assessment practitioner in terms of the Regulations; and*
- I realise that a false declaration is an offence in terms of Regulation 48 and is punishable in terms of section 49B (2) of the Act.



2. Disclosure of Vested Interest (delete whichever is not applicable)

- I do not have and will not have any vested interest (either business, financial, personal or other) in the proposed activity proceeding other than remuneration for work performed in terms of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014;
- I have a vested interest in the proposed activity proceeding, such vested interest being:



Signature of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner

Bokamoso Landscape Architects and Environmental Consultants CC

Name of company

Date



Signature of the Commissioner of Oaths

Date

Professional Accountant (SA)

Designation

Official stamp:

IZAK JOHANNES ROSSOUW
Commissioner of Oaths Ex Officio
Professional Accountant (S.A.)
Membership Number: 31406
36 Lebombo Road, Ashley Gardens
Pretoria, 0081



Appendix L:

Any other Information

Not Applicable

Appendix M:

Financial Provision (if applicable)

Not Applicable

Appendix N:

Closure Plan (where applicable)
as described in Appendix 5 of
EIA Regulations, 2014

Not Applicable